MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 91

The Latin Romances of Arthur

Vita Merlini
Historia Meriadoci
De ortu Waluuanii
De lupo

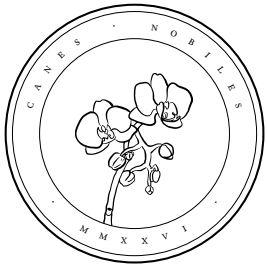
The Latin Romances of Arthur

The Life of Merlin, Meriadoc,
the Rise of Gawain, and Arthur and Gorlagon

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

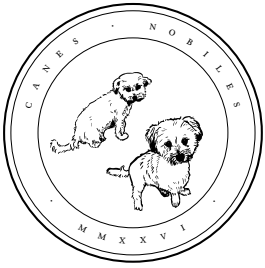


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 91 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Francisque Michel and Thomas Wright's text of the Vita Merlini (Paris, 1837), J. Douglas Bruce's of the Historia Meriadoci and De ortu Waluuanii (Göttingen, 1913), and G. L. Kittredge's of Arthur and Gorlagon (Boston, 1903)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

VITA MERLINI

Merlin's Madness 9
The Leaf in the Queen's Hair 19
The Threefold Death; the Stars 30
The Wedding; the Laughs; the Observatory 41
The Prophecy; Rodarch's Death 51
Taliesin on the Making of the World 61
The Isle of Apples; the Fall of Britain 71
From Vortimer to Arthur; Merlin Cured 82
Healing Waters; the Old Oak; the Cranes 92
Birds, the Mad Maeldin, and the Envoi 103

HISTORIA MERIADOCI

Prologue 121
Caradoc and Griffin 122
Griffin Seizes the Kingdom 130
The Rescue in the Forest of Arglud 139
The Children Taken; the Reunion 148
Griffin's End; the Black Knight's Challenge 156
Meriadoc and the Black Knight 167

HISTORIA MERIADOCI

(continued)

The Three Glades; to the Emperor 176
The Victory at the River; the Phantom Palace 185
The Silent Feast and the Storm 194
The Castle of Disgrace 204
Guntram Defeated; Gundebald's City 212
The Princess's Plan 224
Gundebald's Fall; the Emperor's Plot 232
The False Charge 240
Meriadoc's Escape and Reward 249

DE ORTU WALUUANII

Gawain's Birth and the Fisherman 259
The Knight of the Surcoat 267
The Barbarous Island 277
The Queen and Nabaor 289
The Defeat of Milocrates 298
The Sea Battle and the Greek Fire 308
The Recipe; the Duel with Gormund Begins 316
The Death of Gormund 327
To Britain; Arthur Unhorsed 336
Arthur Learns the Truth; the Castle of Maidens 344
The Rescue of the Lady 352

DE LUPO

Arthur's Quest 363
The Rod and the Wolf 370
The Wolf at the King's Court 379
The Wolf Restored; Gorlagon's Secret 388

GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH

Vita Merlini

The Life of Merlin

MERLIN'S MADNESS

The poet dedicates his song of the seer Merlin to Robert, bishop of Lincoln. Merlin, king of the Demetae and a prophet, fought with Peredur and Rodarch of the Cumbrians against Guennolous of Scotland; when three brothers of the leader, who had followed their brother through the wars, fell, he lamented, and after the Britons' victory had them buried, wept three days, went mad, and fled to the woods to live like a beast. In winter he mourned his hunger to Christ and to an old wolf, until a messenger of his sister Ganieda, Rodarch's queen, found him by a spring on a mountain top.

Fatidici vatis rabiem, musamque jocosam
Of-the-prophetic seer the-madness and-the-muse jesting
Merlini cantare paro: tu corrige carmen,
of-Merlin to-sing I-prepare you correct the-song
gloria pontificum, calamos moderando, Roberte!
glory of-bishops the-pens by-governing Robert
Scimus enim quia te perfudit nectare sacro
We-know for that you has-steeped with-nectar sacred
philosophia suo, fecitque per omnia doctum,
philosophy her-own and-has-made in all-things learned
ut documenta dares, dux et præceptor in orbe.
that lessons you-might-give leader and teacher in the-world
Ergo meis cœptis faveas, vatemque tueri
Therefore to-my undertakings may-you-favor and-the-seer to-protect
auspicio meliore velis, quam fecerit alter
with-auspice better may-you-wish than did the-other
cui modo succedis, merito promotus honori:
whom now you-succeed deservedly advanced to-the-honor
sic etenim mores, sic vita probata genusque,
so for (your)-manners so life approved and-birth

utilitasque loci, clerus populusque petebant;
and-the-advantage of-the-place the-clergy and-the-people sought
unde modo felix Lincolnia fertur ad astra.
whence now happy Lincoln is-borne to the-stars
Ergo te cuperem complecti carmine digno:
Therefore you I-would-wish to-embrace with-a-song worthy
set non sufficio: licet Orpheus et Camerinus
but not I-am-sufficient though Orpheus and Camerinus
et Macer et Marius, magnique Rabirius oris
and Macer and Marius and-of-great Rabirius of-mouth
ore meo canerent, Musis comitantibus omnes:
with-mouth my should-sing with-the-Muses accompanying all
ad vos consuetæ mecum cantare Camenæ,
to you accustomed with-me to-sing Camenae
propositum cantemus opus, cytharamque sonate.
the-proposed let-us-sing work and-the-lyre sound
Ergo peragratis, sub multis regibus, annis,
Therefore with-passed-through under many kings years
clarus habebatur Merlinus in orbe Britannus.
famous was-held Merlin in the-world British
Rex erat et vates: Demetarumque superbis
King he-was and seer and-of-the-Demetae proud
jura dabat populis, ducibusque futura canebat.
laws gave peoples and-to-the-leaders things-to-come sang
Contigit interea plures certamen habere
It-happened meanwhile several a-contest to-have
inter se regni proceres, belloque feroci
among themselves of-the-kingdom nobles and-by-war fierce
insontes populos devastavisse per urbes.
innocent peoples to-have-devastated through the-cities

Dux Venedotorum Peredurus bella gerebat
The-leader of-the-Venedoti Peredur wars waged
contra Guennoloum Scotiæ qui regna regebat:
against Guennolous of-Scotland who the-realms ruled
jamque dies aderat bello præfixa, ducesque
and-now the-day was-at-hand for-war appointed and-the-leaders
astabant campo, decertabantque catervæ,
stood-by on-the-field and-fought-it-out the-companies
amborum pariter miseranda cæde ruentes.
of-both alike with-pitiable slaughter falling
Venerat ad bellum Merlinus cum Pereduro,
Had-come to the-war Merlin with Peredur
rex quoque Cumbrorum Rodarcus; sævus uterque.
the-king also of-the-Cumbrians Rodarch fierce each
Cædunt obstantes invisis ensibus hostes,
They-cut-down the-opposing with-hated swords enemies
tresque ducis fratres fratrem per bella secuti
and-three of-the-leader brothers (their)-brother through the-wars having-followed
usque rebellantes cædunt, perimuntque phalanges;
on the-rebelling cut-down and-destroy the-phalanxes
inde per infestas cum tali munere turmas
thence through the-hostile with such a-gift troops
acriter irruerant, subito cecidere perempti.
fiercely had-rushed suddenly fell destroyed
Hoc viso, Merline, doles, tristesque per agmen
With-this seen Merlin you-grieve and-sad through the-column
commisces planctus, tali quoque voce remugis.
you-mingle laments with-such also a-voice you-bellow
«Ergone sic potuit sors importuna nocere,
Therefore-then thus could fate importunate to-harm

ut michi surriperet tantos talesque sodales,
that from-me it-should-snatch so-many and-such comrades
quos modo tot reges, tot regna remota timebant?
whom now so-many kings so-many realms remote feared
O dubios hominum casus! mortemque propinquam!
O uncertain of-men chances and-death near
Quæ penes est illos semper, stimuloque latenti
Which with is them always and-with-a-goad hidden
percutit, et miseram pellit de corpore vitam!
strikes and wretched drives from the-body life
O juvenile decus! quis nunc astabit in armis
O youthful glory who now will-stand-by in arms
nunc mihi pone latus, mecumque repellet euntes
now for-me behind (my)-side and-with-me will-repel those-coming
in mea dampna duces, incumbentesque catervas?
to my losses leaders and-pressing companies
Audaces juvenes! vobis audacia vestra
Bold youths from-you boldness your
eripuit dulces animos dulcemque juventam.
has-snatched the-sweet souls and-sweet youth
Qui modo per cuneos discurrebatis in armis,
Who now through the-wedges ran-about in arms
obstantesque viros prosternebatis ubique,
and-the-opposing men laid-low everywhere
nunc pulsatis humum, rubeoque cruore rubetis!»
now you-beat the-ground and-with-red gore are-red
Sic inter turmas lacrimis plangebat obortis,
So amid the-troops with-tears he-lamented risen
deflebatque viros; nec cessant prælia dira:
and-wept-for the-men nor cease the-battles dire

concurrunt acies, sternuntur ab hostibus hostes:
clash the-lines are-laid-low by enemies enemies
sanguis ubique fluit: populi moriuntur utrinque.
blood everywhere flows peoples die on-both-sides
At tandem Britones revocatis undique turmis
But at-last the-Britons with-recalled from-everywhere troops
conveniunt pariter, pariterque per arma ruentes
come-together alike and-alike through arms rushing
invadunt Scotos, prosternunt vulnera dantes;
invade the-Scots lay-them-low wounds giving
nec requieverunt donec sua terga dederunt
nor did-they-rest until their backs gave
hostiles turmæ, per devia diffugientes.
the-hostile troops through byways scattering
Evocat e bello socios Merlinus, et illis
Calls from the-war (his)-companions Merlin and to-them
præcipit in varia fratres sepelire capella:
orders in various the-brothers to-bury chapels
deplangitque viros, nec cessat fundere fletus:
and-laments the-men nor ceases to-pour tears
pulveribus crines spargit, vestesque rescidit,
with-dust (his)-hair he-sprinkles and-(his)-clothes tore
et prostratus humi nunc hac illacque volutat.
and prostrate on-the-ground now this-way and-that he-rolls
Solatur Peredurus eum, proceresque ducesque;
Consoles Peredur him and-the-nobles and-the-leaders
nec vult solari nec verba precantia ferre.
nor wishes to-be-consoled nor words entreating to-bear
Jam tribus emensis defleverat ille diebus,
Now with-three passed had-wept he days

respueratque cibos; tantus dolor usserat illum:
and-had-rejected food so-great grief had-burned him
inde novas furias, cum tot tantisque querelis
then new frenzies when with-so-many and-such complaints
aera complesset, cepit, furtimque recedit;
the-air he-had-filled he-took-on and-stealthily withdraws
et fugit ad silvas, nec vult fugiendo videri,
and flees to the-woods nor wishes in-fleeing to-be-seen
ingrediturque nemus, gaudetque latere sub ornis;
and-enters the-grove and-rejoices to-lie-hid under the-ash-trees
miraturque feras pascentes gramina saltus.
and-marvels-at the-beasts grazing the-grasses of-the-glades
Nunc has insequitur, nunc cursu præterit illas.
Now these he-follows now in-running passes those
Utitur herbarum radicibus; utitur herbis;
He-uses of-herbs the-roots he-uses herbs
utitur arboreo fructu, morisque rubeti.
he-uses the-tree fruit and-the-mulberries of-the-bramble
Fit silvester homo, quasi silvis editus esset,
He-becomes a-woodland man as-if in-the-woods born he-were
inde per æstatem totam; nullique repertus,
thence through the-summer whole and-by-none found
oblitusque sui, cognatorumque suorum,
and-forgetful of-himself and-of-kinsmen his
delituit, silvis obductus more ferino.
he-lay-hid in-the-woods covered in-the-manner of-a-beast
At cum venit yems herbasque tulisset et omnes
But when came winter and-the-herbs had-taken and all
arboreos fructus, nec quo frueretur haberet;
the-tree fruits nor what he-might-enjoy he-had

diffudit tales miseranda voce querelas.
he-poured-out such with-pitiable voice complaints
«Cœli Christe Deus! quid agam? qua parte morari
Of-heaven Christ God what shall-I-do in-what part to-stay
terrarum potero? cum nil quo vescar adesse
of-the-lands shall-I-be-able when nothing on-which I-may-feed to-be-at-hand
inspicio, nec gramen humi, nec in arbore glandes.
I-see neither grass on-the-ground nor on the-tree acorns
Tres quater et juges septenæ poma ferentes
Three four-times and in-pairs seven apples bearing
hic steterant mali; nunc non stant: ergo quis illas,
here had-stood apple-trees now not they-stand therefore who them
quis mihi surripuit? quo devenere repente?
who from-me has-snatched where have-they-gone suddenly
Nunc illas video, nunc non: sic fata repugnant,
Now them I-see now not so the-fates oppose
sic quoque concordant cum dant prohibentque videre.
so also they-agree when they-give and-forbid to-see
Deficiunt nunc poma michi, nunc cetera quæque.
Fail now the-apples for-me now the-other everything
Stat sine fronde nemus, sine fructu: plector utroque,
Stands without leaf the-grove without fruit I-am-punished by-both
cum neque fronde tegi valeo, neque fructibus uti.
since neither with-leaf to-be-covered I-can nor fruits to-use
Singula bruma tulit, pluviisque cadentibus auster.
Each-thing winter has-taken and-with-the-rains falling the-south-wind
Invenio si forte napos tellure sub ima,
I-find if by-chance turnips the-earth under deepest
concurrunt avidæque sues aprique voraces,
run-together and-greedy sows and-boars voracious

eripiuntque napos michi quas de cespite vello.
and-snatch the-turnips from-me which from the-turf I-pull
Tu lupe, care comes! nemorum qui devia mecum
You wolf dear companion of-the-groves who the-byways with-me
et saltus peragrare soles, vix præteris arva:
and the-glades to-wander-through are-wont scarcely you-pass the-fields
et te dura fames et me languere coegit.
both you harsh hunger and me to-languish has-compelled
Tu prior has silvas coluisti, te prior ætas
You before these woods inhabited you first age
protulit in canos; nec habes, nec scis, quid in ore
brought-forth into white-hairs nor you-have nor know what into (your)-mouth
proicias: quod miror ego, cum saltus habundet
you-may-throw which wonder-at I since the-glade abounds
tot capreis aliisque feris quas prendere posses.
with-so-many roe-deer and-other beasts which to-catch you-could
Forsitan ipsa tibi tua detestanda senectus
Perhaps itself from-you your detestable old-age
eripuit nervos, cursumque negavit habendum.
has-snatched the-sinews and-the-running has-denied to-be-had
Quod solum superest, comples ululatibus auras;
What alone remains you-fill with-howlings the-airs
ac resupinus humi consumptos deicis arctus.»
and on-your-back on-the-ground the-wasted you-throw-down limbs
Hæc inter frutices coriletaque densa canebat;
These-things among the-bushes and-the-hazel-thickets dense he-sang
cum sonus ad quemdam pervenit prætereuntem,
when the-sound to a-certain came passer-by

qui direxit iter quo sermo loquentis in auras
who directed (his)-way where the-speech of-the-speaker into the-airs
exierat, reperitque locum, reperitque loquentem.
had-gone-out and-finds the-place and-finds the-speaker
Quo viso Merlinus abit, sequiturque viator,
With-which seen Merlin goes-off and-follows the-traveler
nec retinere virum potuit sic diffugientem:
nor to-hold-back the-man could so fleeing
inde viator iter repetit quo cœperat ire,
then the-traveler (his)-way resumes where he-had-begun to-go
propositumque tenet casu commotus euntis.
and-(his)-purpose holds by-the-plight moved of-the-one-going
Ecce viatori venit obvius alter ab aula
Behold to-the-traveler comes to-meet another from the-court
Rodarchi regis Cumbrorum, qui Ganiedam
of-Rodarch the-king of-the-Cumbrians who Ganieda
duxerat uxorem, formosa conjuge felix.
had-taken as-wife in-(his)-beautiful wife happy
Merlini soror ista fuit, casumque dolebat
of-Merlin the-sister she was and-the-plight grieved
fratris, et ad silvas et ad arva remota clientes
of-(her)-brother and to the-woods and to the-fields remote retainers
miserat, ut fratrem revocarent; ex quibus unus
had-sent that (her)-brother they-might-call-back of whom one
obvius huic ibat, set et hic sibi: protinus ergo
to-meet this-one was-going but also this-one to-him at-once therefore
convenere simul, commiscent mutua verba.
they-met together they-mingle mutual words

At qui missus erat Merlinum quærere, quærit
But he-who sent had-been Merlin to-seek asks
si vidisset eum silvis aut saltibus alter.
if had-seen him in-woods or glades the-other
Ille virum talem se conspexisse fatetur
He the-man such himself to-have-seen admits
inter dumosos saltus nemoris Calidonis;
amid the-thorny glades of-the-grove of-Calidon
dumque loqui vellet secum, secumque sedere,
and-while to-speak he-wished with-him and-with-him to-sit
diffugisse virum celeri per robora cursu.
to-have-fled the-man swift through the-oaks running
Hæc ait: alter abit, silvasque subintrat, et imas
These-things he-says the-other goes-off and-the-woods enters and the-deepest
scrutatur valles, montes quoque præterit altos:
he-searches valleys the-mountains also he-passes high
quærit ubique virum, gradiens per opaca locorum.
he-seeks everywhere the-man walking through the-shadowy of-places
Fons erat in summo cujusdam vertice montis,
A-spring there-was on the-top of-a-certain peak of-a-mountain
undique præcinctus corulis densisque frutectis.
on-all-sides girt with-hazels and-with-dense thickets
Illic Merlinus consederat: inde per omnes
There Merlin had-sat-down thence through all
spectabat silvas, cursusque iocosque ferarum.
he-watched the-woods and-the-runnings and-the-sports of-the-beasts

Nuntius hunc scandit, tacitoque per ardua gressu
The-messenger this climbs and-with-silent through the-heights step
incedit quærendo virum: tum denique fontem
advances by-seeking the-man then at-last the-spring
Merlinumque videt, super herbas pone sedentem,
and-Merlin sees on the-grasses behind sitting
dicentemque suas tali sermone querelas.
and-speaking his with-such speech complaints

THE LEAF IN THE QUEEN'S HAIR

Merlin laments the turning seasons. The messenger, hidden, sings to the lyre of the grief of Merlin's wife Guendoloena and his sister Ganieda, and Merlin, soothed, recovers his mind and goes with him to King Rodarch's court. The crowds bring back his frenzy; Rodarch offers rich gifts, then chains him, and Merlin falls silent, until he laughs when the king takes a leaf from the queen's hair. Freed at last, he explains: the leaf caught in her hair as she lay with her lover in the bushes.

«O qui cuncta regis! quid id est quod contigit, ut non
O you-who all-things rule what that is which has-happened that not
tempora sint eadem numeris distincta quaternis?
the-seasons be the-same by-numbers distinguished fourfold
Nunc ver jure suo flores frondesque ministrat:
Now spring by-right its-own flowers and-leaves supplies
dat fruges æstas, autumpnus micia poma:
gives crops summer autumn mellow apples
consequitur glacialis yemps, et cetera quæque
follows icy winter and the-rest each-thing
devorat et vastat, pluviasque nivesque reportat,
devours and lays-waste and-rains and-snows brings-back

singula quæque suis arcet læditque procellis;
single each-thing with-its-own wards-off and-harms storms
nec permittit humum varios producere flores,
nor allows the-ground various to-produce flowers
aut quercus glandes, aut malos punica mala.
or oaks acorns or apple-trees Punic apples
O utinam non esset hiems aut cana pruina;
O would-that not there-were winter or white frost
ver foret, aut æstas; cuculusque canendo rediret,
spring were or summer and-the-cuckoo by-singing returned
et philomena pio quæ tristia pectora cantu
and the-nightingale with-tender who sad breasts song
mitigat, et turtur conservans fœdera casta;
soothes and the-turtle-dove keeping compacts chaste
frondibus inque novis concordi voce volucres
in-the-leaves and-in new with-harmonious voice the-birds
cantarent aliæ, quæ me modulando foverent;
should-sing other which me by-modulating might-cherish
dum nova flore novo tellus spiraret odorem
while new with-flower new the-earth breathed scent
gramine sub viridi, levi quoque murmure fontes
the-grass under green with-light also murmur the-springs
diffluerent; juxtaque daret sub fronde columba
should-flow-away and-beside should-give under the-leaf the-dove
sompniferos gemitus, irritaretque soporem!»
sleep-bringing moanings and-should-provoke slumber
Nuntius audierat vatem, rupitque querelas
The-messenger had-heard the-seer and-broke-off the-complaints
cum modulis citharæ quam secum gesserat ultro,
with the-measures of-the-lyre which with-him he-had-carried of-his-own-accord

ut sic deciperet demulceretque furentem.
that so he-might-beguile and-soothe the-raging-one
Ergo movens querulas digitis et in ordine cordas,
Therefore moving the-plaintive with-(his)-fingers and in order strings
talia, pone latens dimissa voce canebat.
such-things behind lying-hid with-lowered voice he-sang
«O diros gemitus lugubris Guendoloenæ!
O dire moanings of-mournful Guendoloena
O miseras lacrimas lacrimantis Guendoloenæ!
O wretched tears of-weeping Guendoloena
Me miseret miseræ morientis Guendoloenæ!
I pity the-wretched dying Guendoloena
Non erat in Waliis mulier formosior illa.
Not was in Wales a-woman more-beautiful than-she
Vincebat candore deas, foliumque ligustri,
She-surpassed in-whiteness the-goddesses and-the-leaf of-privet
vernantesque rosas, et olentia lilia prati.
and-the-blooming roses and the-fragrant lilies of-the-meadow
Gloria vernalis sola radiabat in illa;
The-glory of-spring alone shone in her
sidereumque decus geminis gestabat ocellis,
and-starry grace in-twin she-bore little-eyes
insignesque comas auri fulgore nitentes.
and-notable hair of-gold with-the-gleam shining
Hoc totum periit; periit decor omnis in illa,
This all has-perished has-perished the-grace all in her
et color et facies, niveæ quoque gloria carnis.
both the-color and the-face of-snowy also the-glory flesh
Non est quod fuerat, multis mœroribus acta:
Not she-is what she-had-been by-many griefs driven

nescit enim quo dux abiit, vita ne fruatur
she-knows-not for where (her)-leader has-gone life whether he-enjoys
an sit defunctus: languet miserabilis inde,
or be dead she-languishes pitiable thence
totaque deperiit longo liquefacta dolore.
and-wholly has-wasted-away by-long melted grief
Collacrimatur ei paribus Ganieda querelis,
Weeps-with her with-equal Ganieda complaints
amissumque dolet sine consolamine fratrem.
and-the-lost grieves without consolation brother
Hæc fratrem flet, et illa virum; communiter ambæ
This-one (her)-brother weeps and that-one (her)-husband in-common both
fletibus incumbunt, et tristia tempora ducunt.
to-weepings give-themselves and sad times spend
Non cibus ullus eis, nec sompnus nocte vagantes
Not food any for-them nor sleep at-night wandering
sub virgulta fovet: tantus dolor arcet utramque.
under the-bushes cherishes so-great grief wards-off each
Non secus indoluit Sidonia Dido, solutis
Not otherwise grieved Sidonian Dido with-loosed
classibus Æneæ, tunc cum properaret abire.
fleets of-Aeneas then when he-hastened to-go-away
Cum non Demophoon per tempora pacta rediret,
When not Demophoon by the-time agreed returned
taliter ingemuit flevitque miserrima Phillis.
so moaned and-wept most-wretched Phyllis
Briseis absentem sic deploravit Achillem.
Briseis the-absent so lamented Achilles
Sic soror et conjux collamentantur et ardent,
So the-sister and wife lament-together and burn

funditus internis cruciatibus usque dolendo.»
utterly with-inward torments right-on by-grieving
In fidibus querulis dicebat talia cantans
On the-strings plaintive he-said such-things singing
nuntius, et modulo vatis demulcerat aures,
the-messenger and with-measure of-the-seer had-soothed the-ears
mitior ut fieret congauderetque canenti.
gentler that he-might-become and-rejoice-with the-singer
Ocius assurgit vates, juvenemque jocosis
Swiftly rises the-seer and-the-youth with-jesting
affatur verbis, iterumque movere precatur
addresses words and-again to-move begs
cum digitis cordas, elegosque sonare priores.
with fingers the-strings and-the-elegies to-sound former
Admovet ille lyræ digitos jussumque reformat
Brings he to-the-lyre (his)-fingers and-the-bidden renews
carmen item, cogitque virum modulando furorem
song likewise and-compels the-man by-modulating (his)-frenzy
ponere paulatim citharæ dulcedine captum.
to-lay-aside gradually of-the-lyre by-sweetness captured
Fit memor ergo sui, recolitque quod esse solebat
He-becomes mindful therefore of-himself and-recalls what to-be he-was-wont
Merlinus; furiasque suas miratur et odit.
Merlin and-frenzies his marvels-at and hates
Pristina mens rediit, rediit quoque sensus in illo,
The-former mind returned returned also sense in him
et gemit ad nomen, motus pietate, sororis
and he-groans at the-name moved by-love of-(his)-sister
uxorisque simul, mentis ratione recepta;
and-of-(his)-wife at-the-same-time of-mind with-the-reason recovered

conducique petit Rodarchi regis ad aulam.
and-to-be-led asks of-Rodarch the-king to the-court
Paruit alter ei, silvasque subinde relinquunt,
Obeyed the-other him and-the-woods presently they-leave
et veniunt pariter lætantes regis in urbem.
and come together rejoicing of-the-king into the-city
Ergo fratre suo gaudet regina recepto,
Therefore with-brother her rejoices the-queen recovered
proque sui reditu fit conjunx læta mariti,
and-for of-her the-return becomes the-wife glad of-(her)-husband
oscula certatim geminant, et brachia circum
kisses vying they-redouble and arms around
colla viri flectunt, tanta pietate moventur.
the-neck of-the-man they-bend with-such love they-are-moved
Rex quoque quo decuit reducem sucepit honore,
The-king also with-which was-fitting the-returned received honor
totaque turba domus; proceres lætantur in urbe.
and-the-whole crowd of-the-house the-nobles rejoice in the-city
At postquam tantas hominum Merlinus adesse
But after so-great of-men Merlin to-be-present
inspexit turmas, nec eas perferre valeret;
saw troops nor them to-endure was-able
cepit enim furias, iterumque furore repletus
he-took-on for frenzies and-again with-fury filled
ad nemus ire cupit, furtimque recedere quærit.
to the-grove to-go desires and-stealthily to-withdraw seeks
Tunc præcepit eum posito custode teneri
Then ordered him with-placed a-guard to-be-held
Rodarchus, citharaque suos mulcere furores,
Rodarch and-with-the-lyre his to-soothe frenzies

astabatque dolens, verbisque precantibus illum
and-he-stood-by grieving and-with-words entreating him
orabat ratione frui, secumque manere,
begged reason to-enjoy and-with-him to-stay
nec captare nemus, nec vivere more ferino:
nor to-catch-at the-grove nor to-live in-the-manner of-a-beast
velle sub arboribus dum regia sceptra tenere
to-wish under trees while royal scepters to-hold
posset, et in populos jus exercere feroces.
he-could and over peoples justice to-exercise fierce
Hinc promittit ei se plurima dona daturum;
Hence he-promises him himself very-many gifts about-to-give
afferrique jubet vestes, volucresque, canesque,
and-to-be-brought orders garments and-birds and-dogs
quadrupedesque citos, aurum, gemmasque micantes,
and-horses swift gold and-gems glittering
pocula quæ sculpsit Guielandus in urbe Sigeni.
cups which carved Wayland in the-city of-Sigen
Singula prætendit vati Rodarchus et offert,
Each-thing holds-out to-the-seer Rodarch and offers
et monet ut maneat secum, silvasque relinquat.
and urges that he-stay with-him and-the-woods leave
Talia respondens spernebat munera vates.
Such-things answering spurned the-gifts the-seer
«Ista duces habeant, sua quos confundit egestas,
These-things the-leaders may-have their-own whom confounds want
nec sunt contenti modico, set maxima captant.
nor they-are content with-little but the-greatest grasp
Hiis nemus et patulas Calidonis præfero quercus,
To-these the-grove and the-spreading of-Calidon I-prefer oaks

et montes celsos, subtus [que] virentia prata.
and the-mountains lofty below and the-green meadows
Illa michi non ista placent: tu talia tecum
Those to-me not these please you such-things with-you
rex Rodarche feras: mea me Calidonis habebit
king Rodarch may-carry my me of-Calidon will-have
silva ferax nucibus, quam cunctis præfero rebus.»
wood rich in-nuts which to-all I-prefer things
Denique cum nullo potuisset munere tristem
Finally when by-no he-had-been-able gift the-sad
rex retinere virum, forti vincire cathena,
the-king to-hold-back man with-a-strong to-bind chain
jussit; ne peteret nemorum deserta solutus.
he-ordered lest he-should-seek of-the-groves the-wilds loosed
Ergo cum sensit circum se vincula vates,
Therefore when he-felt around himself the-bonds the-seer
nec liber poterat silvas Calidonis adire;
nor free could the-woods of-Calidon to-approach
protinus indoluit, tristisque tacensque remansit,
at-once he-grieved and-sad and-silent remained
lætitiamque suis subtraxit vultibus omnem;
and-joy from-his took-away face all
ut non proferret verbum, risumque moveret.
so-that not he-uttered a-word and-a-laugh moved
Interea visura ducem regina per aulam
Meanwhile about-to-visit the-leader the-queen through the-court
ibat, et ut decuit rex applaudebat eunti;
went and as was-fitting the-king applauded (her)-going
perque manum suscepit eam, jussitque sedere,
and-by the-hand took her and-ordered to-sit

et dabat amplexus et ad oscula labra premebat.
and gave embraces and to kisses (her)-lips pressed
Convertensque suos in eam per talia vultus,
And-turning his to her through such-things face
vidit in illius folium pendere capillis:
he-saw in of-her a-leaf to-hang hair
ergo suos digitos admovit et abstrait illud,
therefore his fingers he-moved and drew-off it
et projecit humi, lætusque jocatur amanti.
and threw on-the-ground and-glad jests with-(his)-love
Flexit ad hoc oculos vates, risumque resolvit,
Bent at this (his)-eyes the-seer and-a-laugh released
astantesque viros fecit convertere vultus
and-the-standing men made to-turn (their)-faces
in se, mirantes quoniam ridere negarat.
on him marveling because to-laugh he-had-refused
Rex quoque miratur, percunctaturque furentem
The-king also marvels and-questions the-raging-one
tam subito facti causas edicere risus,
so suddenly made the-causes to-declare of-the-laugh
adjecitque suis donaria plurima verbis.
and-added to-his gifts very-many words
Ille tacet, differtque suos exponere risus.
He is-silent and-defers his to-explain laughs
At magis atque magis precio precibusque movere
But more and more with-price and-with-prayers to-move
instabat Rodarchus eum: tum denique vates
pressed Rodarch him then at-last the-seer
indignatus ei pro munere, talia fatur.
indignant to-him for the-gift such-things speaks

«Munus avarus amat, cupidusque laborat habere:
A-gift the-greedy loves and-the-covetous labors to-have
hii faciles animos flectunt quocunque jubentur,
these easy minds bend wherever they-are-ordered
munere corrupti: quod habent non sufficit illis.
by-gift corrupted what they-have not suffices for-them
At mihi sufficiunt glandes Calidonis amœnæ,
But to-me suffice the-acorns of-Calidon pleasant
et nitidi fontes per olentia prata fluentes:
and shining springs through fragrant meadows flowing
munere non capior: sua munera tollat avarus.
by-gift not I-am-caught his gifts may-take the-greedy
Et nisi libertas detur, repetamque virentes
And unless freedom be-given and-I-seek-again the-green
silvarum valles, risus aperire negabo.»
of-the-woods valleys the-laugh to-open I-shall-refuse
Ergo cum nullo potuisset munere vatem
Therefore when by-no he-had-been-able gift the-seer
flectere Rodarchus, nec cur risisset haberet;
to-bend Rodarch nor why he-had-laughed he-had
confestim sua vincla viro dissolvere jussit,
at-once his bonds for-the-man to-loose ordered
datque potestatem nemorum deserta petendi,
and-gives power of-the-groves the-wilds of-seeking
ut velit optatam risus expromere causam.
that he-may-be-willing the-desired of-the-laugh to-bring-out cause
Tunc Merlinus ait, gaudens quia possit abire:
Then Merlin says rejoicing because he-could to-go-away

«Iccirco risi, quoniam, Rodarche, fuisti
For-this-reason I-laughed because Rodarch you-were
facto culpandus simul et laudandus eodem;
by-a-deed to-be-blamed at-the-same-time and to-be-praised the-same
dum traheres folium modo, quod regina capillis
while you-drew the-leaf just-now which the-queen in-(her)-hair
nescia gestabat; fieresque fidelior illi
unaware bore and-you-became more-faithful to-her
quam fuit illa tibi, quando virgulta subivit
than was she to-you when the-bushes she-went-under
quo suus occurrit secumque coivit adulter:
whither her came-to-meet and-with-her lay lover
dumque supina foret, sparsis in crinibus hæsit
and-while on-her-back she-was spread in hair clung
forte jacens folium, quod nescius eripuisti.»
by-chance lying the-leaf which unknowing you-snatched

The queen tests Merlin with a boy brought to him three times in different clothes, and when he foretells three different deaths, Rodarch believes her and not him. Merlin leaves for the woods, releasing Guendoloena to marry whom she will but warning the bridegroom to keep out of his way. Years later the boy falls from a rock, catches his foot in a tree, and drowns, all at once. Watching the stars, Merlin reads that Constantine is dead and his nephew Conan king by murder, and that Guendoloena has taken another husband; he resolves to bring her the promised gift next day.

Ergo super tali Rodarchus crimine tristis
Therefore over such Rodarch crime sad
fit subito, vultumque suum divertit ab illa;
becomes suddenly and-face his turned from her
dampnabatque diem qua se conjunxerat illi.
and-condemned the-day on-which himself he-had-joined to-her
Mota set illa nichil, vultu ridente pudorem
Moved but she nothing with-face smiling (her)-shame
celat, et alloquitur tali sermone maritum.
hides and addresses with-such speech (her)-husband
«Cur tristaris amans? cur sic irasceris ab re,
Why are-you-sad (my)-love why thus are-you-angry without cause
meque nec ex merito dampnas, credisque furenti
and-me not by desert you-condemn and-you-believe a-raving-man
qui ratione carens miscet mendacia veris?
who reason lacking mixes lies with-truths
Multociens qui credit ei fit stulcior illo.
Many-times who believes him becomes more-foolish than-he

Excipe nunc igitur; ne sim decepta, probabo
Listen now therefore lest I-be deceived I-shall-prove
quod sit delirus, quod non sit vera locutus.»
that he-is mad that not he-has true-things spoken
Ut plures alii, fuerat puer unus in aula:
As many others there-had-been a-boy one in the-court
hunc cum prospiceret convolvit protinus artem
him when she-saw she-devised at-once a-trick
ingeniosa novam, qua vult convincere fratrem.
ingenious new by-which she-wishes to-convict (her)-brother
Inde venire jubet puerum, fratremque precatur
Then to-come she-orders the-boy and-(her)-brother begs
qua moriturus erit pueri prædicere mortem.
by-which about-to-die he-will-be of-the-boy to-foretell the-death
Ergo frater ei, «Soror o carissima,» dixit,
Therefore (her)-brother to-her Sister o dearest he-said
«hic morietur homo celsa de rupe ruendo.»
this will-die man a-high from rock by-falling
Illa sub ridens puero præcepit abire,
She slightly smiling to-the-boy ordered to-go-away
et quibus indutus fuerat deponere vestes,
and in-which clothed he-had-been to-lay-aside the-clothes
et vestire novas, longosque recidere crines;
and to-put-on new and-the-long to-cut-off hair
sicque redire jubet, ut eis appareat alter.
and-so to-return she-orders that to-them he-may-appear another
Paruit ergo puer; rediit nam talis ad illos
Obeyed therefore the-boy he-returned for such to them
qualis erat jussus, mutata veste, redire.
as he-was ordered with-changed clothing to-return

Mox iterum fratrem regina precatur, et infit,
Soon again (her)-brother the-queen begs and begins
«quæ mors hujus erit narra dilecte sorori.»
what the-death of-this-one will-be tell beloved to-(your)-sister
Tunc Merlinus ait; «Puer hic, cum venerit ætas,
Then Merlin says The-boy this when will-have-come (his)-age
mente vagans, forti succumbet in arbore morti.»
in-mind wandering a-violent will-succumb in a-tree to-death
Dixerat: illa suum sic est affata maritum.
He-had-spoken she her thus has addressed husband
«Siccine te potuit falsus pervertere vates,
So you could a-false to-pervert seer
ut crimen tantum me commisisse putares?
that the-crime so-great me to-have-committed you-should-think
Ac si scire velis qua sit ratione locutus
And if to-know you-wish with-what he-has reason spoken
hoc nunc de puero, censebis ficta fuisse
this now about the-boy you-will-judge feigned to-have-been
quæ de me dixit, dum silvas possit adire.
which about me he-said that the-woods he-could to-approach
Absit ut hoc faciam! castum servabo cubile;
Far-be-it that this I-should-do chaste I-shall-keep (my)-bed
castaque semper ero dum flabit spiritus in me.
and-chaste always I-shall-be while will-blow the-breath in me
Illum convici, pueri de morte rogatum,
Him I-convicted of-the-boy about the-death asked
nunc quoque convincam: tu sedulus arbiter esto.»
now also I-shall-convict you attentive judge be
Hæc ait, et tacite puerum secedere jussit,
These-things she-says and silently the-boy to-withdraw ordered

vesteque feminea vestiri, sicque redire.
and-in-clothing womanly to-be-dressed and-so to-return
Mox puer abscessit, jussumque subinde peregit,
Soon the-boy went-off and-the-bidden presently performed
et sub feminea rediit quasi femina veste;
and in womanly returned as-if a-woman clothing
et stetit ante virum; cui sic regina jocando
and stood before the-man to-whom thus the-queen jesting
«eya frater!» ait: «dic mortem virginis hujus.»
come brother she-says tell the-death of-the-maiden this
«Hæc virgo nec ne,» dixit, «morietur in ampne?»
This maiden or not he-said will-die in a-river
Frater ei, movitque sua ratione cachinnum
(Her)-brother to-her and-moved by-his reasoning a-guffaw
regi Rodarcho: quoniam de morte rogatus
to-the-king Rodarch because about the-death asked
unius pueri, tres dixerat esse futuras.
of-one boy three he-had-said to-be about-to-be
Ergo putabat eum de conjuge falsa locutum,
Therefore he-thought him about (his)-wife false-things to-have-spoken
nec credebat ei, set contristatur, et odit
nor believed him but is-saddened and hates
quod sibi crediderat, quod condempnarat amantem.
that him he-had-believed that he-had-condemned (his)-love
Id regina videns, veniam dat et oscula jungit,
That the-queen seeing pardon gives and kisses joins
et blanditur ei, lætum quoque reddidit illum.
and fondles him glad also she-made him
Cogitat interea silvas Merlinus adire,
Plans meanwhile the-woods Merlin to-approach

egressusque domum portas aperire jubebat;
and-having-gone-out from-the-house the-gates to-open ordered
set soror obstabat, lacrimisque rogabat abortis
but (his)-sister stood-in-the-way and-with-tears begged risen
ut secum remaneret adhuc, tollatque furorem.
that with-her he-should-remain still and-should-put-off (his)-frenzy
Improbus ille suis non vult desistere cœptis,
Stubborn he from-his not wishes to-desist undertakings
set perstat reserare fores, et abire laborat,
but persists to-unbar the-doors and to-go-away labors
et fremit et pugnat, famulosque fremando coartat.
and roars and fights and-the-servants by-roaring presses
Denique cum nullus posset retinere volentem
Finally when no-one could to-hold-back the-willing
ire virum, jussit citius regina venire
to-go man ordered more-quickly the-queen to-come
ejus ad abscessum, absentem Guendoloenam.
his at the-departure the-absent Guendoloena
Illa venit, supplexque virum remanere precatur:
She comes and-suppliant the-man to-remain begs
spernit at ille preces, nec vult remanere, nec illam
spurns but he (her)-prayers nor wishes to-remain nor her
sicut erat solitus, gaudenti cernere vultu.
as he-was wont with-rejoicing to-look-on face
Illa dolet, fletuque fluit, laniatque capillos,
She grieves and-with-weeping flows and-tears (her)-hair
et secat ungue genas, et humi moriendo volutat.
and cuts with-(her)-nail (her)-cheeks and on-the-ground dying rolls
Id regina videns affatur taliter illum.
That the-queen seeing addresses so him

«Hæc tua quæ moritur sic pro te, Guendoloena,
This your who is-dying thus for you Guendoloena
quid faciet? dabiturne viro? viduamve manere
what will-she-do will-she-be-given to-a-husband or-a-widow to-remain
præcipis? aut tecum quocumque recesseris ire?
do-you-order or with-you wherever you-withdraw to-go
Ibit enim, tecumque nemus nemorisque virentes
She-will-go for and-with-you the-grove and-of-the-grove the-green
læta colet saltus, dum te potiatur amante.»
gladly will-inhabit glades while you she-possesses as-lover
Vocibus hiis igitur respondit talia vates.
To-voices these therefore answered such-things the-seer
«Nolo soror pecudem patulo quæ fontis hiatu
I-do-not-wish sister a-beast with-gaping which of-the-spring mouth
diffundit latices, ut virginis urna sub æstus:
pours-out waters as of-the-Virgin the-urn under the-heats
nec curam mutabo meam velut Orpheus olim,
nor care will-I-change my as Orpheus once
quando suos calathos pueris commisit habendos
when his baskets to-the-boys he-entrusted to-be-held
Euridice Stigias plusquam transnavit harenas.
Eurydice the-Stygian before swam-across sands
Mundus ab alterutro veneris sine labe manebo.
Clean from either of-Venus without stain I-shall-remain
Huic igitur detur nubendi justa facultas.
To-her therefore let-be-given of-marrying a-just faculty
Arbitrioque suo quem gestit ducere ducat:
And-by-choice her-own whom she-longs to-marry let-(her)-marry
præcaveat tamen ipse sibi qui duxerit illam,
let-beware however he-himself for-himself who will-have-married her

obvius ut numquam michi sit, nec cominus astet;
in-(my)-way that never to-me he-be nor at-close-quarters stand
set se divertat, ne si michi congrediendi
but himself let-him-turn-aside lest if to-me of-meeting
copia præstetur, vibratum sentiat ensem.
the-chance be-granted the-brandished he-feel sword
Cumque dies aderit sollempnis lege jugali,
And-when the-day will-be-at-hand solemn by-the-law of-marriage
diversæque dapes convivis distribuentur,
and-various dishes to-the-guests will-be-distributed
ipsemet interero donis munitus honestis,
I-myself shall-be-present with-gifts provided honorable
ditaboque datam profuse Guendoloenam.»
and-I-shall-enrich the-given lavishly Guendoloena
Dixerat, atque «vale» gradiens subjunxit utrique,
He-had-spoken and farewell walking added to-each
et petiit silvas nullo prohibente cupitas.
and sought the-woods with-no-one hindering desired
Guendoloena manet spectans in limine tristis,
Guendoloena remains watching on the-threshold sad
[et regina simul; casuque moventur amici;]
and the-queen together and-by-the-plight are-moved the-friends
miranturque nimis rerum secreta furentem
and-marvel exceedingly of-things the-secrets the-raving
nosse virum, veneremque suæ scivisse sororis.
to-know man and-the-love of-his to-have-known sister
Mentitumque tamen pueri de morte putabant,
And-to-have-lied however of-the-boy about the-death they-thought
quam dixit ternam cum dicere debuit unam.
which he-said threefold when to-say he-ought one

Inde diu sua visa fuit vox vana per annos,
Thence long his seemed was voice empty through the-years
donec ad ætatem venit puer ille virilem;
until to age came boy that manly
tunc cunctis patefacta fuit multisque probata.
then to-all laid-open it-was and-to-many proved
Nam dum venatum canibus comitantibus iret,
For while to-hunt with-dogs accompanying he-went
aspexit cervum nemoris sub fronde latentem
he-saw a-stag of-the-grove under the-foliage lying-hid
dissolvitque canes, qui cervo devia viso
and-loosed the-dogs who with-the-stag the-byways seen
transcendunt, complentque suis latratibus auras.
cross and-fill with-their barkings the-airs
Ipsemet urget equum calcaribus, insequiturque,
He-himself urges (his)-horse with-the-spurs and-follows
nunc cornu nunc ore monens, operisque ministros
now with-horn now with-mouth warning and-of-the-work the-attendants
increpat, atque jubet cursu citiore venire.
he-chides and orders with-running swifter to-come
Mons ibi celsus erat circumdatus undique saxis,
A-mountain there lofty was surrounded on-all-sides by-rocks
juxta quem fluvius subtus per plana fluebat:
beside which a-river below through the-plains flowed
hunc fera transcendit fugiens, dum venit in amnem,
this the-beast crosses fleeing till it-comes to the-river
exegitque suas solito de more latebras.
and-sought-out its-own its-accustomed by manner coverts

Instigat juvenis, montem quoque tramite recto
Urges-on the-youth the-mountain also with-path straight
præterit, et cervum per saxa jacentia quærit.
passes and the-stag through the-rocks lying seeks
Contigit interea dum duceret impetus ipsum,
It-happened meanwhile while led the-impetus him
labi quadrupedem celsa de rupe, virumque
to-slip the-horse a-high from rock and-the-man
forte per abruptum montis cecidisse sub amnem;
by-chance down the-steep of-the-mountain to-have-fallen under the-river
ut tamen hæreret pes ejus in arbore quadam,
so-that however clung foot his in a-tree certain
et submersa forent sub flumine cetera membra:
and submerged were under the-stream the-other limbs
sicque ruit, mersusque fuit, lignoque pependit,
and-so he-fell and-drowned was and-from-the-wood hung
et fecit vatem per terna pericula verum;
and made the-seer through threefold perils true
qui nemus ingressus fuerat, rituque ferino
who the-grove entered had and-in-the-rite of-the-beasts
vivebat; patiens concretæ frigoris algæ
lived enduring of-the-frozen of-cold frost
sub nive, sub pluvia, sub iniquo flamine venti.
under snow under rain under the-harsh blast of-the-wind
Idque placebat ei pocius quam jura per urbes
And-that pleased him rather than laws through the-cities
exercere suas, gentesque domare feroces.
to-exercise his and-the-peoples to-tame fierce

Interea ducente viro labentibus annis
Meanwhile with-leading the-man with-gliding years
cum grege silvestri talem per tempora vitam,
with the-herd woodland such through the-times a-life
Guendoloena datur nubendi lege marito.
Guendoloena is-given of-marrying by-the-law to-a-husband
Nox erat et nitide radiabant cornua lunæ,
Night it-was and brightly shone the-horns of-the-moon
cunctaque convexi splendebant lumina cœli:
and-all of-the-vaulted shone the-lights heaven
purior aer erat solito, nam frigidus atrox
purer the-air was than-usual for the-cold fierce
expulerat nubes boreas, cœlumque serenum
had-driven-out the-clouds north-wind and-the-heaven serene
reddiderat, sicco detergens nubila flatu.
had-rendered with-dry wiping the-clouds blast
Sidereum cursum vates spectabat ab alto
The-starry course the-seer watched from a-high
monte, loquens tacite sub divo talia secum.
mountain speaking silently under the-sky such-things with-himself
«Quid sibi vult radius Martis? regem ne peremptum
What for-itself means the-ray of-Mars a-king whether slain
portendit noviter rutilans, aliumque futurum?
portends newly glowing-red and-another about-to-be
Sic equidem video: nam Constantinus obivit,
So indeed I-see for Constantine has-died
ipsiusque nepos scelerata sorte Conanus
and-his-own nephew by-wicked lot Conan
per patrui jugulum, sumpto diademate, rex est.
through of-(his)-uncle the-throat with-taken diadem king is

At tu, summa Venus, quæ certo tramite labens
But you highest Venus who in-fixed path gliding
infra zodiacum Solem comitaris euntem,
within the-zodiac the-Sun accompany going
quid tibi cum radio qui duplex æthera findit?
what for-you with the-ray which double the-ether cleaves
Discidium ne mei sectus portendit amoris?
The-severance whether of-my cut portends love
Talis enim radius divisos signat amores.
Such for a-ray divided marks loves
Forsitan absentem me Guendoloena reliquit,
Perhaps absent me Guendoloena has-left
alteriusque viri gaudens complexibus hæret.
and-of-another man rejoicing in-the-embraces clings
Sic igitur vincor: sic alter fungitur illa:
So therefore I-am-conquered so another enjoys her
sic mea jura michi, dum demoror, eripiuntur:
so my rights from-me while I-delay are-snatched
sic equidem, nam segnis amans superatur ab illo
so indeed for the-sluggish lover is-overcome by him
qui non est segnis, nec abest, sed cominus instat.
who not is sluggish nor is-absent but at-close-quarters presses
At non invideo: nubat nunc omine dextro,
But not I-begrudge let-(her)-marry now with-omen favorable
utaturque novo, me permittente, marito.
and-let-(her)-enjoy (her)-new with-me permitting husband
Crastina cumque dies illuxerit, ibo, feramque
Tomorrow and-when day will-have-dawned I-shall-go and-I-shall-bring
mecum munus ei promissum quando recessi.»
with-me the-gift to-her promised when I-withdrew

THE WEDDING; THE LAUGHS; THE OBSERVATORY

Merlin rides a stag to Guendoloena's wedding, driving a herd of deer before him, and when the bridegroom laughs from a window, kills him with the stag's antlers. Caught as he flees, he is brought back to his sister; led through the market, he laughs at a beggar doorkeeper sitting on buried coins and a youth buying shoe patches who will drown, and is proved right. Freed, he asks Ganieda for a house in the woods with seventy doors and windows to watch the stars, and begins to prophesy the madness of the Britons.

Dixerat; et silvas et saltus circuit omnes;
He-had-spoken and the-woods and the-glades goes-round all
cervorumque greges agmen collegit in unum,
and-of-stags the-herds a-column gathered into one
et damas capreasque simul; cervoque resedit;
and the-does and-roe-deer together and-on-a-stag sat
et veniente die, compellens agmina præ se,
and with-coming day driving the-columns before himself
festinans vadit quo nubit Guendoloena.
hurrying goes where marries Guendoloena
Postquam venit eo, patienter stare coegit
After he-came there patiently to-stand he-compelled
cervos ante fores, proclamans «Guendoloena!
the-stags before the-doors proclaiming Guendoloena
Guendoloena veni! te talia munera spectant.»
Guendoloena come you such gifts await
Ocius ergo venit subridens Guendoloena,
Swiftly therefore comes smiling Guendoloena

gestarique virum cervo miratur, et illum
and-to-be-borne the-man on-a-stag marvels and him
sic parere viro, tantum quoque posse ferarum
so to-obey the-man so-great also to-be-able of-beasts
uniri numerum, quas præ se solus agebat
to-be-united a-number which before himself alone he-drove
sicut pastor oves quas ducere suevit ad herbas.
as a-shepherd sheep which to-lead he-is-wont to the-grasses
Stabat ab excelsa sponsus spectando fenestra,
Stood from a-high the-bridegroom by-watching window
in solio mirans equitem, risumque movebat.
in (his)-seat marveling-at the-rider and-a-laugh moved
Ast ubi vidit eum vates, animoque quis esset
But when saw him the-seer and-in-mind who he-was
calluit, extemplo divulsit cornua cervo
knew at-once he-tore-off the-horns from-the-stag
quo gestabatur, vibrataque jecit in illum,
by-which he-was-borne and-brandished threw at him
et caput illius penitus contrivit, eumque
and the-head of-him utterly crushed and-him
reddidit exanimem, vitamque fugavit in auras.
rendered lifeless and-(his)-life put-to-flight into the-airs
Ocius inde suum talorum verbere cervum
Swiftly thence his of-the-heels with-the-blow stag
diffugiens egit, silvasque redire paravit.
fleeing he-drove and-the-woods to-return prepared
Egrediuntur ad hæc ex omni parte clientes,
Go-out at this from every side retainers
et celeri cursu vatem per rura sequuntur.
and with-swift running the-seer through the-country follow

Ille quidem velox sic præcurrebat, ut isset
He indeed swift so ran-ahead that he-would-have-gone
ad nemus intactus, nisi prævius amnis obesset:
to the-grove untouched unless in-front the-river had-hindered
nam dum torrentem fera prosiliendo mearet,
for while the-torrent the-beast by-leaping passed
elapsus, rapida cecidit Merlinus in unda.
slipping the-rapid fell Merlin in the-wave
Circueunt ripas famuli, capiuntque natantem,
Go-round the-banks the-servants and-catch the-swimming-man
adducuntque domum, vinctumque dedere sorori.
and-lead-him home and-bound gave to-(his)-sister
Captus item vates fit tristis, et optat abire
Captured again the-seer becomes sad and wishes to-go-away
ad silvas, pugnatque suos dissolvere nexus,
to the-woods and-fights his to-loosen bonds
et ridere negat, potumque cibumque refutat,
and to-laugh refuses and-drink and-food rejects
tristitiaque sua tristem facit esse sororem.
and-by-sadness his sad makes to-be (his)-sister
Ergo videns illum Rodarchus pellere cunctam
Therefore seeing him Rodarch to-drive-away all
lætitiam, nec velle dapes libare paratas;
joy nor to-wish the-dishes to-taste prepared
educi præcepit eum miseratus in urbem,
to-be-led-out ordered him pitying into the-city
per fora, per populos, ut lætior esset eundo,
through the-markets through the-peoples that gladder he-might-be by-going
resque videndo novas quæ vendebantur ibidem.
and-the-things by-seeing new which were-being-sold there

Ergo vir eductus, dum progrederetur ab aula,
Therefore the-man led-out while he-went-forth from the-court
inspicit ante fores famulum sub paupere cultu,
sees before the-doors a-servant under poor dress
qui servabat eas, poscentem prætereuntes
who kept them begging the-passers-by
ore tremente viros, ad vestes munus emendas.
with-mouth trembling the-men for clothes a-gift to-be-bought
Mox stetit et risit vates, miratus egentem.
Soon stood and laughed the-seer marveling-at the-needy-man
Illinc progressus nova calciamenta tenentem
From-there having-gone-on new shoes holding
spectabat juvenem, commercantemque tacones:
he-watched a-youth and-buying patches
tunc iterum risit, renuitque diutius ire
then again he-laughed and-refused longer to-go
per fora, spectandus populis quos inspiciebat.
through the-markets to-be-gazed-at by-the-peoples whom he-looked-at
At nemus optabat, quod crebro respiciebat,
But the-grove he-wished-for which often he-looked-back-to
quo nitebatur vetitos divertere gressus.
whither he-strove the-forbidden to-turn steps
Inde domum famuli redeunt, ipsumque cachinnum
Thence home the-servants return and-him guffaw
bis movisse ferunt, silvas quoque velle redire.
twice to-have-moved they-report the-woods also to-wish to-return

Ocius ergo volens Rodarchus scire quid esset
Swiftly therefore wishing Rodarch to-know what it-was
quod portendisset risu, dissolvere nexus
which he-had-portended by-the-laugh to-loosen the-bonds
ilico jussit, ei concedens posse reverti
at-once ordered to-him granting to-be-able to-return
ad solitas silvas, si risus exposuisset.
to the-accustomed woods if the-laughs he-should-explain
Lætior assistens respondit talia vates.
Gladder standing-by answered such-things the-seer
«Janitor ante fores tenui sub veste sedebat,
A-doorkeeper before the-doors thin under clothing sat
et velut esset inops, rogitabat prætereuntes
and as-if he-were needy kept-asking the-passers-by
ut largirentur sibi quo vestes emerentur:
that they-would-bestow on-him with-which clothes might-be-bought
ipsemet interea, subter se denariorum
he-himself meanwhile under himself of-pennies
occultos cumulos, occultus dives habebat.
hidden heaps a-hidden rich-man had
Illud ego risi: tu terram verte sub ipso,
That I laughed-at you the-earth turn under him
nummos invenies servatos tempore longo.
coins you-will-find kept for-a-time long
Illinc ulterius versus fora ductus, ementem
From-there further toward the-markets led a-buying
calciamenta virum vidi, pariterque tacones;
shoes man I-saw and-equally patches
ut postquam dissuta forent, usuque forata,
that after torn they-were and-by-use holed

illa resarciret, primosque pararet ad usus.
them he-might-mend and-the-first prepare for uses
Illud item risi, quoniam nec calciamentis
That likewise I-laughed-at because neither the-shoes
nec superaddet eis miser ille taconibus uti
nor will-he-add to-them wretched that-man the-patches to-use
postmodo compos erit; quia jam submersus in undis
afterward master will-be because already submerged in the-waves
fluctuat ad ripas: tu vade videre, videbis!»
he-floats to the-banks you go to-see you-will-see
Dicta probare viri cupiens Rodarchus, ad ampnem
The-words to-prove of-the-man desiring Rodarch to the-river
circumquaque suos jubet ocius ire clientes,
all-around his orders swiftly to-go retainers
ut si forte virum per proxima litora talem
that if by-chance a-man along the-nearest shores such
demersum videant, festina voce renarrent.
drowned they-see with-hurried voice they-may-report
Jussa ducis peragunt: nam flumina circumeuntes
The-orders of-the-leader they-carry-out for the-rivers going-round
submersum juvenem squalentes inter harenas
the-drowned youth the-filthy amid sands
inveniunt; redeuntque domum, regique renarrant.
they-find and-return home and-to-the-king report
Et rex interea, forium custode remoto,
And the-king meanwhile of-the-doors with-the-keeper removed
suffodit, et vertit terram, reperitque sub ipsa
digs-under and turns the-earth and-finds under it
thesaurum positum, vatemque jocosus adorat.
treasure placed and-the-seer jesting adores

His igitur gestis, vates properabat abire
With-these therefore done the-seer hastened to-go-away
ad solitas silvas, populos exosus in urbe.
to the-accustomed woods the-peoples hating in the-city
Præcipiebat ei secum regina manere,
Bade him with-her the-queen to-stay
optatumque nemus postponere, donec abirent
and-the-desired grove to-put-off until should-go-away
quæ tunc instabant candentis frigora brumæ;
which then pressed of-white the-chills of-winter
atque rediret item teneris cum fructibus æstas,
and should-return again tender with fruits summer
unde frui posset dum tempora sole calerent.
whence to-enjoy he-could while the-times with-sun grew-warm
Ille repugnabat, verbis quoque talibus illam
He resisted with-words also such her
alloquitur, cupiens secedere, frigore spreto.
he-addresses desiring to-withdraw with-the-cold spurned
«O dilecta soror, quid me retinere laboras?
O beloved sister why me to-hold-back do-you-labor
Non me bruma suis poterit terrere procellis,
Not me winter with-its will-be-able to-terrify storms
non gelidus boreas, cum flatu sævit iniquo
not the-icy north-wind when with-blast rages unkind
balantumque greges subita cum grandine lædit:
and-of-the-bleaters the-flocks sudden with hail harms
non conturbat, aquas diffusis imbribus, auster,
not disturbs the-waters with-spread rains the-south-wind
quin nemorum deserta petam, saltusque virentes;
but-that of-the-groves the-wilds I-should-seek and-the-glades green

contentus modico potero perferre pruinam.
content with-little I-shall-be-able to-endure the-frost
Illic arboreis sub frondibus inter olentes
There tree under leaves among fragrant
herbarum flores, æstate jacere juvabit.
of-herbs flowers in-summer to-lie will-delight
Ne tamen esca mihi brumali tempore desit,
Lest however food for-me in-wintry time be-lacking
in silvis compone domos, adhibeque clientes,
in the-woods build houses and-employ retainers
obsequiumque mihi facient, escasque parabunt,
and-service to-me they-will-do and-foods will-prepare
cum tellus gramen, fructumque negaverit arbor.
when the-earth grass and-fruit has-denied the-tree
Ante domos alias, unam compone remotam;
Before the-houses others one build remote
cui sex dena decem dabis hostia totque fenestras,
to-which six tens ten you-will-give doors and-as-many windows
per quas ignivomum videam cum Venere Phœbum,
through which the-fire-vomiting I-may-see with Venus Phoebus
inspiciamque polo labentia sydera noctu,
and-I-may-watch in-the-sky the-gliding stars at-night
quæ me de populo regni ventura docebunt.
which me about the-people of-the-kingdom things-to-come will-teach
Totque notatores quæ dicam scribere docti
And-as-many notaries what I-shall-say to-write trained
assint, et studeant carmen mandare tabellis.
let-them-be-present and let-them-study the-song to-commit to-tablets

Tu quoque sæpe veni, soror o dilecta, meamque
You also often come sister o beloved and-my
tunc poteris relevare famem potuque ciboque.»
then you-will-be-able to-relieve hunger with-drink and-food
Dixit, et ad silvas festinis gressibus ivit.
He-said and to the-woods with-hurried steps went
Paruit ergo soror, nam jussam condidit aulam
Obeyed therefore the-sister for the-ordered she-built hall
atque domos alias, et quicquit jusserat illi.
and houses others and whatever he-had-ordered her
Ille quidem dum poma manent, Phœbusque per astra
He indeed while the-apples remain and-Phoebus through the-stars
altius ascendit, gaudet sub fronde manere
higher ascends rejoices under the-leaf to-stay
ac peragrare nemus, zephiris mulcentibus ornos.
and to-wander-through the-grove with-the-zephyrs soothing the-ash-trees
Tunc veniebat yems rigidis hirsuta procellis,
Then came winter bristling with-stiff storms
quæ nemus et terras fructu spoliabat ab omni;
which the-grove and the-lands of-fruit stripped of every
deficeretque sibi pluviis instantibus esca,
and-there-failed for-him with-the-rains pressing food
tristis et esuriens dictam veniebat ad aulam.
sad and hungry the-said he-came to hall
Illic multotiens aderat regina, dapesque
There many-times was-present the-queen and-dishes
et potum pariter fratri gavisa ferebat;
and drink alike to-(her)-brother rejoicing brought
qui, postquam variis sese recreaverat escis,
who after with-various himself had-refreshed foods

mox assurgebat complaudebatque sorori;
soon rose and-applauded (his)-sister
deinde domum peragrans ad sidera respiciebat,
then the-house wandering-through to the-stars looked-back
talia dum caneret quæ tunc ventura sciebat.
such-things while he-sang which then to-come he-knew
«O rabiem Britonum, quos copia divitiarum
O madness of-the-Britons whom the-abundance of-riches
usque superveniens ultra quam debeat effert!
always coming-on beyond than it-ought lifts
Nolunt pace frui, stimulis agitantur herinis.
They-will-not peace to-enjoy with-goads they-are-driven of-the-Furies
Civiles acies, cognataque prælia miscent.
Civil battle-lines and-kindred battles they-mingle
Ecclesias Domini patiuntur habere ruinam,
The-churches of-the-Lord they-allow to-have ruin
pontificesque sacros ad regna remota repellunt.
and-the-bishops holy to realms remote drive-back
Cornubiensis apri conturbant quæque nepotes;
Of-the-Cornish boar disturb all-things the-nephews
insidias sibimet ponentes, ense nephando
ambushes for-themselves setting with-sword unspeakable
interimunt sese, nec regno jure potiri
kill each-other nor of-the-kingdom by-right to-gain-possession
expectare volunt, regni diademate rapto.
to-wait they-wish of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem seized
Illis quartus erit crudelior asperiorque.
Of-them the-fourth will-be crueler and-harsher

Merlin foretells the wars of Britain: Scots, Welsh, and Cornish in strife, Saxons, Danes, and Normans in turn, churches violated, bishops in arms, and a sixth king who will renew the peoples, as he once sang to Vortigern. He sends Ganieda to the dying Rodarch and bids her call Taliesin, back from Brittany. She finds the king dead, laments him, renounces the world to live in the woods with her brother, and sets an epitaph on his tomb.

Hunc lupus æquoreus debellans vincet, et ultra
Him the-wolf of-the-sea warring-down will-conquer and beyond
Sabrinam, victum per barbara regna fugabit.
the-Severn conquered through barbarous realms will-put-to-flight
Idem Kaerkeii circumdabit obsidione
The-same Kaerkeii will-surround with-siege
passeribusque domos et mœnia trudet ad imum.
and-for-sparrows the-houses and walls will-thrust to the-bottom
Classe petet Gallos, set telo Regis obibit.
With-a-fleet he-will-attack the-Gauls but by-the-weapon of-the-King will-die
Rodarchus moritur postquam discordia longa
Rodarch dies after discord long
Scotos et Cumbros per longum tempus habebit,
the-Scots and the-Cumbrians for a-long time will-hold
donec crescenti tribuatur Cumbria denti.
until to-the-growing be-given Cumbria tooth
Cambri gemissos post illos Cornubienses
The-Welsh the-Gewissi after them the-Cornish
afficient bello, nec eos lex ulla domabit.
will-afflict with-war nor them law any will-tame

Kambria gaudebit suffuso sanguine, semper
Wales will-rejoice in-shed blood always
gens inimica Deo, quid gaudes sanguine fuso?
people hostile to-God why do-you-rejoice in-blood shed
Kambria compellet fratres committere pugnas,
Wales will-compel brothers to-join fights
et dampnare suos scelerata morte nepotes.
and to-condemn their-own with-wicked death nephews
Scotorum cunei trans Humbrum sæpius ibunt,
Of-the-Scots the-wedges across the-Humber often will-go
obstantesque viros periment, pietate remota;
and-the-opposing men will-destroy with-pity removed
non impune tamen, nam cæsus ductor obibit.
not unpunished however for slain the-leader will-die
Nomen habebit equi, qui fiet sævus in illo.
The-name he-will-have of-a-horse who will-become cruel in that
Finibus ex nostris hæres expulsus abibit.
The-borders out-of our the-heir expelled will-go-away
Scote, reconde tuos quos nudas ocius enses:
Scot put-back your which you-bare swiftly swords
vis tibi dispar erit nostra cum gente feroci.
the-force for-you unequal will-be our with people fierce
Corruet urbs Acelud, nec eam reparabit in ævum
Will-fall the-city Alclud nor it will-repair for an-age
rex aliquis, donec subdatur Scottus apello.
king any until be-subdued the-Scot by-a-challenge
Urbs Sigeni et turres et magna palatia plangent
The-city of-Sigen and towers and great palaces will-lament
diruta, donec eant ad pristina prædia Cambri.
destroyed until they-go to the-former estates the-Welsh

Kaeptis in portu sua mœnia rupta videbit,
Kaeptis in the-harbor its walls broken will-see
donec eam locuples cum vulpis dente reformet.
until it the-rich-one with of-a-fox the-tooth restore
Urbs Loel spoliata suo pastore vacabit,
The-city Loel despoiled of-its shepherd will-be-empty
donec reddat ei cambucam virga leonis.
until restore to-it the-crozier the-rod of-the-lion
Urbs Rutupi portus in littore strata jacebit;
The-city of-Rutupi the-port on the-shore laid-low will-lie
restaurabit eam galeata nave Rutenus.
will-restore it with-a-helmeted ship the-Ruthenian
Mœnia Meneviæ reparabit quintus ab illo,
The-walls of-Menevia will-repair the-fifth from him
per quem palla sibi reddetur dempta per annos:
through whom the-pall to-it will-be-restored taken-away through the-years
inque tuo Sabrina sinu cadet urbs Legionum,
and-in your Severn bosom will-fall the-city of-the-Legions
amittetque suos cives per tempora longa:
and-will-lose its citizens through times long
hos sibi reddet item cum venerit ursus in agno.
these to-it will-restore again when will-have-come the-bear in the-lamb
Saxonici reges, expulsis civibus, urbes
The-Saxon kings with-expelled citizens the-cities
rura domosque simul, per tempora longa tenebunt:
the-fields and-the-houses together through times long will-hold
ex hiis gestabunt ter tres diadema dracones.
from these will-bear three-times three the-diadem dragons
Ducenti monachi perimentur in urbe Leyri,
Two-hundred monks will-be-destroyed in the-city of-Leir

et duce depulso vacuabit mœnia Saxo:
and with-the-leader driven-off will-empty the-walls the-Saxon
qui prior ex Anglis erit in diademate Bruti
who first from the-English will-be in the-diadem of-Brutus
restaurabit item vacuatam cædibus urbem.
will-restore again the-emptied by-slaughters city
Gens fera per patriam prohibebit crisma sacrare,
A-people fierce through the-fatherland will-forbid the-chrism to-consecrate
inque Dei domibus ponet simulachra deorum.
and-in of-God the-houses will-place images of-gods
Postmodo Roma Deum reddet, mediante cuculla,
Afterward Rome God will-restore with-mediating the-cowl
rorabitque domos sacro sacer imbre sacerdos,
and-will-bedew the-houses with-sacred the-sacred rain priest
quas renovabit item pastoribus intro locatis.
which he-will-renew again with-shepherds within placed
Legis divinæ servabunt jussa subinde
Of-the-law divine they-will-keep the-commands thereafter
plures ex illis, et cœlo jure fruentur.
many of them and heaven by-right will-enjoy
Id violabit item gens impia plena veneno,
That will-violate again a-people impious full of-poison
miscebitque simul violenter fasque nephasque:
and-will-mingle together violently right and-wrong
vendet in extremos fines trans æquora natos
it-will-sell into the-farthest bounds across the-seas sons
cognatosque suos, iramque Tonantis inibit.
and-kinsfolk its-own and-the-anger of-the-Thunderer will-incur

O scelus infandum! quem Conditor orbis honore
O crime unspeakable whom the-Founder of-the-world with-the-honor
cœli dignatus, cum libertate creavit,
of-heaven having-deigned with liberty created
illum more bovis vendi, ducique ligatum!
him in-the-manner of-an-ox to-be-sold and-to-be-led bound
Cessabis miserande Deo, qui proditor olim
You-will-cease wretched-one to-God who a-traitor once
in Dominum fueras, cum primum regna subisti.
against the-Lord you-had-been when first the-realms you-entered
Classe supervenient Daci, populoque subacto
With-a-fleet will-come-upon the-Danes and-with-the-people subdued
regnabunt breviter, propulsatique redibunt.
will-reign briefly and-driven-back will-return
His duo jura dabunt, quos lædet acumine caudæ
To-these two laws will-give whom will-hurt with-the-point of-(its)-tail
fœderis oblitus pro sceptri stem[m]ate serpens.
of-the-treaty forgetful for of-the-scepter the-stem the-serpent
Indeque Neustrenses ligno trans æquora vecti,
And-thence the-Neustrians in-wood across the-seas carried
vultus ante suos et vultus retro ferentes,
faces before them and faces behind bearing
ferratis tunicis et acutis ensibus Anglos
with-iron tunics and with-sharp swords the-English
acriter invadent, periment, campoque fruentur:
fiercely will-invade will-destroy and-the-field will-enjoy

plurima regna sibi submittent, atque domabunt
very-many realms to-themselves will-subject and will-tame
externas gentes per tempora, donec erinus
foreign peoples through the-times until the-Fury
circumquaque volans virus diffundet in ipsos.
all-around flying poison will-spread among them
Tum pax atque fides et virtus omnis abibit:
Then peace and faith and virtue all will-go-away
undique per patrias committent prælia cives,
everywhere through the-fatherlands will-join battles the-citizens
virque virum prodet: non invenietur amicus:
and-man man will-betray not will-be-found a-friend
conjuge despecta, meretrices sponsus adibit;
with-(his)-wife scorned harlots the-husband will-approach
sponsaque cui cupiet, despecto conjuge, nubet.
and-the-wife whom she-will-desire with-scorned husband will-marry
Non honor ecclesiis servabitur; ordo peribit;
Not honor for-the-churches will-be-kept order will-perish
pontifices tunc arma ferent, tunc castra sequentur,
bishops then arms will-bear then camps will-follow
in tellure sacra turres et mœnia ponent,
on land sacred towers and walls will-place
militibusque dabunt quod deberetur egenis.
and-to-the-soldiers will-give what would-be-owed to-the-needy
Divitiis rapti mundano tramite current,
By-riches snatched by-the-worldly path they-will-run
eripientque Deo quod sacra tyara vetabit.
and-will-snatch from-God what the-sacred tiara will-forbid
Tres diadema ferent per quos favor ille novorum.
Three the-diadem will-bear through whom favor that of-the-new

Quartus erit sceptris, pietas cui læva nocebit,
The-fourth will-be for-the-scepters piety to-whom sinister will-harm
donec sit genitore suo vestitus, ut apri
until he-be by-the-father his clothed that of-the-boar
dentibus accinctus galeati transeat umbram.
with-the-teeth girded of-the-helmeted he-may-pass the-shadow
Quatuor ungentur vice versa summa petentes,
Four will-be-anointed by-turn reversed the-highest seeking
et duo succedent, quia sic diadema rotabunt
and two will-succeed because so the-diadem they-will-roll
ut moneant Gallos in se fera bella movere.
that they-may-urge the-Gauls against themselves fierce wars to-move
Sextus Hibernenses et eorum nomina vertet;
The-sixth the-Irish and their names will-overturn
qui pius et prudens populos renovabit et urbes.
who pious and prudent the-peoples will-renew and the-cities
Hæc Vortigerno cecini prolixius olim,
These-things to-Vortigern I-sang more-at-length once
exponendo duum sibi mistica bella draconum
by-expounding of-the-two to-him the-mystic wars dragons
in ripa stagni quando consedimus hausti.
on the-bank of-the-pool when we-sat-down drained
At tu vade domum, morientem visere regem,
But you go home the-dying to-visit king
o dilecta soror! Thelgesinoque venire
o beloved sister and-Taliesin to-come
præcipe; namque loqui desidero plurima secum.
order for to-speak I-desire very-many-things with-him
Venit enim noviter de partibus Armoricanis,
He-has-come for newly from the-parts Armorican

dulcia quo didicit sapientis dogmata Gildæ.»
the-sweet where he-learned of-wise teachings Gildas
It Ganieda domum, Thelgesinumque reversum,
Goes Ganieda home and-Taliesin returned
defunctumque ducem reperit, tristesque clientes.
and-dead the-leader finds and-sad the-retainers
Ergo fluens lacrimis collabitur inter amicos,
Therefore flowing with-tears she-collapses among (her)-friends
et laniat crines, et profert talia dicens: —
and tears (her)-hair and utters such-things saying
«Funera Rodarchi, mulieres, plangite mecum!
The-funeral of-Rodarch women lament with-me
Ac deflete virum qualem non protulit orbis
And weep-for the-man such-as not has-brought-forth the-world
hactenus, in nostro quantum discernimus ævo.
hitherto in our as-far-as we-discern age
Pacis amator erat: populo nam jura feroci
Of-peace a-lover he-was for-the-people for laws fierce
sic dabat, ut nulli vis inferretur ab ullo.
so he-gave that on-none force be-brought by any
Tractabat sanctum justo moderamine clerum:
He-treated the-holy with-just governance clergy
jure regi populos summos humilesque sinebat.
by-right to-be-ruled the-peoples the-highest and-the-humble he-allowed
Largus erat; nam multa dabat, vix quid retinebat:
Generous he-was for many-things he-gave scarcely anything he-kept
omnibus omnis erat, faciens quodcumque decebat.
to-all all he-was doing whatever befitted

Flos equitum, regumque decor, regnique columpna
The-flower of-knights and-of-kings the-grace and-of-the-kingdom the-pillar
(heu michi!) qui fueras, inopinis vermibus esca
woe to-me who you-had-been for-unexpected worms food
nunc datus es, corpusque tuum putrescit in urna!
now given you-are and-body your rots in the-urn
Sicne cubile tibi post serica pulcra paratur?
So a-bed for-you after silks beautiful is-prepared
Siccine sub gelido, caro candida, regia membra
So under icy the-flesh white the-royal limbs
condentur saxo; nec eris nisi pulvis et ossa?
will-be-hidden stone nor will-you-be except dust and bones
Sic equidem: nam sors hominum miseranda per ævum
So indeed for the-lot of-men pitiable through the-ages
ducitur, ut nequeant ad pristina jura reduci.
is-led that they-cannot to the-former rights to-be-brought-back
Ergo nichil prodest pereuntis gloria mundi,
Therefore nothing profits of-the-perishing glory world
quæ fugit atque redit, fallit læditque potentes.
which flees and returns deceives and-harms the-powerful
Melle suo delinit apes quod postmodo pungit;
With-honey its-own soothes the-bee what afterward it-stings
sic quos demulsit divertens gloria mundi,
so those-whom it-soothed turning-aside the-glory of-the-world
fallit, et ingratæ collidit verbere caudæ.
deceives and of-(its)-ungrateful strikes with-the-blow tail
Fit breve quod præstat, quod habet durabile non est:
It-becomes brief what it-offers what it-has lasting not is
more fluentis aquæ transit quodcumque ministrat.
in-the-manner of-flowing water passes whatever it-supplies

Quid rosa si rutilet, si candida lilia vernent,
What the-rose if it-glows-red if white lilies bloom
si sit pulcher homo, vel equus, vel cætera plura?
if be beautiful a-man or a-horse or other many-things
Ista Creatori non mundo sunt referenda.
These to-the-Creator not to-the-world are to-be-referred
Felices igitur qui perstant corde piato,
Happy therefore who persist with-heart purified
obsequiumque Deo faciunt, mundumque relinquunt:
and-service to-God do and-the-world leave
illis perpetuo fungi concedet honore,
to-them with-perpetual to-enjoy will-grant honor
qui sine fine regit, Christus, qui cuncta creavit,
who without end rules Christ who all-things created
vos igitur proceres, vos mœnia celsa, laresque,
you therefore nobles you walls lofty and-household-gods
vos nati dulces, mundanaque cuncta relinquo;
you children sweet and-worldly all-things I-leave
et cum fratre meo silvas habitabo, Deumque
and with brother my the-woods I-shall-inhabit and-God
læta mente colam, nigri cum tegmine pepli.»
with-glad mind I-shall-worship of-black with the-covering veil
Hæc ait; atque suo persolvit justa marito;
These-things she-says and to-her performed the-rites husband
signavitque suam cum tali carmine tumbam:
and-marked her with such a-song tomb
Rodarchus largus, quo largior alter in orbe
Rodarch the-generous than-whom more-generous another in the-world
non erat, hic modica magnus requiescit in urna.
not was here small great rests in urn

TALIESIN ON THE MAKING OF THE WORLD

Taliesin comes to explain wind and rain, and teaches what Minerva dictates: the Creator made four elements; the earth in five zones, and clouds that fill from the rivers and pour rain, snow, and hail; the heavens of stars and angels; the airy heaven of spirits who carry men's prayers and of demons who deceive them; the three seas, the boiling one where sinners are judged, the cold, and our own, with the wonders of their fishes; and the islands, Britain first, rich in everything, with hot springs that heal the sick.

Venerat interea Merlinum visere vatem
Had-come meanwhile Merlin to-visit the-seer
tunc Telgesinus, qui discere missus ab illo
then Taliesin who to-learn sent by him
quid ventus nimbusve foret; nam mixtus uterque
what wind or-rain-cloud might-be for mixed each
tunc simul instabant et nubila conficiebant.
then together pressed and clouds were-forming
Hæc documenta dabat socia dictante Minerva.
These lessons he-gave with-(his)-companion dictating Minerva
«Quatuor ex nichilo produxit Conditor orbis,
Four out-of nothing brought-forth the-Founder of-the-world
ut fierent rebus præcedens causa creandis,
that they-might-become for-things preceding the-cause to-be-created
materiesque simul, concordi pace jugata.
and-the-matter together in-harmonious peace yoked
Cœlum quod stellis depinxit, et altius exstat,
The-heaven which with-stars he-painted and higher stands-out
et quasi testa nucem circumdans omnia claudit:
and as-if a-shell the-nut surrounding all-things encloses

aera deinde dedit, formandis vocibus aptum,
the-air then he-gave for-forming voices fit
quo mediante dies et noctes sidera præstant:
through-which mediating days and nights the-stars furnish
et mare, quod terras cingit, validoque recursu
and the-sea which the-lands girds and-with-strong backflow
quatuor amfractus faciens, sic aera pulsat
four windings making so the-air strikes
ut generet ventos, qui quatuor esse feruntur.
that it-may-generate winds which four to-be are-said
Vique sua stantem nec se levitate moventem
And-by-force its-own standing nor itself by-lightness moving
supposuit terram, partes in quinque resectam;
he-set-beneath the-earth parts into five cut
quarum quæ media [est] non est habitanda calore,
of-which that-which middle is not is to-be-inhabited for-heat
extremæque duæ præ frigore diffugiuntur.
and-the-outermost two for cold are-fled
Temperiem reliquis permisit habere duabus:
A-temperate-climate to-the-remaining he-allowed to-have two
has homines habitant, volucresque gregesque ferarum.
these men inhabit and-birds and-herds of-beasts
Utque darent subitas pluvias, quo crescere fructus
And-that they-might-give sudden rains whereby to-grow the-fruits
arboris et terræ facerent aspergine miti,
of-the-tree and of-the-earth might-make with-sprinkling gentle
adjecit cœlo nubes; quæ, sole ministro,
he-added to-heaven clouds which with-the-sun ministering
sicut utres fluviis occulta lege replentur:
like wineskins from-the-rivers by-hidden law are-filled

inde per excelsum scandentes æthera, sumptos
thence through the-high climbing ether the-taken-up
diffundunt latices, ventorum viribus actæ.
pour-out waters of-the-winds by-the-forces driven
Hinc fiunt imbres, hinc nix, hinc grando rotunda,
Hence come rains hence snow hence hail round
cum gelidus madidus movet sua flamina ventus,
when the-cold wet moves its blasts wind
qui nubes penetrans quales facit egerit amnes,
which the-clouds penetrating such it-makes it-has-discharged rivers
naturamque suam zonarum proximitate,
and-nature its of-the-zones by-nearness
ventorum sibi quisque trahit dum nascitur illuc.
of-the-winds to-itself each draws while it-is-born there
Post firmamentum quo lucida sidera fixit,
After the-firmament in-which the-shining stars he-fixed
æthereum cœlum posuit, tribuitque colendum
the-ethereal heaven he-placed and-gave to-be-inhabited
cœtibus angelicis, quos contemplatio digna
to-the-throngs angelic whom contemplation worthy
ac dulcedo Dei reficit miranda per ævum.
and sweetness of-God refreshes wonderful through the-ages
Hoc quoque depinxit stellis et sole chorusco,
This also he-painted with-stars and with-the-sun flashing
indicens legem quæ certo limite stella
proclaiming a-law by-which in-fixed bound a-star
per sibi commissum posset discurrere cœlum.
through to-it entrusted could to-run-about the-heaven

Postmodo supposuit lunari corpore fulgens
Afterward he-set-beneath with-lunar body shining
aerium cœlum, quod per loca celsa redundat
the-airy heaven which through places high abounds
spirituum cuneis, qui nobis compatiuntur
of-spirits with-wedges who with-us suffer-with
et collætantur dum sic aliterve movemur:
and rejoice-with while thus or-otherwise we-are-moved
suntque preces hominum soliti perferre per auras,
and-they-are the-prayers of-men wont to-carry through the-airs
atque rogare Deum quod sit placabilis illis;
and to-ask God that he-be placable to-them
affectumque Dei sompno vel voce referre,
and-the-feeling of-God by-sleep or by-voice to-report
vel signis aliis, ut fiant inde scientes.
or by-signs other that they-may-become thence knowing
At cacodæmonibus post lunam subtus habundat,
But with-evil-demons after the-moon below it-abounds
qui nos decipiunt et temptant, fallere docti;
who us deceive and try to-cheat skilled
et sibi multotiens ex aere corpore sumpto
and to-themselves many-times from air with-a-body taken
nobis apparent, et plurima sæpe sequuntur
to-us appear and very-many-things often follow
quin etiam coitu mulieres agrediuntur
nay even in-intercourse women they-approach
et faciunt gravidas, generantes more prophano.
and make pregnant begetting in-a-manner profane

Sic igitur cœlos habitatos ordine terno
So therefore the-heavens inhabited with-order threefold
spirituum fecit, foveant ut singula quæque,
of-spirits he-made might-cherish that single each-thing
ac renovet mundum renovato germine rerum.
and renew the-world with-renewed seed of-things
Et mare per species varias distinxit, ut ex se
And the-sea through kinds various he-distinguished that out-of itself
proferret rerum formas generando per ævum.
it-might-bring-forth of-things the-forms by-generating through the-ages
Pars etenim fervet, pars friget, et una duabus
Part for boils part is-cold and one from-the-two
temperiem sumens nobis alimenta ministrat.
temperateness taking for-us nourishment supplies
Ast ea quæ fervet, baratrum cum gentibus acris
But that which boils the-abyss with peoples fierce
circuit, et terræ diversis fluctibus orbem
goes-round and of-the-earth with-diverse waves the-globe
secernit refluens, ignes ex ignibus augens.
separates flowing-back fires from fires increasing
Illic descendunt qui leges transgrediuntur,
There descend who the-laws transgress
postpositoque Deo, quo vult perversa voluntas
and-with-put-aside God where wishes perverse the-will
incedunt, avidi corrumpere quod prohibentur.
go greedy to-corrupt what they-are-forbidden
Trux ibi stat judex æquali lance rependens,
Grim there stands the-judge with-equal balance repaying
cuique suum meritum condignaque debita solvit.
to-each his-own desert and-worthy debts pays

Altera, quæ friget, prætonsas volvit harenas
The-other which is-cold the-shorn rolls sands
quos secum gignit vicino prima vapore
which with-itself it-begets with-neighboring first vapor
quando suos radios inmiscet stella Diones.
when her rays mingles the-star of-Dione
Hanc perhibent Arabes gemmas generare micantes,
This say the-Arabs gems to-generate glittering
dum peragrat pisces, dum respicit æquora flammis;
while it-traverses the-Fishes while it-looks-back on-the-seas with-flames
hæc virtute sua populis gestantibus ipsas
these by-virtue their-own to-the-peoples wearing them
prosunt, et multos reddunt servantque salubres:
profit and many render and-keep healthy
has quoque per species distinxit (ut omnia) Factor,
these also through kinds distinguished as all-things the-Maker
ut discernamus per formas perque colores,
that we-may-discern through forms and-through colors
cujus sint generis, cujus virtutis apertæ.
of-what they-are kind of-what power manifest
Tertia forma maris quæ nostrum circuit orbem,
The-third form of-the-sea which our goes-round world
proximitate sua nobis bona multa ministrat.
by-nearness its to-us goods many supplies
Nutrit enim pisces et sal producit habunda,
It-nourishes for fishes and salt produces abundant
fertque refertque rates commercia nostra ferentes,
and-carries and-carries-back ships commerce our bearing
unde suo lucro subito fit dives egenus.
whence by-its gain suddenly becomes rich the-needy

Vicinam fæcundat humum, pascitque volucres,
The-neighboring it-fertilizes soil and-feeds birds
quas perhibent ortas illinc cum piscibus esse,
which they-say sprung thence with fishes to-be
dissimilique tamen naturæ jure moventur;
and-by-unlike however of-nature law they-are-moved
plus etenim dominatur eis quam piscibus æquor,
more for rules over-them than over-fishes the-sea
unde leves excelsa petunt per inane volantes.
whence light the-heights they-seek through the-void flying
At pisces suus humor agit reprimitque sub undis,
But the-fishes their moisture drives and-holds-down under the-waves
nec sinit ut vivant dum sicca luce fruuntur.
nor allows that they-live while dry light they-enjoy
Hos quoque per species distinxit factor eorum,
These also through kinds distinguished the-maker of-them
naturamque dedit distinctis, unde per ævum
and-a-nature gave to-the-distinguished whence through the-ages
mirandi fierent, ægrotantique salubres.
to-be-wondered-at they-might-become and-to-the-sick healthful
Nempe ferunt nullum cohibere libidinis æstum,
Indeed they-say none to-hold-in of-lust the-heat
set reddit cœcos jugiter vescentis ocellos:
but makes blind constantly of-the-eater the-little-eyes
at qui nomen habet timeos de flore timallus,
but which the-name has thyme from the-flower the-grayling
sic quoniam redolet, vescentem sæpius illo
so because it-smells-of the-eater more-often by-it
protrahit, ut tales oleat per flumina pisces.
it-draws-out that such it-should-smell-of through the-rivers fishes

Femineo sexu subtracto iure murænas
With-the-female sex withdrawn by-right the-morays
esse ferunt cunctas, coeunt tamen ac renovantur,
to-be they-say all they-couple however and are-renewed
multiplicantque suos alieno germine fœtus.
and-multiply their with-alien seed offspring
Conveniunt etenim per littora sæpius angues
Come-together for along the-shores often serpents
quo degunt, faciuntque sonos et sibila grati,
where they-dwell and-make sounds and hissings pleasing
et sic eductis coeunt ex more murænis.
and so with-drawn-out couple according-to custom with-the-morays
Est quoque mirandum quod semipedalis echinus,
It-is also to-be-wondered-at that the-half-foot echinus
hærens cui fuerit fixam quasi littore navem
clinging to-which it-has-been fixed as-if to-the-shore the-ship
detinet in ponto, nec eam permittet abire
holds in the-sea nor it will-allow to-go-away
donec discedat; tali virtute timendus.
until it-departs with-such power to-be-feared
Quemque vocant gladium, quia rostro lædit acuto,
And-that-which they-call the-sword because with-(its)-beak it-hurts sharp
sæpius hunc nantem metuunt accedere navi;
often this-one swimming they-fear to-approach the-ship
nam si sumptus erit confestim perforat illam,
for if taken it-shall-be at-once it-pierces it
et mergit sectam subito cum gurgite navem.
and sinks the-cut suddenly with the-whirlpool ship
Fitque suis cristis metuendus serra carinis,
And-becomes by-its crests to-be-feared the-sawfish to-keels

quas infigit eis dum subnatat, atque secatas
which it-fixes in-them while it-swims-under and the-cut
deicit in fluctus, crista velut ense timendus.
throws-down into the-waves with-(its)-crest as-if with-a-sword to-be-feared
Æquoreusque draco, qui fertur habere venenum
And-the-sea dragon which is-said to-have poison
sub pennis, metuendus erit capientibus illum;
under (its)-fins to-be-feared will-be to-those-catching it
et quociens pungit, lædit, fundendo venenum.
and as-often-as it-stings it-harms by-pouring poison
Ast alias clades torpedo fertur habere;
But other disasters the-torpedo is-said to-have
nam qui tangit eam viventem, protinus illi
for who touches it living at-once to-him
brachia cum pedibus torpent, et cætera membra,
the-arms with the-feet grow-numb and the-other limbs
officioque suo quasi mortua destituuntur:
and-from-office their as-if dead are-deprived
sic solet esse nocens illius corporis aura.
so is-wont to-be harmful of-its body the-breath
Hiis Deus ac aliis ditavit piscibus æquor;
With-these God and other enriched fishes the-sea
adjecitque suis plures in fructibus orbes,
and-added to-its many in fruits worlds
quos habitant homines pro fertilitate reperta,
which inhabit men for the-fertility found
quam producit ibi fœcundo cespite tellus.
which produces there with-fertile turf the-earth
Quarum prima quidem meliorque Britannia fertur,
Of-which the-first indeed and-better Britain is-said

ubertate sua producens singula rerum:
by-fertility its-own producing every-one of-things
fert etenim segetes quæ nobile munus odoris
it-bears for crops which the-noble gift of-scent
usibus humanis tribuunt, reddendo per annum;
to-uses human grant by-rendering through the-year
silvas et saltus, et ab hiis stillantia mella,
woods and glades and from these dripping boneys
aerios montes, lateque virentia prata,
airy mountains and-widely green meadows
fontes et fluvios, pisces, pecudesque, ferasque,
springs and rivers fishes and-cattle and-beasts
arboreos fructus, gemmas, preciosa metalla,
tree fruits gems precious metals
et quicquid præstare solet natura creatrix.
and whatever to-furnish is-wont nature creative
Præterea fontes unda fervente salubres,
Besides springs with-wave boiling healthful
quæ fovet ægrotos et balnea grata ministrat,
which cherishes the-sick and baths pleasing supplies
at subito sanos pellit, languore repulso.
but suddenly the-healthy it-drives-out with-languor repelled
Sic ac blandus eos regni dum sceptra teneret
So and charming them of-the-kingdom while the-scepters he-held
constituit nomenque suæ consortis Alaron.
established and-the-name of-his consort Alaron
Utilis ad plures laticis medicamine morbos,
Useful for many of-water by-the-medicine diseases
set mage femineos, ut sæpius unda probavit.
but more womanly as often the-wave has-proved

Taliesin describes the islands, among them the Island of Apples, where Morgen and her sisters rule, and tells how after the battle of Camlan he and Barinthus brought the wounded Arthur there, and Morgen promised to heal him. Merlin laments how the kingdom has since been torn by its nobles and the Saxons. When Taliesin proposes calling Arthur back, Merlin says the Saxons will rule long, until Conan and Cadwallader unite the Britons and restore the crown. He recalls the crime of Vortigern, the coming of Hengist and Horsa, and Vortimer's wars.

Adjacet huic Thanatos, quæ multis rebus habundat;
Lies-beside this Thanet which in-many things abounds
mortifero serpente caret, tollitque venenum
of-the-death-bearing serpent it-lacks and-removes poison
si sua cum vino tellus commixta bibatur.
if its with wine earth mixed be-drunk
Orchades a nobis nostrum quoque dividit æquor,
The-Orkneys from us our also divides sea
hæ tres ter denæ sejuncto flumine fiunt:
these three three-times ten with-separated stream become
bis denæ cultore carent, aliæque coluntur.
twice ten of-a-tiller lack and-others are-tilled
Ultima quæ Ytilie nomen de sole recepit
The-last which Thule the-name from the-sun received
propter solstitium, quod sol æstivus ibidem
on-account-of the-solstice which the-sun of-summer there
dum facit, avertit radium, ne luceat ultra;
while it-makes turns-away (its)-ray lest it-shine further

abducitque dies ut semper nocte perhenni
and-takes-away the-days so-that always with-night perpetual
aer agat tenebras, faciat quoque frigore pontum
the-air drives darkness makes also with-cold the-sea
concretum pigrumque simul, ratibusque negatum.
congealed and-sluggish at-once and-to-ships denied
Insula post nostram præstantior omnibus esse
The-island after ours more-excellent than-all to-be
fertur Hibernensis, felici fertilitate.
is-said the-Irish with-happy fertility
Est etiam major, nec apes, nec aves nisi raras
It-is also greater neither bees nor birds except rare
educit, penitusque negat generare colubres.
it-brings-forth and-utterly refuses to-generate snakes
Unde fit ut tellus illinc avecta lapisve
Whence it-comes that earth from-there carried or-stone
si superaddatur, serpentes tollat apesque.
if it-be-added serpents it-may-remove and-bees
Gadibus Herculeis adjungitur insula Gades:
To-the-Gades of-Hercules is-joined the-island Gades
nascitur hic arbor cujus de cortice gummi
is-born here a-tree whose from bark gum
stillat, quo gemmæ fiunt super illita jura.
drips by-which gems become upon smeared the-laws
Hesperides vigilem perhibentur habere draconem,
The-Hesperides a-watchful are-said to-have dragon
quem servare ferunt sub frondibus aurea poma.
which to-guard they-say under the-leaves golden apples
Gorgades habitant mulieres corporis hirci,
The-Gorgades inhabit women of-body of-a-goat

quæ celeri cursu lepores superare feruntur.
who with-swift running hares to-surpass are-said
Argiræ Crissæque gerunt ut dicitur aurum,
Argyre and-Chryse bear as is-said gold
argentumque simul ceu vilia saxa Corinthus.
and-silver at-once as cheap stones Corinth
Taprobana viret fœcunda cespite grata;
Taprobane is-green fruitful with-turf pleasing
bis etenim segetes anno producit in uno,
twice for crops in-year produces in one
bis gerit æstatem, bis ver, bis colligit uvas
twice it-has summer twice spring twice gathers grapes
et fructus alios; nitidis gratissima gemis.
and fruits other with-shining most-pleasing gems
Atilis æterno producit vere virentes
Tile with-eternal produces spring green
flores et frondes, per tempora cuncta virendo.
flowers and leaves through times all by-being-green
Insula Pomorum quæ Fortunata vocatur,
The-island of-Apples which Fortunate is-called
ex re nomen habet, quia per se singula profert:
from the-thing (its)-name has because by itself every-one brings-forth
non opus est illi sulcantibus arva colonis;
not need is to-it of-plowing the-fields farmers
omnis abest cultus nisi quem natura ministrat:
all is-absent tilling except which nature supplies
ultro fœcundas segetes producit et uvas,
of-its-own-accord fruitful crops it-produces and grapes
nataque poma suis prætonso germine silvis;
and-born apples in-its with-shorn shoot woods

omnia gignit humus vice graminis ultro redundans.
all-things begets the-soil instead of-grass of-its-own-accord overflowing
Annis centenis aut ultra vivitur illic,
For-years a-hundred or beyond is-lived there
illic jura novem geniali lege sorores
there laws nine by-genial law sisters
dant his qui veniunt nostris ex partibus ad se:
give to-those who come our from parts to them
quarum quæ prior est fit doctior arte medendi;
of-whom she-who first is becomes more-learned in-the-art of-healing
exceditque suas forma præstante sorores;
and-surpasses her with-beauty outstanding sisters
Morgen ei nomen, didicitque quid utilitatis
Morgen to-her the-name and-she-learned what of-usefulness
gramina cuncta ferant, ut languida corpora curet;
the-grasses all bear that languid bodies she-may-cure
ars quoque nota sibi qua scit mutare figuram,
an-art also known to-her by-which she-knows to-change (her)-shape
et resecare novis quasi Dædalus aera pennis;
and to-cut with-new as-if Daedalus the-airs wings
cum vult est Bristi, Carnoti, sive Papiæ,
when she-wishes she-is at-Brest at-Chartres or at-Pavia
cum vult in nostris ex aere labitur horis.
when she-wishes in our from the-air glides shores
Hancque mathematicam dicunt didicisse sorores,
And-this mathematics they-say to-have-learned the-sisters
Moronoe, Mazoe, Gliten, Glitonea, Gliton,
Moronoe Mazoe Gliten Glitonea Gliton
Tyronoe, Thiten, cithara notissima Thiten.
Tyronoe Thiten with-the-lyre most-famous Thiten

Illuc, post bellum Camblani, vulnere læsum
Thither after the-war of-Camlan with-a-wound harmed
duximus Arcturum, nos conducente Barintho,
we-led Arthur us with-guiding Barinthus
æquora cui fuerant et cœli sydera nota.
the-seas to-whom had-been and of-heaven the-stars known
Hoc rectore ratis, cum principe venimus illuc,
With-this helmsman of-the-ship with the-prince we-came thither
et nos quo decuit Morgen suscepit honore,
and us with-which was-fitting Morgen received honor
inque suis talamis posuit super aurea regem
and-in her chambers placed on golden the-king
stulta, manuque sibi detexit vulnus honesta,
foolish-things and-with-hand for-herself uncovered the-wound honorable
inspexitque diu; tandemque redire salutem
and-examined long and-at-last to-return health
posse sibi dixit, si secum tempore longo
to-be-able to-him she-said if with-her for-a-time long
esset, et ipsius vellet medicamine fungi.
he-were and her he-wished of-the-medicine to-enjoy
Gaudentes igitur regem commisimus illi,
Rejoicing therefore the-king we-entrusted to-her
et dedimus ventis redeundo vela secundis.»
and we-gave to-the-winds in-returning the-sails favorable
Tunc Merlinus ad hæc ait: «O! dilecte sodalis,
Then Merlin to these-things says O beloved comrade
postmodo quanta tulit violato fœdere regnum,
afterward how-much bore with-violated treaty the-kingdom

ut modo quod fuerat non sit! nam sorte sinistra
so-that now what it-had-been not it-be for by-lot sinister
subducti proceres ac in sua viscera versi,
withdrawn the-nobles and into their-own vitals turned
omnia turbarunt, ut copia diviciarum
all-things disturbed so-that the-abundance of-riches
fugerit ex patria bonitasque recesserit omnis,
has-fled from the-fatherland and-goodness has-withdrawn all
et desolati vacuent sua mœnia cives.
and desolate empty their walls the-citizens
Insuper incumbit gens Saxona marte feroci,
Besides presses the-people Saxon with-war fierce
quæ nos et nostras iterum crudeliter urbes
which us and our again cruelly cities
subvertet, legemque Dei violabit et ædes.
will-overturn and-the-law of-God will-violate and the-shrines
Nempe Deus nobis, ut corrigat insipientes,
Indeed God for-us that he-may-correct the-foolish
has patitur clades, ob crimina nostra, venire.»
these suffers disasters for crimes our to-come
Nondum desierat cum talia protulit alter:
Not-yet had-ceased when such-things brought-forth the-other
«Ergo necesse foret populo transmittere quemdam,
Therefore necessary it-would-be for-the-people to-send someone
et mandare duci festina nave redire,
and to-bid the-leader in-a-hurried ship to-return
si jam convaluit; solitis ut viribus hostes
if already he-has-recovered with-(his)-accustomed that strength the-enemies
arceat, et cives antiqua pace reformet.»
he-may-ward-off and the-citizens with-the-ancient peace may-restore

«Non;» Merlinus ait, «Non sic gens illa recedet,
Not Merlin says Not so people that will-withdraw
ut semel in nostris ungues infixerit ortis:
when once in our its-claws it-has-fixed gardens
regnum namque prius populosque jugabit et urbes,
the-kingdom for first and-peoples it-will-yoke and the-cities
viribus atque suis multis dominabitur annis.
with-strength and its-own for-many will-rule years
Tres tamen ex nostris magna virtute resistent,
Three however of ours with-great valor will-resist
et multos periment, et eos in fine domabunt:
and many will-destroy and them in the-end will-tame
set non perficient, quia sic sententia summi
but not they-will-complete because so the-sentence of-the-highest
judicis existit, Britones ut nobile regnum
of-the-judge stands the-Britons that the-noble kingdom
temporibus multis amittant debilitate,
for-times many may-lose by-weakness
donec ab Armorico veniet temone Conanus,
until from the-Armorican will-come chariot Conan
et Cadwalladrus Cambrorum dum venerandus;
and Cadwallader of-the-Welsh while venerable
qui pariter Scotos, Cumbros, et Cornubienses,
who alike the-Scots the-Cumbrians and the-Cornish
Armoricosque viros sociabunt fœdere firmo;
and-the-Armorican men will-ally by-treaty firm
amissumque suis reddent diadema colonis,
and-the-lost to-their will-restore diadem inhabitants
hostibus expulsis, renovato tempore Bruti,
with-the-enemies expelled with-renewed the-time of-Brutus

tractabuntque suas sacratis legibus urbes.
and-will-handle their with-sacred laws cities
Incipient reges iterum superare remotos,
Will-begin the-kings again to-overcome the-remote
et sua regna sibi certamine subdere forti.»
and their realms to-themselves by-contest to-subject strong
«Nemo superstes erit tunc ex hiis qui modo vivunt,»
No-one surviving will-be then of these who now live
Telgesinus ait, «nec tot fera prælia quemquam
Taliesin says nor so-many fierce battles anyone
inter concives, quot te vidisse putamus.»
among fellow-citizens as-many-as you to-have-seen we-think
«Sic equidem,» Merlinus ait, «nam tempore multo
So indeed Merlin says for for-a-time long
vixi, multa videns, et de nostratibus in se,
I-have-lived many-things seeing both of (our)-countrymen among themselves
et de barbarica turbanti singula gente.
and of the-barbarous disturbing every-thing people
Crimen quod memini cum Constans proditus esset,
The-crime which I-remember when Constans betrayed had-been
et defugissent parvi trans æquora fratres
and had-fled the-little across the-seas brothers
Uter et Ambrosius, cœperunt ilico bella
Uther and Ambrosius began at-once wars
per regnum fieri quod tunc rectore carebat.
through the-kingdom to-be-made which then of-a-ruler lacked
Vortigernus enim consul Gewissus in omnes
Vortigern for the-consul of-the-Gewissi against all
agmina ducebat patrias, ut duceret illas,
the-columns led the-native that he-might-lead them

lædens innocuos miseranda clade colonos:
harming the-innocent with-pitiable slaughter inhabitants
denique vi subita rapuit diadema, peremptis
finally by-force sudden he-seized the-diadem with-slain
nobilibus multis et regni cuncta subegit.
nobles many and of-the-kingdom all-things subdued
Ast hii qui fuerant cognato sanguine juncti
But those who had-been by-kindred blood joined
fratribus, id graviter tolerantes, igne cremare
to-the-brothers that heavily bearing with-fire to-burn
cœperunt cunctas infausti principis urbes,
began all of-the-ill-starred prince the-cities
et turbare suum crudeli milite regnum,
and to-disturb his with-cruel soldiery kingdom
nec permiserunt illum cum pace potiri.
nor allowed him with peace to-possess-it
Anxius ergo manens, cum non abstare rebelli
Anxious therefore remaining since not to-hold-off the-rebellious
quivisset populo, parat invitare remotos
he-had-been-able people he-prepares to-invite remote
ad sua bella viros, quibus obvius iret in hostes.
to his wars men with-whom to-meet he-might-go against the-enemies
Mox ex diversis venerunt partibus orbis
Soon from diverse came parts of-the-world
pugnaces turmæ, quas excipiebat honore.
warlike troops whom he-received with-honor
Saxona gens etiam, curvis advecta carinis,
The-Saxon people also in-curved carried keels
ejus ad obsequium galeato milite venit:
his to the-service with-helmeted soldiery came

huic duo præfuerant audaci pectore fratres
over-this two had-presided with-bold breast brothers
Horsus et Hengistus, qui proditione nefanda
Horsa and Hengist who by-treachery unspeakable
postmodo læserunt populos, læsereque urbes.
afterward harmed the-peoples and-harmed the-cities
Postquam namque ducem famulatus sedulitate
After for the-leader of-service by-the-diligence
attraxere sibi, cives quoque lite propinqua
they-had-drawn to-themselves the-citizens also by-strife near
viderunt motos leviter quo subdere regem
they-saw moved lightly whereby to-subdue the-king
possent; in populos verterunt arma feroces,
they-could against the-peoples turned (their)-arms fierce
ruperuntque fidem, proceres quoque præmeditatos
and-broke faith the-nobles also premeditated
fraude necaverunt sedentes ferme vocatos
by-fraud they-killed sitting almost summoned
insimul, ut pacem secum fœdusque jugarent;
together that peace with-them and-treaty they-might-join
truseruntque ducem nivei trans ardua montis:
and-thrust the-leader of-snowy across the-heights of-the-mountain
quæ sibi de regno cœpi cantare futura.
which-things to-him about the-kingdom I-began to-sing things-to-come
Inde domos patriæ peragrantes igne cremabant,
Thence the-houses of-the-fatherland wandering-through with-fire they-burned
et nitebantur sibimet submittere cuncta.
and strove to-themselves to-subject all-things

At Vortimerus cum causa pericula regni
But Vortimer when as-the-cause the-dangers of-the-kingdom
expulsumque patrem Bruti vidisset ab aula;
and-expelled (his)-father of-Brutus he-had-seen from the-court
assensu populi sumpsit diadema, feramque
with-the-assent of-the-people took the-diadem and-the-fierce
invasit gentem concives dilaniantem,
invaded people the-fellow-citizens tearing-apart
atque coegit eam per plurima bella redire
and compelled it through very-many wars to-return
in Thanatum, qua classis erat quæ vexerat illam.
into Thanet where the-fleet was which had-carried it
Set dum diffugerent, bellator corruit Horsus,
But while they-fled the-warrior fell Horsa
et plures alii, nostris perimentibus illos.
and many others with-ours destroying them
Inde secutus eos circumdedit obsidione
Thence having-followed them surrounded with-siege
ilico rex, Tanathum terra marique resistens:
at-once the-king Thanet by-land and-by-sea resisting
set non prævaluit: subito nam classe potiti,
but not he-prevailed suddenly for of-the-fleet having-gained-possession
vi magna fecere viam, ductique per æquor
by-force great they-made a-way and-led across the-sea
exegere suam festino remige terram.
sought their with-hurried oarsman land

Merlin continues: Vortimer was poisoned by Hengist's sister; Ambrosius and Uther came from Brittany, burned Vortigern in his tower, and beat the Saxons. Ambrosius died of a physician's poison, and Uther's son Arthur, helped by Hoel of Brittany, conquered the Scots, Irish, Norwegians, Danes, Gauls, and Romans, until Mordred's treachery with the queen and the last battle sent him to the nymphs; Mordred's sons, Constantine, and Conan then tore the kingdom. A new spring bursts out below the mountains; Merlin drinks, is cured of his madness, and praises God.

Ergo triumphato bellis victricibus hoste,
Therefore with-triumphed-over by-wars victorious the-enemy
fit Vortimerus rector venerandus in orbe,
becomes Vortimer ruler venerable in the-world
attrectando suum justo moderamine regnum.
by-handling his with-just governance kingdom
Set soror Hengisti successus Renua tales
But the-sister of-Hengist successes Renua such
indignando ferens, protectaque fraude venenum
indignantly bearing and-with-shielded fraud poison
miscuit, existens pro fratre maligna noverca,
mixed being for (her)-brother a-malign stepmother
et dedit ut biberet, fecitque perire bibentem:
and gave that he-might-drink and-made to-perish the-drinker
confestimque suo mandavit trans freta fratri,
and-at-once to-her sent across the-straits brother
ut remearet item cum tot tantisque catervis
that he-should-return again with so-many and-such companies
quot sibi pugnaces posset submittere cives.
as-many-as to-himself warlike he-could to-subject citizens

Sic igitur fecit; nam tantus in agmina nostra
So therefore he-did for so-great against columns our
venit, ut eriperet cunctis sua prædia prægnans,
he-came that he-snatched from-all their estates pregnant
et loca per patrias penitus combureret igne.
and the-places through the-fatherlands utterly burned with-fire
Hæc ita dum fierent, in finibus Armoricanis
These-things so while were-done in the-borders Armorican
Uter et Ambrosius fuerant cum rege Biduco:
Uther and Ambrosius had-been with king Biducus
jam gladio fiunt cuncti belloque probati,
already with-the-sword they-become all and-in-war proved
et sibi diversas sociabant undique turmas,
and to-themselves diverse allied from-everywhere troops
ut peterent natale solum, gentesque fugarent
that they-might-seek (their)-native soil and-the-peoples put-to-flight
quod tunc instabant patriam vastare paternam.
because then were-pressing the-fatherland to-lay-waste paternal
Ergo dedere suas vento marique carinas,
Therefore they-gave their to-wind and-to-sea keels
præsidioque suis concivibus applicuerunt:
and-as-a-garrison to-their fellow-citizens they-landed
nam Vortigernum per Cambrica regna fugatum,
for Vortigern through the-Welsh realms put-to-flight
inclusumque, sua pariter cum turre cremarunt.
and-shut-in his alike with tower they-burned
Enses inde suos vertere recenter in Anglos;
Swords thence their they-turned freshly against the-English
congressique simul vincebant sæpius illos,
and-having-clashed together they-conquered often them

et vice transversa devincebantur ab illis.
and in-turn reversed were-defeated by them

Denique consortis magno conamine dextris
Finally with-allied with-great effort right-hands

instant nostrates, et lædunt acriter hostes,
press-on (our)-countrymen and harm fiercely the-enemies

Hengistumque necant, Christoque volente triumphant.
and-Hengist they-kill and-with-Christ willing they-triumph

Hiis igitur gestis, cleri populique favore
With-these therefore done of-the-clergy and-of-the-people by-the-favor

Ambrosio regnumque datur, regnique corona,
to-Ambrosius and-the-kingdom is-given and-of-the-kingdom the-crown

posmodo quam gessit tractando singula juste.
afterward which he-bore by-handling every-thing justly

Emensis autem per lustra quaterna diebus,
With-passed but through lustra four days

proditur à medico, moriturque bibendo venenum.
he-is-betrayed by a-physician and-dies by-drinking poison

Mox germanus ei successit junior Uter,
Soon (his)-brother to-him succeeded the-younger Uther

nec primum potuit regnum cum pace tueri:
nor at-first could the-kingdom with peace to-protect

perfida gens etenim demum consueta redire,
the-faithless people for at-last accustomed to-return

venerat, et solita vastabat cuncta phalange.
had-come and with-(its)-accustomed laid-waste all-things phalanx

Oppugnavit eam sævis congressibus Uter,
Attacked it with-savage clashes Uther

et pepulit victam trans æquora, remige verso.
and drove conquered across the-seas with-oar turned

Mox reformavit posito certamine pacem,
Soon he-restored with-laid-aside contest peace
progenuitque sibi natum, qui postmodo talis
and-begot for-himself a-son who afterward such
extitit, ut nulli fieret probitate secundus.
was that to-none he-was in-prowess second
Arturus sibi nomen erat; regnumque per annos
Arthur to-him the-name was and-the-kingdom for years
optinuit multos, postquam pater Uter obivit:
he-held many after (his)-father Uther died
idque dolore gravi gestum fuit atque labore,
and-that with-grief heavy done was and with-labor
et nece multorum per plurima bella virorum.
and with-the-death of-many through very-many wars of-men
Nam dum prædictus princeps langueret, ab Angla
For while the-aforesaid prince languished from the-English
venerat infidus populus, cunctasque per enses
had-come the-faithless people and-all through swords
trans Humbrum patrias submiserat ac periones;
across the-Humber the-native-lands had-subjected and the-regions
et puer Arturus fuerat, nec debilitate
and the-boy Arthur had-been nor by-weakness
ætatis poterat tantas compescere turmas.
of-age could so-great to-check troops
Ergo consilio cleri populique recepto,
Therefore with-the-counsel of-the-clergy and-of-the-people received
Armorico regi mittens, mandavit Hoeli
to-the-Armorican king sending he-bade Hoel
ut sibi præsidio festina classe rediret:
that to-him as-a-garrison with-hurried fleet he-should-come-back

sanguis enim communis eos sociabat amorque,
blood for common them allied and-love
alter ut alterius deberet dampna levare.
the-one that of-the-other ought the-losses to-lighten
Mox igitur collegit Hoel ad bella feroces
Soon therefore gathered Hoel for wars fierce
circumquaque viros, et multis milibus ad nos
all-around men and with-many thousands to us
venit, et Arturo sociatus, perculit hostes
came and to-Arthur allied struck the-enemies
sæpius agrediens, et stragem fecit acerbam.
often attacking and slaughter made bitter
Hoc socio securus erat fortisque per omnes
With-this ally secure was and-brave through all
Arturus turmas, dum progrederetur in hostes,
Arthur troops while he-advanced against the-enemies
quos tandem vicit, patriamque redire coegit,
whom at-last he-conquered and-to-(their)-fatherland to-return compelled
composuitque suum legum moderamine regnum.
and-settled his of-laws with-governance kingdom
Mox quoque submisit post hæc certamina Scotos,
Soon also he-subdued after these contests the-Scots
ac Hibernenses, convertens bella, feroces
and the-Irish turning wars fierce
supposuit patrias illatis viribus omnes:
subjected the-native-lands with-brought-in forces all
et Norwegenses trans æquora lata remotos
and the-Norwegians across the-seas broad remote
subdidit, et Dacos invisa classe petitos.
he-subdued and the-Danes with-a-hated fleet attacked

Gallorum populos cæso Frollone subegit,
Of-the-Gauls the-peoples with-slain Frollo he-subdued
cui curam patriæ dederat Romana potestas:
to-whom the-care of-the-fatherland had-given the-Roman power
Romanos etiam bello sua regna petentes
The-Romans also by-war his realms seeking
obpugnans vicit, procuratore perempto
attacking he-conquered with-the-procurator slain
Hybero Lucio, qui tunc collegaque Legnis
Hyberus Lucius who then and-colleague of-Leo
induperatoris fuerat, jussuque Senatus
the-emperor had-been and-by-the-order of-the-Senate
venerat ut fines Gallorum demeret illi.
had-come that the-borders of-the-Gauls he-might-take-away from-him
Cœperat interea nostrum sibi subdere regnum
Had-begun meanwhile our to-himself to-subject kingdom
infidus justos Modredus desipiensque:
the-faithless guardian Mordred and-foolish
illicitam venerem cum conjuge regis agebat:
unlawful love with the-wife of-the-king he-practiced
rex etenim transire volens, ut fertur, in hostes,
the-king for to-cross wishing as is-said against the-enemies
reginam regnumque suum commiserat illi.
the-queen and-the-kingdom his had-entrusted to-him
Ast ut fama mali tanti sibi venit ad aures,
But when the-report of-evil so-great to-him came to (his)-ears

distulit hanc belli curam, patriamque revertens
he-put-off this of-war care and-to-(his)-fatherland returning
applicuit multis cum milibus, atque nepotem
landed many with thousands and (his)-nephew
obpugnans pepulit trans æquora diffugientem.
attacking drove across the-seas fleeing
Illic collectis vir plenus proditione
There with-gathered the-man full of-treachery
undique Saxonibus, cœpit committere pugnam
from-everywhere Saxons began to-join battle
cum duce, set cecidit, deceptus gente prophana
with the-leader but fell deceived by-the-people profane
in qua confisus tantos inceperat actus.
in which trusting such-great he-had-begun deeds
O quantas hominum strages matrumque dolores
O how-great of-men slaughters and-of-mothers griefs
quarum conciderant illic per prælia nati!
whose had-fallen there through the-battles sons
Illic rex etiam letali vulnere læsus
There the-king also with-a-deadly wound harmed
deseruit regnum, tecumque per æquora vectus,
left the-kingdom and-with-you across the-seas carried
ut prædixisti, nimpharum venit ad aulam.
as you-foretold of-the-nymphs came to the-court
Ilico Modredi duo nati regna volentes
At-once of-Mordred two sons the-realms wishing
subdere quisque sibi, cœperunt bella movere,
to-subject each to-himself began wars to-move
alternaque suos prosternere cæde propinquos.
and-with-alternate their to-lay-low slaughter kinsmen

Deinde nepos regis dux Constantinus in illos
Then the-nephew of-the-king duke Constantine against them
acriter insurgens, populos laniavit et urbes,
fiercely rising the-peoples tore and the-cities
prostratisque simul crudeli morte duobus,
and-with-laid-low together with-cruel death the-two
jura dedit populo, regni diademate sumpto.
laws gave to-the-people of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem taken
Nec cum pace fuit, quoniam cognatus in illum
Nor with peace he-was because a-kinsman against him
prælia dira movens violavit cuncta Conanus;
battles dire moving violated all-things Conan
proripuitque sibi regiones, rege perempto,
and-snatched for-himself the-regions with-the-king slain
quas nunc debiliter nec cum ratione gubernat.»
which now feebly nor with reason he-governs
Hæc illo dicente, cito venere clientes,
These-things with-him saying swiftly came retainers
et dixere sibi fontem sub montibus illis
and said to-him a-spring under mountains those
erupisse novum, laticesque refundere puros,
to-have-burst-forth new and-waters to-pour-back pure
qui jam manantes longe per concava vallis
which already flowing far through the-hollows of-the-valley
girabant saltus refluo cum murmure lapsu.
circled the-glades backflowing with murmur gliding

Mox igitur spectare novum consurgit uterque
Soon therefore to-look-at the-new rises each
festinus fontem, visoque, resedit in herba
hurrying spring and-with-it-seen sat-down on the-grass
Merlinus, laudatque locum limphasque fluentes,
Merlin and-praises the-place and-the-waters flowing
et miratur eas de cespite taliter ortas.
and marvels-at them from the-turf so risen
Moxque siti captus se proclinavit in amnes,
And-soon by-thirst seized himself bent-down to the-streams
potavitque libens, et tempora proluit unda:
and-drank gladly and (his)-temples washed with-the-wave
utque per internos alvi stomachique meatus
and-as through the-internal of-the-belly and-of-the-stomach passages
humor iit laticis, subsedavitque vaporem
the-moisture went of-the-water and-calmed the-vapor
corporis interni, confestim mente recepta
of-the-body internal at-once with-mind recovered
sese cognovit, rabiem quoque perdidit omnem;
himself he-knew the-madness also lost all
et qui torpuerat per longum tempus in illo
and which had-been-numb for a-long time in him
sensus item rediit, mansitque quod ante manebat
sense again returned and-remained what before remained
sanus et incolumis rursus, ratione recepta.
sound and unharmed again with-reason recovered
Ergo Deum laudans vultus ad sidera tollit,
Therefore God praising (his)-face to the-stars he-raises
edidit et voces devoto famine tales.
uttered and words with-devout speech such

«O rex! siderea quo constat machina cœli,
O king starry by-whom stands the-machine of-heaven
quo mare, quo tellus læto cum gramine fœtus
by-whom the-sea by-whom the-earth glad with grass offspring
dantque foventque suos, crebroque juvamine prosunt
both-give and-cherish their and-with-frequent help profit
humano generi profusa fertilitate;
for-the-human race with-lavish fertility
quo sensus rediit mentisque revanuit error!
by-whom sense has-returned and-of-the-mind has-vanished the-error
Raptus eram michimet; quasi spiritus acta sciebam
Snatched I-was from-myself as-if a-spirit the-deeds I-knew
præteriti populi prædicebamque futura;
of-past people and-I-foretold things-to-come
tunc rerum secreta sciens, volucrumque volatus,
then of-things the-secrets knowing and-of-birds the-flights
stellarumque vagos motus, lapsusque natantum.
and-of-the-stars the-wandering motions and-the-glidings of-swimmers
Id me vexabat, naturalemque negabat
That me vexed and-the-natural denied
humanæ menti districta lege quietem:
to-the-human mind by-strict law rest
nunc in me redii, videorque vigore moveri
now into myself I-have-returned and-I-seem with-the-vigor to-be-moved
quo vegetare meos animus consueverat artus.
with-which to-quicken my the-mind had-been-wont limbs

Ergo, Summe Pater, tibi sic obnoxius esse
Therefore Highest Father to-you so beholden to-be
debeo, condignas ut digno pectore laudes
I-ought worthy that with-worthy breast praises
dicam, semper agens lætus libamina læta.
I-may-say always performing glad libations glad
Bis etenim tua larga manus mihi profuit uni,
Twice for your generous hand to-me has-profited alone
munere dando novum viridi de cespite fontem:
by-gift giving a-new green from turf spring
nam modo possideo latices quibus ante carebam,
for now I-possess waters which before I-lacked
et reducem capitis sumpsi potando salutem.
and the-returned of-head I-took by-drinking health

HEALING WATERS; THE OLD OAK; THE CRANES

Merlin ends by asking whence the new spring has its power, and Taliesin lists the waters of the world and their powers, and explains the new spring. The nobles come to rejoice with Merlin and ask him to rule again; he refuses, too old, having seen the ancient oak in the wood grow from an acorn, and prefers Calidon to riches. When cranes fly over in formation, Merlin explains the natures of birds, beginning with the cranes and the eagles.

Ista set unde venit vis, o dilecte sodalis,
These-things but whence comes the-force o beloved comrade
ut fons iste novus sic effluit, atque reformet
that spring this new so flows-out and restores
me mihi, qui fueram quasi vecors hactenus ex me?»
me to-myself who I-had-been as-if mad hitherto from myself

Telgesinus ait: «Rerum Moderator opimus
Taliesin says Of-things the-Governor rich
flumina per species divisit, et addidit ultro
the-rivers through kinds divided and added of-his-own-accord
cuique suas vires ut prosint sæpius ægris.
to-each their powers that they-may-profit often the-sick
Sunt etenim fontes fluviique lacusque per orbem,
There-are for springs and-rivers and-lakes through the-world
qui virtute sua multis et sæpe medentur.
which by-virtue their-own many and often heal
Albula namque rapax Romæ fluit amne salubri,
Albula for rapacious at-Rome flows with-stream healthful
quem sanare ferunt certo medicamine vulnus.
which to-heal they-say with-sure medicine a-wound
Manat in Italia fons alter, qui Ciceronis
Flows in Italy a-spring other which of-Cicero
dicitur; hic oculos ex omni vulnere curat.
is-called this the-eyes from every wound cures
Æthiopes etiam stagnum perhibentur habere
The-Ethiopians also a-pool are-said to-have
quo velut ex oleo facies perfusa nitescit.
by-which as from oil the-face drenched shines
Affrica fert fontem qui vulgo Zema vocatur;
Africa bears a-spring which commonly Zema is-called
potus dat voces subita virtute canoras.
drunk it-gives voices by-sudden power tuneful
Dat lacus Italiæ Dictonus tædia vini;
Gives the-lake of-Italy Dictonus disgust of-wine
qui de fonte Chios potant perhibentur habere.
who from the-spring Chios drink are-said to-have

Fertur habere duos tellus Boetica fontes;
Is-said to-have two the-land Baetic springs
hic facit immemores, memores facit ille bibentes.
this makes forgetful mindful makes that the-drinkers
Continet ipsa lacum tam dira peste nocivum,
Contains itself a-lake with-so dire plague harmful
ut generet furias nimiæque libidinis æstum.
that it-generates frenzies and-of-excessive lust the-heat
Fons Syticus venerem, venerisque repellit amorem.
The-spring Syticus love and-of-love repels the-desire
Campana regione fluunt, ut dicitur, amnes
In-the-Campanian region flow as is-said streams
qui faciunt steriles fœcundas flumine poto:
which make the-barren fruitful with-the-river drunk
idem dicuntur furias abolere virorum.
the-same are-said the-frenzies to-abolish of-men
Æthiopum tellus fert rubro flumine fontem;
Of-the-Ethiopians the-land bears with-red stream a-spring
qui bibit ex illo limphaticus inde redibit.
who drinks from it mad thence will-return
Fons Lentus fieri numquam permittit abortum.
The-spring Lentus to-happen never allows a-miscarriage
Sunt duo Syciliæ fontes; steriles facit alter,
There-are two of-Sicily springs barren makes the-one
alter fœcundans geniali lege puellas.
the-other making-fruitful by-genial law girls
Flumina Thessaliæ duo sunt virtutis opimæ;
Rivers of-Thessaly two are of-power rich
hoc potans nigrescit ovis, candescit ab illo;
this drinking grows-black the-sheep grows-white from that

ast ab utroque bibens variato vellere degit.
but from both drinking with-varied fleece lives
Clitumnus lacus est, quem continet Umbrica tellus;
Clitumnus a-lake is which contains the-Umbrian land
hic aliquando boves fertur producere magnos:
this sometimes oxen is-said to-produce great
inque Reatina fit equorum dura palude
and-in the-Reatine becomes of-horses hard marsh
ungula confestim dum progrediuntur arenas.
the-hoof at-once while they-advance-over the-sands
Asphaltite lacu Judææ, corpora mergi
In-the-Asphaltite lake of-Judaea bodies to-be-sunk
nequaquam possunt, vegetat dum spiritus illa.
by-no-means can quickens while the-spirit them
At contra stagnum Sygen fert Indica tellus,
But on-the-other-hand a-pool Sygen bears the-Indian land
quo res nulla natat, set mergitur ilico fundo:
in-which thing none floats but is-sunk at-once to-the-bottom
et lacus est Aloe quo res non mergitur ulla,
and a-lake there-is Aloe in-which thing not is-sunk any
omnia set fluitant quamvis sint plumbea saxa;
all-things but float although they-be leaden stones
fons quoque Marsidiæ compellit saxa natare.
the-spring also of-Marsidia compels stones to-swim
Stix fluvius de rupe fluit, perimitque bidentes;
The-Styx river from a-rock flows and-destroys sheep
hac clades ejus testatur Achadia tellus.
by-this the-havoc of-it attests the-Arcadian land
Fons Ydumeus quater inmutando diebus,
The-spring Idumean four-times by-changing in-days

mira lege, suos fertur variare colores;
by-a-wonderful law its is-said to-vary colors
pulverulentus enim, viridisque fit, ordine verso,
dusty for and-green it-becomes with-order reversed
fit quoque sanguineus, fit limpidus amne decoro:
it-becomes also bloody it-becomes clear with-stream comely
ex hiis per ternos unum retinere colorem
of these for three one to-keep color
asseritur menses, semper volventibus annis.
it-is-asserted months always with-rolling years
Rogotis lacus est, ejus quoque profluit unda:
Rogotis a-lake is its also flows-forth wave
ter fit amara die, ter dulci grata sapore.
three-times it-becomes bitter in-a-day three-times with-sweet pleasing flavor
Epiri de fonte faces ardere feruntur
Of-Epirus from the-spring torches to-burn are-said
extinctæ, rursusque suum deponere lumen.
quenched and-again their to-lay-down light
Sic algere die perhibetur fons Garamantum,
So to-be-cold by-day is-said the-spring of-the-Garamantes
et, vice transversa, tota fervescere nocte,
and in-turn reversed all to-boil the-night
ut neget accessum præ frigore præque calore.
that it-denies access for cold and-for heat
Sunt et aquæ calidæ multos fervore minantes,
There-are also waters hot many with-heat threatening
fervoremque trahunt, dum perlabuntur alumen
and-heat they-draw while they-glide-through alum
aut sulphur, quibus est vis ignea grata medendi.
or sulfur in-which is the-force fiery pleasing of-healing

His aliisque Deus ditavit viribus amnes,
With-these and-others God enriched powers the-streams
ut fierent ægris subitæ medicina salutis,
that they-might-become for-the-sick of-sudden a-medicine health
et manifestarent quanta virtute Creator
and might-make-manifest with-how-great power the-Creator
præmineat rebus, dum sic operatur in illis.
excels things while so he-works in them
Hos etiam latices summa ratione salubres
These also waters by-highest reason healthful
esse reor, subitamque reor conferre medelam,
to-be I-think and-sudden I-think to-confer remedy
nunc potuere novo sic erumpendo liquore.
now they-were-able with-new so by-bursting-out liquid
Hii modo sub terra per concava cœca fluebant,
These just-now under the-earth through hollows blind flowed
ut plures alii quæ submanare feruntur;
as many others which to-flow-underground are-said
forsitan excursus illorum præpediente
perhaps the-course of-them bindering
obice, vel saxi, vel terræ pondere lapsæ.
the-barrier either of-rock or of-earth by-the-weight fallen
Retrogradum cursum facientes arbitror illos
A-backward course making I-judge them
paulatim penetrasse solum fontemque degisse.
gradually to-have-penetrated the-soil and-the-spring to-have-led-out
Sic plures manare vides, iterumque redire
So many to-flow you-see and-again to-return
sub terram, rursusque suas tenuisse cavernas.»
under the-earth and-again their to-have-held caverns

Hæc ita dum gererent, rumor discurrit ubique
These-things so while they-did rumor ran-about everywhere
in Calidone novum silvis erumpere fontem,
in Calidon a-new in-the-woods to-burst-forth spring
sanatumque virum postquam potavit ab illo,
and-healed a-man after he-drank from it
tempore qui multo rabie corruptus, et isdem
for-a-time who long by-madness corrupted and in-the-same
extiterat silvis ritu vivendo ferarum.
had-stood-forth woods by-the-rite by-living of-beasts
Mox igitur venere duces proceresque videre,
Soon therefore came the-leaders and-nobles to-see
et collætari curato flumine vati.
and to-rejoice-with cured by-the-river seer
Cumque statum patriæ per singula notificassent,
And-when the-state of-the-fatherland through every-thing they-had-made-known
atque rogaretur sua sceptra resumere rursus
and he-was-asked his scepters to-resume again
et tractare suam solito moderamine gentem;
and to-handle his with-accustomed governance people
sic ait: «O juvenes! mea non hoc exigit ætas
thus he-says O young-men my not this demands age
in senium vergens, quæ sic michi corripit artus
into old-age declining which so from-me snatches (my)-limbs
ut vix præteream laxatis viribus arva.
that scarcely I-pass with-loosened strength the-fields

Jam satis exegi longævo tempore lætos
Already enough I-have-spent in-long time glad
glorificando dies, michi dum rideret habundans
by-glorifying days for-me while smiled abounding
copia magnarum profuse diviciarum.
the-plenty of-great lavishly riches
Roboris annosi silva stat quercus in ista,
Of-strength aged the-wood stands an-oak in this
quam sic exegit consumens cuncta vetustas
which so has-spent consuming all-things old-age
ut sibi deficiat succus, penitusque putrescat.
that for-it fails the-sap and-utterly it-rots
Hanc ego cum primum cœpisset crescere vidi,
This I when first it-had-begun to-grow saw
et glandem de qua processit forte cadentem
and the-acorn from which it-came-forth by-chance falling
dum super astaret picus ramumque videret,
while above stood a-woodpecker and-the-branch saw
hic illam crevisse suo jam pene sedebam
here it to-have-grown by-its already almost I-sat
singula prospiciens, tunc et verebar in istis
every-thing watching then and I-feared in these
saltibus atque locum memori cum mente notavi.
glades and the-place mindful with mind I-marked
Ergo diu vixi, mea me gravitate senectus
Therefore long I-have-lived my me with-heaviness old-age
detinuit dudum, rursus regnare recuso.
has-held long-since again to-reign I-refuse

Me Calidonis opes viridi sub fronde manentem
Me of-Calidon the-riches green under the-leaf remaining
delectant pocius quam quas fert India gemmæ,
delight rather than which bears India gems
quam quod habere Tagus per littora dicitur aurum,
than what to-have the-Tagus along (its)-shores is-said gold
quam segetes Siculæ, quam dulcis Methidis uvæ,
than the-crops Sicilian than of-sweet Methis the-grapes
aut celsæ turres aut cinctæ mœnibus urbes,
or lofty towers or girt with-walls cities
aut fraglascentes Tirio medicamine vestes.
or fragrant with-Tyrian dye garments
Res mihi nulla placet me quæ divellere possit
Thing to-me none pleases me which to-tear-away could
ex Calidone mea, me judice, semper amœna.
from Calidon my with-me as-judge always pleasant
Hic ero dum vivam pomis contentus et herbis;
Here I-shall-be while I-live with-apples content and herbs
et mundabo meam pia per jejunia carnem,
and I-shall-cleanse my pious through fasts flesh
ut valeam fungi vita sine fine perhenni.»
that I-may-be-able to-enjoy life without end perpetual
Hæc dum dicebat, proceres super æthera cernunt
These-things while he-said the-nobles above the-ether see
agmina longa gruum, flexo per inane volatu
columns long of-cranes bent through the-void flight
ordine girantes per littora certa videre
in-order wheeling through shores certain to-see
posset in exstructa liquido super aere turma.
one-could in a-built-up clear above the-air troop

Hæc admirantes, Merlinum dicere poscunt
These-things marveling-at Merlin to-say they-ask
quid certe fuerat quod tali more volarent.
what surely it-had-been that in-such manner they-flew
Mox Merlinus eis: «Volucres, ut cætera plura,
Soon Merlin to-them The-birds as other many-things
natura propria ditavit Conditor orbis;
with-nature their-own enriched the-Founder of-the-world
sic didici multis silvis habitando diebus.
so I-learned in-many woods by-dwelling days
Est igitur natura gruum, dum celsa pererrant
It-is therefore the-nature of-cranes while the-heights they-wander
si plures assint, ut earum sæpe volatu
if many be-present that of-them often in-the-flight
aut hanc aut aliam videamus inesse figuram:
either this or another we-see to-be-in figure
una modo clamando monet servare volando,
one now by-crying warns to-keep in-flying
turbatus solitis ne discrepet ordo figuris;
disturbed in-the-accustomed lest disagree the-order figures
aut dum raucescit subit altera deficienti.
or while it-grows-hoarse comes-up another for-the-failing
Excubias noctis faciunt, custosque lapillum
Watches of-the-night they-keep and-the-guard a-pebble
sustinet in digitis dum vult expellere sompnos:
holds in (its)-toes while it-wishes to-drive-off sleep
cumque vident aliquos, subito clamore citantur.
and-when they-see any with-sudden clamor they-are-roused
Pennæ nigrescunt cunctarum quando senescunt.
The-feathers grow-black of-all when they-grow-old

Ast aquilæ, quæ nomen habent ab acumine visus,
But the-eagles which (their)-name have from the-sharpness of-sight
obtuitus tanti præ cunctis esse feruntur,
of-gaze so-great beyond all to-be are-said
ut perferre queant, non flexo lumine, solem;
that to-endure they-can not with-bent eye the-sun
ad radium pullos suspendunt, scire volentes
to the-ray (their)-young they-hang to-know wishing
illo vitato ne degener extet in illis.
with-it shunned lest a-degenerate stand-out in them
In montis sullime manent super æquora pennis,
On of-the-mountain the-height they-stay above the-seas with-wings
aspirantque suas imo sub gurgite prædas;
and-aim-at their deep under the-whirlpool prey
ilico descendunt rapido per inane volatu,
at-once they-descend swift through the-void flight
et rapiunt pisces ut poscit origo natantis.
and seize the-fishes as demands the-origin of-the-swimmer

Merlin goes on with the birds, from the vulture to the woodpecker. A madman bursts in: Merlin knows him as Maeldin, a companion of his youth, driven mad by apples a spurned woman had poisoned for Merlin. He drinks from the spring and is cured, and he, Taliesin, and Ganieda stay with Merlin in the woods. Ganieda prophesies, and Merlin gives her his gift. Geoffrey asks the Britons for a laurel, since he also wrote the deeds of the Britons.

Postposito coïtu, sine semine sæpe mariti
With-set-aside intercourse without the-seed often of-a-husband

concipit et generat (dictu mirabile) vultur:
conceives and begets to-tell marvelous the-vulture

hæc per celsa volans aquilarum more, cadaver
this through the-heights flying in-the-manner of-eagles a-corpse

naribus elatis longe trans æquora sentit,
with-nostrils raised far across the-seas senses

quod quamvis tardo non horret adire volatu,
which although with-slow not it-shrinks to-approach flight

ut sese valeat præda saciare cupita.
that itself it-may-be-able with-the-prey to-sate desired

Idem centenis robustus vivit in annis.
The-same for-a-hundred strong lives in years

Nuntia veris avis crepitante ciconia rostro,
The-messenger of-spring the-bird with-rattling the-stork beak

dicta fovere suos in tantum sedula natos,
is-said to-cherish its in so-much diligent young

exuat ut proprias nudato pectore plumas:
it-strips-off that its-own with-bared breast feathers

hæc cum bruma venit, fertur vitare procellas,
this when winter comes is-said to-shun the-storms

et fines Asiæ ductu cornicis adire.
and the-borders of-Asia with-the-leading of-the-crow to-approach
Pascit eam pullus senio cum deficit ætas,
Feeds it the-chick with-old-age when fails (its)-age
quod depavit eum jam debuit ipsa diebus.
because it-has-fed it already owed itself in-days
Excedit volucres dulci modulamine cunctas,
Surpasses the-birds with-sweet measure all
cum moritur, cignus, nautis gratissimus ales.
when it-dies the-swan to-sailors most-pleasing bird
Hunc in Hiperboreo perhibent accedere tractu,
This in the-Hyperborean they-say to-come-near tract
ad cantum citharæ per littora forte sonantis.
to the-song of-the-lyre along the-shores by-chance sounding
Strucio quæ ponit sub pulvere deserit ova,
The-ostrich which places under the-dust deserts (its)-eggs
ut foveantur ibi dum negligat ipsa fovere:
that they-may-be-cherished there while it-neglects itself to-cherish
inde creantur aves radio pro matre cubante.
thence are-created the-birds with-the-ray for the-mother brooding
Ardea, cum pluvias tempestatesque perhorret,
The-heron when rains and-storms it-dreads
evolat ad nubes ut tanta pericula vitet.
flies-out to the-clouds that so-great dangers it-may-shun
Hinc illam subitos dicunt portendere nimbos,
Hence it sudden they-say to-portend storms
sublimem quociens spectant super æthera nautæ.
aloft as-often-as they-watch above the-ether the-sailors

Unica semper avis divino munere phœnix
Unique always the-bird by-divine gift the-phoenix
in terris Arabum redivivo corpore surgit:
in the-lands of-the-Arabs with-revived body rises
cumque senescit adit loca fervidiora calore
and-when it-grows-old it-approaches places hotter with-heat
solis, et ingentes ab aromate jungit acervos,
of-the-sun and huge from spice joins heaps
componitque rogum, quem crebris motibus alæ
and-builds a-pyre which with-frequent motions of-(its)-wing
succendit, ferturque super, penitusque crematur.
it-kindles and-is-borne above and-utterly is-burned
Producit volucrem pulvis de corpore facto,
Produces a-bird the-dust from the-body made
et fit item phœnix hac lege novata per ævum.
and becomes again a-phoenix by-this law renewed through the-ages
Nidificare volens fert cinnom[on] cinomolgus,
To-build-a-nest wishing bears cinnamon the-cinnamolgus
ædificatque suum pro cero robore nidum:
and-builds its for the-sure strength nest
illinc pennatis homines abducere telis
from-there with-feathered men to-draw-away darts
moverunt cumulum soliti transmittere venum.
have-moved the-heap accustomed to-send for-sale
Alcion avis est quæ stagna marina frequentat,
The-halcyon a-bird is which the-pools marine frequents
ædificatque suos hiemali tempore nidos:
and-builds its in-winter time nests
dum cubat, æquora sunt septem tranquilla diebus,
while it-broods the-seas are for-seven calm days

et venti cessant, tempestatesque remissæ
and the-winds cease and-the-storms abated
inpendunt, placidam volucri famulando quietem.
spend placid for-the-bird by-serving quiet
Psitacus humanam propri[o] modulamine vocem
The-parrot the-human with-its-own measure voice
dum non spectatur prorsus proferre putatur:
while not it-is-watched entirely to-utter is-thought
intermiscet «ave» verbis et «chære» jocosis.
it-intermingles ave with-words and chaere jesting
Est pelicanus avis pullos consueta necare,
There-is the-pelican a-bird (its)-young accustomed to-kill
et confusa tribus lugere dolore diebus.
and confounded for-three to-mourn with-grief days
Et scindens venas educit sanguinis undas,
And tearing (its)-veins it-draws-out of-blood waves
et vitæ reduces reddit rorando volucres.
and to-life brought-back it-renders by-bedewing the-birds
Dum Diomedeæ lacrimosa voce resultant,
When the-birds-of-Diomedes with-tearful voice resound
et faciunt planctus, subitam portendere mortem
and make laments sudden to-portend death
dicentur regum, vel magna pericula regni:
they-will-be-said of-kings or great dangers of-the-kingdom
cumque vident aliquem, discernunt ilico quis sit,
and-when they-see anyone they-discern at-once who be-be
barbarus an Græcus; nam Græcum plausibus alæ
barbarian or Greek for a-Greek with-applauses of-the-wing
et blandimentis adeunt, lætæque resultant;
and with-caresses they-approach and-glad resound

circueunt alios, pennisque feruntur iniquis,
they-go-round others and-on-wings are-borne hostile
horrentique sono velut hostes agrediuntur.
and-with-bristling sound as enemies they-attack
Mennonides quinto semper dicuntur in anno
The-Memnonides the-fifth always are-said in year
Mennonis ad tumulum longo remeare volatu,
of-Memnon to the-tomb with-long to-return flight
et deflere ducem Trojano marte peremptum.
and to-weep-for the-leader by-Trojan war slain
Fert quoque mirandam splendens circinea pennam,
Bears also a-marvelous shining the-circinea feather
nocte sub obscura quæ fulget ut ignea lampas,
the-night under dark which shines as a-fiery lamp
atque ministrat iter si præportetur eunti.
and supplies the-way if it-be-carried-before for-one-going
Quando nidificat, divellit ab arbore picus
When it-nests tears-away from the-tree the-woodpecker
claveos et cuneos quos non divelleret ullus;
nails and wedges which not would-tear-away anyone
cujus ab impulsu vicinia tota resultant.»
whose from blow the-neighborhood whole resounds
His igitur dictis, quidam vesanus ad illos
With-these therefore said a-certain madman to them
accessit subito, seu sors conduxerat illum;
came suddenly or chance had-led him
terrifico clamore nemus complebat et auras,
with-terrifying clamor the-grove he-filled and the-airs
denique supposito laniat sua corpora rostro,
finally with-set-under tears his body beak

et quasi sævus aper spumabat, bella minando.
and as-if a-savage boar foamed wars threatening
Ocius ergo virum capiunt, secumque sedere
Swiftly therefore the-man they-seize and-with-them to-sit
cogunt, ut moveat risusque jocosque loquendo.
they-compel that he-may-move both-laughs and-jests by-speaking
Inspiciens igitur vates attentius illum,
Looking-at therefore the-seer more-attentively him
quis fuerit recolit, gemitumque reducit ab imo
who he-had-been recalls and-a-groan draws-up from the-bottom
pectore, sic dicens: «Non hæc fuit ejus ymago
of-(his)-breast so saying Not this was his appearance
olim, dum nobis juvenilis floruit ætas:
once while for-us youthful flourished age
pulcher enim fortis fuerat tunc tempore miles,
handsome for brave he-had-been then in-time a-knight
et quem nobilitas regumque ferebat origo!
and whom nobility and-of-kings bore the-origin
Hunc mecum pluresque simul tunc dives habebam,
This-man with-me and-many together then rich I-had
totque bonis sociis felix censebar eramque.
and-with-so-many good companions happy I-was-reckoned and-I-was
Accidit interea dum venaremur in altis
It-happened meanwhile while we-hunted in the-high
montibus Argustli nos devenisse sub una
mountains of-Argustel us to-have-come under one
quæ patulis ramis surgebat in aera quercu.
which with-spreading branches rose into the-air oak
Fons ibi manabat viridi circumdatus herba,
A-spring there flowed with-green surrounded grass

cujus erant latices humanis haustibus apti;
whose were waters for-human drinkings fit
ergo siti pariter correpti, sedimus illic,
therefore by-thirst alike seized we-sat there
et fontis puros avide libavimus amnes.
and of-the-spring the-pure eagerly we-tasted streams
Deinde super teneras solito conspeximus herbas
Then on the-tender in-the-accustomed-way we-saw grasses
in rivo fontis redolentia poma jacere:
in the-stream of-the-spring fragrant apples to-lie
mox ea collegit qui primus adhæserat iste,
soon them gathered who first had-come-near this-man
porrexitque michi, subito pro munere ridens.
and-held-them-out to-me suddenly as a-gift laughing
Ergo distribui data poma sodalibus, et me
Therefore I-distributed the-given apples to-(my)-companions and myself
expertem feci, quia non suffecit acervus.
without-share made because not sufficed the-heap
Riserunt alii quibus impertita fuerunt,
Laughed the-others to-whom shared they-had-been
meque vocant largum, cupidis quoque faucibus illa
and-me call generous with-greedy also throats them
agrediendo vorant, et pauca fuisse queruntur.
by-attacking devour and few to-have-been complain
Nec mora: corripuit rabies miserabilis istum
Nor delay seized madness pitiable this-man
et cunctos alios, qui mox ratione carentes
and all the-others who soon of-reason lacking
more canum sese lacerant mordendo vicissim;
in-the-manner of-dogs themselves tear by-biting in-turn

strident et spumant, et humi sine mente volutant.
gnash and foam and on-the-ground without mind roll
Denique digressi sunt illinc, more lupino,
Finally departed they-have from-there in-the-manner wolfish
complentes vacuas miseris ululatibus auras.
filling the-empty with-wretched howlings airs
Hæc mihi non illis, velut æstimo, poma dabantur;
These to-me not to-them as I-reckon apples were-given
postmodo seu didici; nam tunc in partibus illis
afterward as I-learned for then in parts those
una fuit mulier, quæ me dilexerat ante
one there-was a-woman who me had-loved before
et mecum multis venerem saciaverat annis:
and with-me for-many love had-sated years
hanc postquam sprevi secumque coïre negavi,
her after I-spurned and-with-her to-lie refused
ut me dampnaret rapuit mox læva voluntas.
that me she-might-condemn seized soon sinister will
Cumque movens aditus alios reperire nequiret,
And-when moving approaches others to-find she-could-not
apposuit fonti super illita dona veneni,
she-placed by-the-spring upon smeared gifts of-poison
quo rediturus eram, meditans hac arte nocere
whither about-to-return I-was planning by-this art to-harm
si fruerer pomis in gramine forte repertis.
if I-should-enjoy the-apples in the-grass by-chance found

At me sors melior sic conservavit ab illis
But me a-lot better so preserved from them
ut modo prædixi: set eum compellere quæso
as just-now I-foretold but him to-compel I-beg
hoc de fonte novo limphas potare salubres,
this from spring new the-waters to-drink healthful
ut, si forte suam possit rehabere salutem,
that if by-chance his he-can to-have-back health
se cognoscat item, mecumque laboret in istis
himself he-may-know again and-with-me may-labor in these
saltibus in Domino dum postera vita manebit.»
glades in the-Lord while the-later life will-remain
Sic igitur fecere duces; sumptoque liquore
So therefore did the-leaders and-with-taken liquid
redditur ille sibi qui vecors venerat illuc,
is-restored he to-himself who mad had-come thither
cognovitque suos subito curatus amicos.
and-knew his suddenly cured friends
Tunc Merlinus ait: «Tibi nunc constanter eundum
Then Merlin says For-you now steadfastly to-be-gone
est in agone Dei, qui te tibi reddidit, ut nunc
is in the-contest of-God who you to-yourself has-restored as now
ipsemet inspectas qui per deserta tot annis
yourself you-observe who through the-wilds for-so-many years
ut fera vixisti sine sensu turpis eundo;
like a-beast you-have-lived without sense foul in-going
ne modo diffugias frutices, ratione recepta,
lest now you-flee-from the-thickets with-reason recovered
aut virides saltus quos jam limphando colebas,
or the-green glades which now by-raving you-inhabited

set mecum maneas; ut quos tibi surripiebat
but with-me you-may-stay that what from-you snatched
vis verunca dies, iterum reparare labores
the-force crooked the-days again to-repair the-labors
obsequio Domini, quod erit per singula mecum
in-the-service of-the-Lord which will-be through every-thing with-me
ex hoc nunc commune tibi, dum vivit uterque.»
from this now common to-you while lives each
Ergo sub hoc Maeldinus ait, nam nomine tali
Therefore under this Maeldin says for by-name such
dictus erat: «Non hoc, pater o venerande, recuso!
called he-was Not this father o venerable I-refuse
Lætus enim tecum silvas habitabo, Deumque
Glad for with-you the-woods I-shall-inhabit and-God
tota mente colam, tremulos dum rexerit artus
with-whole mind I-shall-worship trembling while will-have-ruled limbs
spiritus iste meos, quem te doctore piabo.
spirit this my which you as-teacher I-shall-purify
Sic et ego faciam vobiscum tertius auctus;»
So also I shall-do with-you a-third added
Telgesinus ait: «Despecto themate mundi!
Taliesin says With-scorned the-theme of-the-world
Jam satis exegi vivendo tempora vane,
Already enough I-have-spent by-living the-times vainly
et nunc tempus adest quo me mihi te duce reddam.
and now the-time is-at-hand in-which me to-myself you as-leader I-may-restore
Vos set abite duces urbes defendere vestras:
You but go-away leaders cities to-defend your

non decet ut nostram vestro sermone quietem
not it-befits that our with-your speech quiet
a modo turbetis: satis applausistis amico.»
from now you-disturb enough you-have-applauded (your)-friend
Discedunt proceres, remanent tres et Ganieda
Depart the-nobles remain three and Ganieda
quarta, soror vatis, sumpta quoque denique vita
fourth sister of-the-seer taken also at-last life
ducebat vitam regis post fata pudicam,
she-led the-life of-the-king after the-fates chaste
quæ modo tot populos indicto jure regebat,
who just-now so-many peoples with-proclaimed law ruled
nunc cum fratre sibi silvis nil dulcius exstat.
now with (her)-brother for-her than-the-woods nothing sweeter stands-out
Hanc etiam quandoque suis rapiebat ad alta
Her also sometimes his snatched to the-heights
spiritus, ut caneret de regno sæpe futura.
spirit that she-might-sing about the-kingdom often things-to-come
Ergo die quadam cum fratris staret in aula,
Therefore on-day a-certain when of-(her)-brother she-stood in the-hall
inspiceretque domos radientes sole fenestra,
and-looked-at the-houses shining with-the-sun from-the-window
edidit has dubias dubio de pectore voces:
she-uttered these doubtful doubtful from breast words
«Cerno Ridichenam galeatis gentibus urbem
I-see Ridichena with-helmeted peoples the-city
impletam, sacrosque viros, sacrasque tyaras
filled and-the-holy men and-the-holy tiaras
nexibus addictos, sic, consiliante juventa,
to-bonds bound so counseling youth

pastor in excelsa mirabitur edita turris,
the-shepherd in the-high will-marvel lofty tower
et reserare sui cogetur fictile dampni.
and to-unbar of-his will-be-compelled the-clay loss
Cerno Kaerloyctoyc vallatam milite sævo
I-see Kaerloyctoyc walled with-soldiery savage
inclusosque duos quorum divellitur alter
and-shut-in two of-whom is-torn-away the-one
ut redeat cum gente fera, cum principe vallis,
that he-may-return with people fierce with the-prince of-the-valley
et vincat rapto sævam rectore catervam.
and may-conquer with-snatched the-savage ruler company
Heu quantum scelus est, capiant ut sidera solem!
Alas how-great a-crime it-is they-take that the-stars the-sun
Cui sullabuntur nec vi nec marte coacta.
To-whom they-will-slip-under neither by-force nor by-war compelled
Inspicio binas prope Kaerwen in aere lunas,
I-see two near Kaerwen in the-air moons
gestarique duos nimia feritate leones.
and-to-be-borne two with-excessive ferocity lions
Inque duos homines unus miratur, et alter
And-at two men one marvels and the-other
in totidem, pugnamque parant et cominus astant:
at as-many and-a-fight they-prepare and at-close-quarters stand
insurgunt alii, quartumque ferocibus armis
rise-up the-others and-the-fourth with-fierce arms
acriter obpugnant, nec prævalet ullus eorum,
fiercely attack nor prevails any of-them
perstat enim clipeumque movet telisque repugnat,
he-stands-firm for and-(his)-shield moves and-with-darts resists

et victor ternos confestim proterit hostes,
and victor the-three at-once tramples enemies
impellitque duos trans frigida regna Boetes,
and-drives two across the-cold realms of-Bootes
dans alii veniam qui postulat, ergo per omnes
giving to-the-other pardon who asks therefore through all
diffugiunt partes totius sidera campi.
flee the-parts of-the-whole the-stars field
Armoricanus aper quercu protectus avita,
The-Armorican boar by-the-oak protected ancestral
abducit lunam gladiis post terga rotatis.
leads-away the-moon with-swords behind (its)-back whirled
Sidera bina feris video committere pugnam
Stars two I-see with-beasts to-join battle
colle sub Urgenio quo convenire Deyri
the-hill under Urgenius where to-come-together the-Deiri
Gewissique simul, magno regnante Cohelo.
and-the-Gewissi together with-great reigning Cohelus
O quanto sudore viri tellusque cruore
O with-how-much sweat of-the-man and-the-land with-gore
manat, in externas dum dantur vulnera gentes.
flows on foreign while are-given wounds peoples
Considit in latebras collisum sidere sidus,
Sinks into hiding-places dashed by-a-star a-star
absconditque suum renovato lumine lumen.
and-hides its with-renewed light light
Heu quam dira fames incumbit, ut arceat alvos
Alas how dire famine presses that it-confines the-bellies
evacuatque suos populorum viribus arctus!
and-empties its of-the-peoples of-strength limbs

Incipit a Kambris, peragratque cacumina regni,
It-begins from the-Welsh and-traverses the-peaks of-the-kingdom
et miseras gentes æquor transire cohercet.
and wretched peoples the-sea to-cross compels
Diffugiunt vituli consueti vivere lacte
Flee the-calves accustomed to-live on-the-milk
vaccarum Scotiæ morientum clade nephanda.
of-the-cows of-Scotland dying by-slaughter unspeakable
Iteque, Neustrenses! cessate diutius arma
And-go Neustrians cease longer arms
ferre per ingenium violento milite regnum.
to-bear through wit with-violent soldiery the-kingdom
Non est unde gulam valeatis pascere vestram,
Not there-is whence the-gullet you-may-be-able to-feed your
consumpsistis enim quicquid natura creatrix
you-have-consumed for whatever nature creative
fertilitate bona dudum produxit in illa.
with-fertility good long-ago produced in it
Christe! tuo populo fer opem: compesce leones
Christ to-your people bring help check the-lions
da regno placidam, bello cessante, quietem.»
give to-the-kingdom placid with-war ceasing quiet
Non super hoc tacuit, commiranturque sodales,
Not about this she-was-silent and-marvel-together the-companions
germanusque suus, qui mox accessit ad illam,
and-brother her who soon approached to her
hocque modo verbis applaudens fertur amicis.
and-in-this manner with-words applauding is-said friendly

«Tene soror voluit res præcantare futuras
You sister wished things to-foretell future
spiritus, osque meum compescuit atque libellum?
the-spirit and-mouth my has-checked and the-little-book
Ergo tibi labor iste datur; læteris in illo,
Therefore to-you labor this is-given may-you-rejoice in it
auspiciisque meis devote singula dicas.»
and-by-auspices my devoutly every-thing may-you-say
Duximus ad metam carmen: vos ergo Britanni 1525
We-have-led to the-goal the-song you therefore Britons
laurea serta date Gaufrido de Monumeta.
laurel garlands give to-Geoffrey of Monmouth
Est etenim vester: nam quondam prælia vestra
He-is for yours for once battles your
vestrorumque ducum cecinit, scripsitque libellum
and-of-your leaders he-sang and-wrote the-little-book
quem nunc Gesta vocant Britonum celebrata per orbem.
which now the-Deeds they-call of-the-Britons celebrated through the-world

Historia Meriadoci

The History of Meriadoc

Incipit prologus in Historia Meriadoci, regis Kambrie

PROLOGUE

The author will tell a history worth remembering, so full of noble deeds that told in full it would cloy, and so has bound it in a brief style for the reader's benefit, since brief speech with sense is worth more than long talk without it.

Memoratu dignam dignum duxi exarare historiam,
to-be-remembered worthy worthy I-have-thought to-write-out a-history
cuius textus tantarum probitatum tantique leporis decoratur
whose text of-so-great prowesses and-of-so-great charm is-adorned
titulis, ut, si singula seriatim percurrerem, faui
with-the-titles that if every-thing in-order I-should-run-through of-the-honeycomb
dulcorem in fastidium uerterem. Legencium igitur consulens
the-sweetness into disgust I-would-turn of-the-readers therefore consulting
utilitati illam compendioso perstringere stilo statui,
the-advantage it with-a-compendious to-bind-up style I-have-decided
sciens quod maioris sit precii breuis cum sensu oracio quam
knowing that of-greater be value a-brief with sense speech than
multiflua racione uacans locucio.
a-many-flowing of-reason lacking discourse

Incipit historia Meriadoci, regis Kambrie

CARADOC AND GRIFFIN

Before Arthur's time Caradoc ruled Wales, his brother Griffin a part of it. Caradoc conquered Ireland, married its king's daughter, and had twins; grown old, he handed the rule to Griffin. Wicked counselors urged Griffin to kill his brother, warning that Caradoc meant to marry his daughter to a foreign lord and give him the rule, and that his son would claim the throne; they planned to murder him while hunting. Caradoc dreamed that Griffin handed two men arrows to shoot at him; the queen begged him to stay home, but he went, and the two killed him in the woods.

Igitur ante tempora regis Arturi, qui totius Britannie
therefore before the-times of-king Arthur who of-the-whole of-Britain
monarchiam optinuit, insula tres in partes digesta,
the-monarchy obtained the-island three into parts divided
Kambriam uidelicet Albaniam et Loegriam, plurimorum
Wales namely Albany and Logres of-very-many
regum subiacebat imperiis, eiusque quam plures, prout fortuna
kings lay-under the-commands and-of-it as many as fortune
rem ministrabat, uno in tempore gubernacula sorciebantur.
the-thing supplied one in time the-helms obtained
Ea autem tempestate, regnante scilicet Uther Pendragon,
in-that moreover season with-reigning namely Uther Pendragon
patre Arturi, regnum Kambrie duobus germanis, genitore
the-father of-Arthur the-kingdom of-Wales to-two brothers with-(their)-father
defuncto, cesserat, quorum natu maior, Caradocus dictus,
dead had-passed of-whom by-birth the-elder Caradoc called
ius regium possidebat, iunior autem, Griffinus uocabulo,
the-right royal possessed the-younger but Griffin by-name
partem prouincie sibi a fratre gubernabat creditam. Sedes
a-part of-the-province to-himself by (his)-brother governed entrusted the-seat

uero regni Caradoci regis et quo maxime frequentare
but of-the-kingdom of-Caradoc the-king and which most to-frequent
solebat penes niualem montem, qui Kambrice Snavdone
he-was-wont near the-snowy mountain which in-Welsh Snowdon
resonat, exstabat. Hic autem rex Caradocus, diuiciis pollens
resounds stood this but king Caradoc in-riches powerful
miraque uirtute preditus, classem permaximam milite
and-with-wonderful valor endowed a-fleet very-great with-soldiery
instructam in Hyberniam duxit, quam, rege ipsius deuicto,
equipped into Ireland led which with-the-king of-it conquered
sue dicioni subiugans sibi tributariam effecit. Rebusque
to-his sway subjugating for-himself tributary he-made and-with-things
prospere gestis, filiam regis Hybernensis suo matrimonio
prosperously done the-daughter of-the-king Irish to-his marriage
copulauit, ex qua in Kambriam reuersus duos gemellos
he-joined from whom into Wales returned two twins
sed diuersi sexus progenuit. Qui, dum regnum non modico
but of-different sex he-begot who when the-kingdom not for-a-small
tempore rexisset tranquille, contigit eum in senium uergi
time he-had-ruled quietly it-happened him into old-age to-decline
etateque prematura grauari. Et quia in effeto corpore
and-by-age premature to-be-weighed-down and because in a-worn-out body
et uigor minuitur et sensualis intellectus hebetatur, tanto
both vigor is-diminished and the-sensual understanding is-dulled to-so-great
regimini operam ulterius adhibere non preualens, tocius
governance effort further to-apply not prevailing of-the-whole
regni tutelam suo fratri Griffino tuendam tradidit.
kingdom the-guardianship to-his brother Griffin to-be-guarded he-handed-over
Ipse autem uenatibus aliisque oblectamentis licencius
he-himself but to-hunts and-other delights more-freely
indulgens quiete et ocio senium protrahebat et fouebat.
indulging in-quiet and leisure (his)-old-age prolonged and cherished

At Griffinus curam regni sibi commissam diligenter
but Griffin the-care of-the-kingdom to-himself entrusted diligently
exequens sapienterque administrans nil absque regis
carrying-out and-wisely administering nothing without of-king
Caradoci fratris sui consilio disponebat. Unde et a
Caradoc brother his the-counsel arranged whence also from
fratre maiorem graciam meruit, eique omnem regni
(his)-brother greater favor he-earned and-to-him all of-the-kingdom
potestatem, regio dumtaxat sibi retento nomine, rex
the-power with-the-royal only for-himself retained name king
Caradocus commiserit. Sed ubique nequicie pestis sur
Caradoc entrusted but everywhere of-wickedness the-plague under
repit, que eo cicius mentem ad scelus impellit,
creeps which by-so-much more-quickly the-mind to crime drives
quo eam maior rerum cupido infecerit. Quidam namque
by-how-much it a-greater of-things desire has-infected certain for
peruerse mentis, uel fraterne paci inuidentes aut nouitatibus
of-perverse mind either the-fraternal peace envying or novelties
studentes seu certe aliorum discrimen sibi lucrum fore
pursuing or surely of-others the-peril for-themselves gain to-be
reputantes, Griffinum conueniunt eumque in fraternam necem
reckoning Griffin meet and-him to fraternal murder
hiis uerbis accendunt:
with-these words kindle
"Quia tuis" inquiunt "hactenus utilitatibus accuracius studium
because to-your they-say hitherto advantages more-carefully zeal
dedimus teque honoris sublimare fastigio sedulum
we-have-given and-you of-honor to-raise to-the-summit diligent
habuimus, indignum nos ualde ducere noueris, hunc
we-have-held unworthy we very to-reckon you-may-know this
decrepitum tibi preponi, quem omnium sensuum iam
decrepit-man to-you to-be-preferred whom of-all the-senses already

pene constat officio priuari; maximo quippe dedecori
almost it-is-agreed of-the-office to-be-deprived to-the-greatest indeed disgrace
tibi debet uideri, illi te dignitate posteriorem haberi, qui
to-you it-ought to-seem to-him you in-dignity inferior to-be-held who
et eiusdem nobilitatis insigniris linea et cui maior
both of-the-same nobility are-marked by-the-line and in-whom greater
cum uirtute corporis noscitur inesse sapiencia. Jam eciam
with valor of-body is-known to-be-in wisdom now also
fama uulgante, comperimus illum ad sue nate coniugium
with-fame spreading-it we-have-learned him to of-his daughter the-marriage
quendam gentis extranee potentem acciuisse regnique
a-certain of-people foreign powerful-man to-have-summoned and-of-the-kingdom
gubernacula tibi commissa ei uelle committere. Quem
the-helms to-you entrusted to-him to-wish to-entrust whom
si contigerit sibi oblata inisse connubia, ratum
if it-will-have-happened to-him offered to-have-entered the-marriage settled
existimes quod et te debito honore destituet et nobis
you-may-reckon that both you of-due honor he-will-deprive and from-us
auita predia prorsus surripiet; fraude quippe et
the-ancestral estates altogether will-snatch-away by-fraud indeed and
subdolositate fieri ne dubites, te regiis prelatum negociis,
craftiness to-be-done do-not doubt you to-royal set-over affairs
donec prefatum nobilem filie interuenientibus nupciis
until the-aforesaid nobleman of-(his)-daughter with-intervening nuptials
sibi confederauerit; cuius amminiculo si quid aduersus
to-himself he-has-allied whose by-support if anything against
eum moliri uolueris, tuos casset conatus. Cur igitur
him to-contrive you-will-have-wished your he-may-quash attempts why therefore
illum infatuatum senem diucius sinis uiuere, cuius causa
him the-infatuated old-man longer do-you-allow to-live whose for-the-sake
et nos et tocius regni statum patet periclitari?
both we and of-the-whole of-the-kingdom the-state is-plain to-be-endangered

Verum tua tibi mens fortassis applaudit, omne ius regium ac
but your to-you mind perhaps applauds all right royal and
omne semper sicut nunc tibi regni cessurum negocium.
all always as now to-you of-the-kingdom about-to-yield the-business
Sed numquid impune? Nonne Caradoco educatur filius quem
but surely-not unpunished surely to-Caradoc is-brought-up a-son whom
eciam nunc etas tenella mire probitatis futurum certis
even now (his)-age tender of-wonderful prowess about-to-be by-sure
manifestat indiciis? Nonne, cum uiriles annos attigerit,
shows signs surely when manly years he-will-have-reached
sibi paternum uendicabit principatum? Cuius apicem si
for-himself the-paternal he-will-claim principality whose summit if
te consentaneo assequi non potuerit, numquid tibi
with-you consenting to-attain not he-will-have-been-able surely-not from-you
inuito ui extorquere non laborabit? Hinc ciuilis discordia,
unwilling by-force to-wrest not will-be-labor hence civil discord
intestinum bellum, cedes ciuium, patrieque proueniet
internal war slaughter of-citizens and-of-the-fatherland will-come
desolacio. Jube igitur ad Tartara dirigi cuius uitam nobis
desolation order therefore to Tartarus to-be-directed whose life to-us
tanto perpendimus imminere discrimini. Ecce uniuersa
with-so-great we-judge to-threaten peril behold the-whole
manus procerum tibi subditur, omnis regni potestas
band of-the-nobles to-you is-subjected all of-the-kingdom the-power
tue uoluntati exponitur, si id dumtaxat perfeceris,
to-your will is-exposed if that only you-will-have-accomplished
quod tibi a nobis consulitur. Et ne causeris te tantum
which to-you by us is-counseled and lest you-plead you so-great
negocium absque magna industria manuque ualida nec
a-business without great industry and-hand strong neither
posse nec audere aggredi. Tantum assensum tribue, et nos
to-be-able nor to-dare to-undertake only assent grant and we

eo rem moliemur ingenio, quo nulla tibi de eius nece
by-such the-thing will-contrive skill that no to-you about his death
possit oriri suspicio." Quid multa? Hiis atque aliis multis
can to-arise suspicion why many-words with-these and other many
fraudulentis sermonibus animum Griffini circumueniunt et,
fraudulent speeches the-mind of-Griffin they-get-around and
nunc quasi imminente terrentes discrimine, nunc blanda
now as-if with-imminent terrifying peril now with-the-flattering
regni mulcentes ambicione, ad fraterne necis assensum
of-the-kingdom soothing ambition to of-fraternal murder assent
pertrahunt. Inde loci temporisque opportunitas queritur,
they-draw then of-place and-of-time the-opportunity is-sought
qua propositum perpetraretur facinus. Placet eum siluas
in-which the-proposed might-be-perpetrated crime it-pleases him the-woods
uenatum adeuntem a sociis seducere et in abdita
to-hunt approaching from (his)-companions to-lead-aside and in the-hidden-parts
nemoris iaculo confodere. Diesque crastina ad hec
of-the-grove with-a-javelin to-pierce and-the-day following for these-things
explenda statuitur, qua regem Caradocum uenandi gracia
to-be-fulfilled is-fixed on-which king Caradoc of-hunting for-the-sake
siluas se aditurum proposuisse non ignorabant.
the-woods himself about-to-approach to-have-proposed not they-were-unaware
Nocte uero preterita ipsius diei, cum rex Caradocus se
on-the-night but past of-that-very day when king Caradoc himself
quieti dedisset, uisum est sibi suum fratrem Griffinum sibi
to-rest had-given seemed it-was to-him his brother Griffin to-him
[in] siluis ex aduerso consistere et duas sagittas pharetra
in the-woods from opposite to-stand and two arrows from-the-quiver
exemptas cote diligenter acuere, duosque deinde uiros
taken on-a-whetstone diligently to-sharpen and-two then men
aduenisse ipsasque sagittas de manu Griffini accipientes
to-have-come and-the-arrows themselves from the-hand of-Griffin receiving

tenso neruo inopinate in se direxisse. Ad quarum ictum
with-stretched string unexpectedly at him to-have-aimed at whose stroke
ipse perter[r]itus sompno excutitur, et, quasi reuera uulnus
he thoroughly-terrified from-sleep is-shaken and as-if really a-wound
pertulisset, magnis uocibus uociferatur. Cuius insolito
he-had-borne with-great voices cries-out whose at-unaccustomed
clamore regina obstupefacta eum inter brachia corripit et
clamor the-queen astounded him between (her)-arms seizes and
quid haberet curue tantas uoces emitteret tremebunda inquirit.
what he-had or-why such voices he-uttered trembling asks
Quo, adhuc pre timore palma pectori impressa, que
with-him still for fear with-(his)-palm to-(his)-breast pressed what
uiderat referente, illa presaga futuri: "Te, domine" ait
he-had-seen relating she presaging of-the-future you lord she-says
"queso, obserua, quia tuus procul dubio germanus Griffinus
I-beg beware because your without doubt brother Griffin
tibi machinatur insidias; insidias quippe portendunt
against-you contrives ambushes ambushes indeed portend
sagitte. Et quia te luce sequenti uenatum ire constituisti,
the-arrows and because you on-the-day following to-hunt to-go have-decided
insidiarum locum tibi [in] siluis agnoscas parari.
of-ambushes the-place for-you in the-woods you-should-know to-be-prepared
Laudo igitur te hac uice domi manere uenatusque
I-commend therefore you this time at-home to-remain and-of-the-hunt
oblectamenta in posterum differre." E contra rex "Desine"
the-delights into the-future to-put-off from opposite the-king cease
inquit "loqui huiusmodi; meum fratrem quem adeo semper
he-said to-speak such-things my brother whom so always
hactenus dilexi et cui tanta impertitus sum beneficia
hitherto I-have-loved and to-whom so-great imparted I-have benefits
mihi nunquam credam mortis uelle moliri discrimina."
for-me never I-shall-believe of-death to-wish to-contrive the-perils

Consilio itaque regine cedere renuit, sed summo
to-the-counsel and-so of-the-queen to-yield he-refuses but at-the-very-first
diluculo, ut fata eum ducebant, siluas uenatum peciit.
dawn as the-fates him led the-woods to-hunt sought
Griffinus autem, suus germanus, duos uiros nobiles, quidem
Griffin but his brother two men noble indeed
robustos et audaces sed moribus peruersos, truculentos
sturdy and bold but in-manners perverse truculent
et sanguinis effusione gaudentes, elegerat, destinatumque
and of-blood in-the-shedding rejoicing had-chosen and-the-intended
flagicium eis perficiendum commiserat, se eos omnibus
crime to-them to-be-accomplished had-entrusted himself them than-all
Kambrie commorantibus sublimiores facturum pollicitus.
in-Wales dwelling higher about-to-make having-promised
Regalis igitur familia dum discopulatis canibus inuentam
the-royal therefore household while with-unleashed dogs the-found
predam insequitur et, ut in tali solet fieri negocio,
prey follows and as in such is-wont to-happen business
diuersis uiis certatim tenditur, rex Caradocus senio
by-various ways vying is-stretched king Caradoc with-old-age
grauante insequi non preualens solus cui mors imminebat
weighing to-follow not prevailing alone for-whom death was-impending
deseritur. Nec mora, aduolantes duo predicti scelesti uiri
is-deserted nor delay flying-up the-two aforesaid wicked men
non eminus inter densa fruticum abditi eum a uia
not far among the-thick of-the-bushes hidden him from the-way
remocius in opaco recessu nemorum distrahunt, distractum
more-remotely into a-shady recess of-the-groves draw-aside the-drawn-aside
iaculo confodiunt, ac, telo uulneri relicto,
with-a-javelin they-pierce and with-the-weapon in-the-wound left

festinanter discedunt, ut pocius casu alicuius uenantis
hastily depart that rather by-the-chance of-some hunter
quam fraude insidiantis id euenisse crederetur.
than by-the-fraud of-one-lying-in-ambush it to-have-happened might-be-believed

GRIFFIN SEIZES THE KINGDOM

The king's death is found, and the queen dies of grief. Griffin feigns mourning, seizes the throne, and when the murderers demand their reward, cuts out their tongues and hangs them; but their words reach the princes, who suspect him of the murder. Their leaders Sadoc and Dunewall demand the royal children, Meriadoc and Orwen; Griffin fetches them from the huntsman Ivor and his wife Morwen, and though moved by their pleas, orders them hanged with a weak rope in the forest of Arglud.

Mors autem tanti uiri diucius celari non potuit.
the-death but of-so-great a-man longer to-be-hidden not could
Statim namque, adhuc tepente sanguine, a uenatoribus
at-once for while-still with-warm the-blood by the-hunters
siluas oberrantibus exanimis reperitur. Fit clamor, turbo,
the-woods wandering lifeless he-is-found arises shouting confusion
tumultus, signoque dato, reuocantur caterue uenancium.
tumult and-with-the-signal given are-recalled the-companies of-the-hunters
Profertur in medium funus regium cruore crudeliter
is-brought-forth into the-midst the-corpse royal with-gore cruelly
conspersum, cuius miserabile spectaculum uniuersos ad fletum
sprinkled whose pitiable spectacle all to weeping
commouet et planctum. Tam magni facinoris queruntur
moves and lamentation of-so great a-crime are-sought
auctores, sed difficile patet cognicio cuius rei de
the-authors but hard lies-open the-knowledge of-which thing about

nullo habetur suspicio. Diffunditur rumor per uicinas
no-one is-held suspicion spreads the-rumor through the-neighboring
urbes, regem Caradocum [in] silua insidiis circumuentum
cities king Caradoc in the-wood by-ambushes surrounded
crudeliterque peremptum. Omnes gemunt, omnes super eo
and-cruelly slain all groan all over him
continuant luctum et gemitum, lacrimeque pro mortuo
prolong mourning and groaning and-tears for the-dead-man
effuse quanto uiuus habebatur testabantur amore.
poured-out with-how-much living he-was-held attested love
Regina uero, dum hec geruntur, super uisione
the-queen but while these-things are-done over the-vision
sibi a uiro relata nimis uera coniciens thalamo
to-her by (her)-husband related too true conjecturing in-the-chamber
residebat seque inpacabili fletu afficiebat. Que, nece
sat and-herself with-implacable weeping afflicted who with-the-death
regis comperta eiusque funere eminus contemplato,
of-the-king learned and-his with-the-funeral from-afar contemplated
inmodico dolore correpta in extasim corruit, et, quia mens
by-immoderate grief seized into a-trance fell and because (her)-mind
respiracionem a dolore habere non potuit, corruens expirauit.
breathing-space from grief to-have not could falling she-expired
Interea uero Griffinus alias longius profectus regia exequebatur
meanwhile but Griffin elsewhere farther having-set-out royal was-carrying-out
negocia, ut omnis a se fratricidij aboleretur suspicio.
business that all from himself of-fratricide might-be-abolished suspicion
Cui cum regis interfeccio nunciata fuisset, scissa ueste,
to-whom when of-the-king the-killing announced had-been with-torn garment
abruptisque capillis, luctum simulauit, lacrimas ubertim effudit,
and-torn-out hair mourning he-feigned tears abundantly poured-out
set ipsas lacrimas pocius gaudium quam dolor extorquebat.
but the-tears themselves rather joy than grief wrung-out

Rege igitur Caradoco fatis dato ingentique omnium
with-the-king therefore Caradoc to-the-fates given and-with-huge of-all
comprouincialium merore eius celebratis exequiis, Griffinus
of-the-fellow-provincials grief his with-celebrated funeral Griffin
confestim ui et potencia regnum sibi arripuit,
at-once by-force and power the-kingdom for-himself seized
ipsiusque sibi iura uendicans, se, proceribus absentibus
and-its for-himself rights claiming himself with-the-nobles absent
et nescientibus, diademate insigniuit. Verum multociens
and not-knowing with-the-diadem marked but many-times
nequiciam, quo magis quis tegere nititur, tocius
wickedness by-how-much more anyone to-cover strives of-the-whole
propalatur. Duo namque illi grassatores qui innocuum
is-divulged the-two for those cutthroats who the-innocent
regis sanguinem effuderant, ei semper assistentes, dum
of-the-king blood had-shed him always attending while
premium facinoris sibi promissum eum dissimulare et quasi
the-reward of-the-crime to-them promised him to-dissemble and as-if
obliuioni tradidisse conspicerent, eum secrete conuenere
to-oblivion to-have-handed-over they-saw him secretly met
et ut debita persolueret expeciere, se bene ab eo
and that the-debts he-should-pay demanded themselves well from him
ea promeruisse commemorantes, quorum obsequio sibi
those-things to-have-earned reminding whose by-service to-him
regale cessisset solium. Ipse autem uersipellis, locum
the-royal had-passed throne he but the-shifty an-opportunity
se reperisse aduertens quo plebis a se opinionem
himself to-have-found noticing whereby of-the-people from himself the-opinion
auerteret — de fratris namque interitu iam
he-might-turn-away about of-(his)-brother for the-death already
habebatur suspectus — totum facinus, quasi ultor fratris
he-was-held suspected the-whole crime as-if avenger of-(his)-brother

et rei in[s]cius, in eos retorsit et de morte
and of-the-thing unaware upon them he-turned and about the-death
sui germani coram regni magnatibus criminari cepit;
of-his brother before of-the-kingdom the-magnates to-accuse he-began
statimque quosdam ex officialibus aduocans "Hos" exclamat
and-at-once certain of the-officials summoning these he-cries-out
"carnifices, hos mei fratris karissimi interfectores tollite et
executioners these of-my brother dearest murderers take and
eminencioris arboris fastigio tocius Kambrie simul suspendite,
of-a-loftier tree on-the-top of-the-whole of-Wales together hang
pateatque uniuersis quibus eorum nequiciam remuneraui
and-let-it-be-plain to-all with-what their wickedness I-have-rewarded
stipendiis!" Ad hec illi callide in eum cauillantes
wages to these-things they cunningly against him mocking
"Nequiter" respondent "exsoluis que nobis spopondisti." Quo
wickedly they-answer you-pay what to-us you-promised by-which
sermone Griffinus perculsus metuensque ne se sceleris
speech Griffin struck and-fearing lest him of-the-crime
propalarent conscium eorum absque mora linguas radicitus
they-should-divulge aware their without delay tongues by-the-root
iubet abscidi, ac, data sentencia, eos deinde puniri.
orders to-be-cut-off and with-given sentence them then to-be-punished
Linguis igitur precisis, ad supplicium pertrahuntur, ac in
with-tongues therefore cut-off to punishment they-are-dragged and in
prospectu utriusque insule, Hybernie scilicet et Kambrie,
the-view of-each island of-Ireland namely and of-Wales
rupe preruptissima una suspenduntur. Sermo tamen
on-a-rock most-steep together they-are-hanged the-speech yet
quem in Griffinum puniendi protulerant non surda aure
which against Griffin to-be-punished they-had-uttered not by-deaf ear

perceptus ad principum patrie peruenit noticiam, unde
perceived to of-the-princes of-the-fatherland came the-notice whence
apud omnes fratricidii Griffinus suspicionis notam incurrit.
among all of-fratricide Griffin of-suspicion the-mark incurred
Hoc itaque rumore uulgato, fit clandestina principum
with-this and-so rumor spread arises a-clandestine of-the-princes
perpetratum facinus abhorrencium conuencio diligensque super
the-perpetrated crime abhorring meeting and-diligent over
rebus agendis inter eos consultacio. Nulli quippe dubium erat,
things to-be-done among them consultation to-none indeed doubtful it-was
sed, tum ex illorum qui crimen perpetrarant improbacione,
but both from of-those who the-crime had-perpetrated the-reproach
tum ex uisionis quam supra retulimus interpretacione,
and from of-the-vision which above we-related the-interpretation
omnes ratum habebant, regem Caradocum consensu et
all settled held king Caradoc by-the-consent and
consilio Griffini, fratris sui, necatum fuisse; callebantque
counsel of-Griffin brother his killed to-have-been and-knew
uiri sagacis ingenii, quod, si regni stabilimentum
the-men of-shrewd wit that if of-the-kingdom the-establishment
manusque ualidior Griffino prouenisset, eamdem nequiciam
and-a-hand stronger to-Griffin should-come the-same wickedness
quam in fratre exercuerat in se quoque qui ipsius
which upon (his)-brother he-had-exercised upon them also who his
fideles exstabant uel maiorem exerciturum; ob quod sibi
faithful stood or greater about-to-exercise for which for-themselves
caucius prouidendum et aliquid ex aduerso oportere
more-cautiously to-be-provided and something from opposite to-be-fitting
conari, quo sua roborata, pars aduersarii debilitaretur.
to-attempt whereby their strengthened the-party of-the-adversary might-be-weakened
Inito ergo consilio, cunctorum in hoc copulatur assensus,
with-entered therefore counsel of-all in this is-joined the-assent

ut paruulos, filium scilicet et filiam regis Caradoci, Griffino
that the-little-ones the-son namely and the-daughter of-king Caradoc from-Griffin
auferrent puellamque filio Morouei, ducis Cornubie,
they-should-take-away and-the-girl to-the-son of-Morvid duke of-Cornwall
in coniugium traderent; quatinus ipsius ducis subsidio
in marriage should-hand-over so-that of-the-very of-the-duke by-the-help
puerum, licet decennem, in paternum regnum promouere
the-boy although ten-years-old into the-paternal kingdom to-advance
et Griffino, si quid contra moliretur, possent obsistere.
and to-Griffin if anything against(-them) be-contrived they-could to-resist
Inter ceteros autem primores duo, Sadocus et Duneuuallus,
among the-other but chief-men two Sadoc and Dunewall
sibi inuicem consanguinei, nobilissimi habebantur
to-each-other mutually kinsmen most-noble were-held
proceres, ex quorum sentencia omnium pendebat consilium
nobles from whose judgment of-all hung the-counsel
et qui ipsi conuentui presidere uidebantur. Hii ex
and who that-very meeting to-preside seemed these from
uniuersorum deliberacione Griffinum adeunt regiosque pueros
of-all the-deliberation Griffin approach and-the-royal children
ab eo reposcunt, a patrie principibus id esse decretum
from him demand-back by of-the-fatherland the-princes it to-be decreed
ipsisque placere asserentes, ut paruuli in sua tuicione
and-to-them-themselves to-please asserting that the-little-ones in their guardianship
consisterent, eos ipsi tutarent et educarent, donec etas
should-stay them they-themselves would-protect and would-bring-up until age
maturior et hanc nubilem reddisset et puerum ad regni
riper both her marriageable had-made and the-boy to of-the-kingdom
regimina que sibi iure debebantur admitteret; sic pacem
the-governance which to-him by-right were-owed admitted thus peace
firmandam, patrie concordiam futuram, principum
to-be-confirmed for-the-fatherland concord to-be of-the-princes

nullumque ius regni sibi uendicare ausurum, dum hii
and-no-one right of-the-kingdom for-himself to-claim about-to-dare while these
in medio consisterent, ad quos regni respiciebat gubernacio.
in the-midst stood to whom of-the-kingdom looked the-governance
Tunc Griffinus, licet mente saucius, iram tamen
then Griffin although in-mind wounded (his)-anger yet
continuit, et, ut erat uersute mentis, responsum proceribus
restrained and as he-was of-crafty mind the-answer to-the-nobles
distulit, ut, illis in responsi accepcione suspensis, quid
put-off that with-them in of-the-answer the-reception held-in-suspense what
aduersus eorum conatus sibi utile foret licencius interim
against their attempts for-himself useful would-be more-freely meanwhile
preuideret. Moxque absque dilacione fidelem nuncium ad
he-might-foresee and-soon without delay a-faithful messenger to
nutricium puerorum precipitanter dirigit, eos sibi omni
the-foster-father of-the-children headlong he-sends them to-himself with-every
proposita occasione imperans adduci, uolens sua sub
put-forward occasion ordering to-be-brought wishing his-own under
potestate coherceri, causa quorum sibi periculum timebat
power to-be-confined on-account-of whom for-himself danger he-feared
imminere. Educabantur autem infantes apud regium uenatorem,
to-impend were-brought-up but the-infants with the-royal huntsman
Iuorium nomine, cuius uxor, Morwen dicta, ipsos gemellos
Ivor by-name whose wife Morwen called those twins
gemino lactauerat ubere. Ipsos autem pueros tante pulcritudinis
with-twin had-suckled breast those but children of-such beauty
gracia uenustabat, ut ultra mortale quiddam in eis relucere
grace adorned that beyond mortal something in them to-shine-out
crederes. Puer autem Meriadocus, puella Orwen dicebatur.
you-would-believe the-boy but Meriadoc the-girl Orwen was-called

Iuorius igitur, mandato Griffini accepto, per nuncium
Ivor therefore with-the-command of-Griffin received through the-messenger
ad se directum paruulos ei destinat, nil mali suspicatus
to him directed the-little-ones to-him sends nothing of-evil suspecting
et quid parabatur penitus inscius. Quibus adductis
and what was-being-prepared utterly unaware with-whom brought
Griffinus consilium init cum suis complicibus, disserens et
Griffin counsel enters with his accomplices discussing and
tractans cum eis quid principum sit obiciendum conatibus.
treating with them what of-the-princes is to-be-opposed to-the-attempts
Diuersisque diucius inde causis uentilatis, ultima demum in
and-with-diverse long thence reasons aired the-last at-length in
nece puerorum finitur sentencia. Perpendebat enim, quod,
the-death of-the-children is-ended sentence he-weighed for that
si ipsi principibus traderentur, suffragati ipsorum auxilio
if they to-the-princes were-handed-over supported their by-help
in se insurgerent et, ut regni heredes, se de
against him they-would-rise and as of-the-kingdom heirs him from
regno expellere laborarent; si uero apud se conseruarentur,
the-kingdom to-expel would-labor if but with him they-were-kept
nichilominus, dum daretur facultas, paternum in se ulcisci
nonetheless when was-given the-faculty the-paternal on him to-avenge
niterentur interitum; atque ita, quia eorum causa se
they-would-strive death and so because their by-the-cause for-himself
quoquouersus manebat exitium, hinc necessitate cogente,
on-every-side remained destruction on-this-side with-necessity compelling
illinc regnandi cupiditate stimulante, eos neci addicendos
on-that of-reigning with-desire goading them to-death to-be-assigned
adiudicat statimque trucidari imperat. Quod ubi infantes
he-adjudges and-at-once to-be-slaughtered orders which when the-infants
eius assistentes presencie audierunt, lugubri uoce in
his attending presence heard with-mournful voice on

altum emissa, in fletum miserabiliter proruperunt, seque
high sent-up into weeping pitiably they-burst and-themselves
inuicem amplexi ad sui aui corruere uestigia
mutually having-embraced at of-their-own grandfather fell the-footsteps
paruisque manibus eius pedes tenentes et illis blandis
and-with-little hands his feet holding and with-those coaxing
oribus osculantes lacrimabili questu ac miserandis precibus ut
mouths kissing with-tearful complaint and with-pitiable prayers that
sibi misereretur precabantur. Quis ad hec teneret
on-them he-would-take-pity they-prayed who at these-things would-hold-back
lacrimas? quis non ad misericordiam flecteretur super
tears who not to pity would-be-bent over
tante generositatis alumpnis, super tanto decore preditis,
of-so-great nobility the-nurslings over with-so-great beauty endowed
humo stratis, indulgenciam supplicantibus? Griffinus
on-the-ground laid-low indulgence begging Griffin
quoque, uidens suos nepotes suis prouolutos uestigiis, ad
also seeing his nephews at-his rolled-forward footsteps to
misericordiam flectitur, eosque ab intentata cede absoluit.
pity is-bent and-them from the-intended slaughter releases
Verumptamen proprie saluti consulens sciensque quod, si salui
nevertheless his-own safety consulting and-knowing that if safe
euasissent, semper quoquomodo debitas a se penas
they-should-have-escaped always in-some-way the-due from him penalties
exigerent, iussit eos ad siluam que Arglud nuncupatur
they-would-exact ordered them to the-wood which Arglud is-named
deduci atque laqueo suspendi, ita tamen ut fragiliori
to-be-led and with-a-noose to-be-hanged so yet that with-a-more-fragile
fune, qui cicius rumpi posset, sibi colla necterentur,
rope which more-quickly to-be-broken could their necks should-be-tied

fidei sacramento ab xij uiris hoc nefas executuris accepto,
of-faith with-the-oath from twelve men this outrage about-to-carry-out received
ut numquam inde discederent, donec rupta corda cecidissent.
that never thence they-would-depart until broken the-cords had-fallen

THE RESCUE IN THE FOREST OF ARGLUD

The hangmen, pitying the children, hang them gently from a great hollow oak. Ivor, with his wife and his dog Dolfin, lights fires baited with meat that draw two thousand wolves; the twelve men hide in the hollow, he scares the wolves off with his horn, smokes the men out, and beheads them one by one. He carries the children to the forest of Fleventan, to the Rock of the Eagles and the halls of the Cyclopes, where they live hidden five years, cooking meat with heated stones.

Acceptis igitur infantulis, tortores forestam Arglud
with-received therefore the-little-children the-torturers the-forest Arglud
pecierunt. At ubi ad siluas uentum est, ceperunt mutuo
sought but when to the-woods come it-was they-began mutually
de eorum conqueri exicio, dicentes nefarium esse tam
about their to-complain the-destruction saying wicked to-be by-so
crudeli morte perire quos nihil constabat deliquisse.
cruel a-death to-perish those-whom nothing it-was-agreed to-have-done-wrong
Motique pietate sic eos statuerunt suspendere, ut et
and-moved by-pity so them they-decided to-hang that both
funis cito rumperetur et salui euadere potuissent. In
the-rope quickly should-break and safe to-escape they-might-be-able in
quodam autem saltu ipsius nemoris annosa quercus a
a-certain moreover glade of-that-very grove an-ancient oak from
diluuii exstabat tempore, proceritate elata, ramis ampla
of-the-flood stood the-time by-tallness lifted in-(its)-branches ample
diffusis, et quam uix bisseni uiri brachiorum circumdarent
spread and which scarcely twice-six men of-arms could-surround

amplexu. Solo tenusque interius erat concaua; cuius
with-the-embrace the-ground and-down-to within it-was hollow whose
concauitas in se spaciose uiginti contineret homines, adeo
hollowness in itself spaciously twenty could-contain men so
artum habens aditum, ut flexo poplite, depressis humeris,
narrow having an-entrance that with-bent knee with-lowered shoulders
illam necesse erat subire. Super huius ramum roboris
it necessary it-was to-go-under upon of-this the-branch of-oak
pueros, coniunctis adinuicem uultibus, mutuis inherentes
the-children with-joined to-each-other faces mutual clinging
amplexibus, debili fune illaqueauerunt, ut, sicut dixi,
in-embraces with-a-weak rope they-noosed that as I-have-said
rupto fune, cicius caderent illesisque gutturibus
with-broken rope more-quickly they-might-fall and-with-unharmed throats
indempnes manere[n]t; citius namque deficiunt qui nexi
undamaged they-might-remain more-quickly for fail who tied
guttura laqueo suspenduntur; suspensos autem pueros ipsi
by-the-throats with-a-noose are-hanged the-hanged but children they
econtra, ut sibi imperatum fuerat, obseruantes residebant.
opposite as on-them enjoined it-had-been observing sat-by
Interea tam tristis rumor ad eorum nutricii Iuorij aures
meanwhile so sad a-rumor to of-their foster-father Ivor the-ears
defertur. Qui rem sue coniugi, lacrimis suffusus, referens,
is-carried who the-thing to-his wife with-tears suffused relating
"Aut" ait, "certe, eos neci surripiam aut una cum
either he-says surely them from-death I-shall-snatch or together with
eis moriar." Confestimque cornu uenatorio collo innexo
them I-shall-die and-at-once with-horn hunting on-(his)-neck tied
seque suo cane, dicto Dolfin, comitante, quem multum
and-himself with-his dog called Dolfin accompanying whom much
diligebat, simul cum uxore Morwen ad siluam Arglud iter
he-loved together with (his)-wife Morwen to the-wood Arglud the-way

arripuit, hiis armis tantummodo, arcu scilicet cum sagittis
seized with-these arms only the-bow namely with arrows
et gladio, contentus. Sed quia se solum inermem contra
and the-sword content but because himself alone unarmed against
tot intelligebat nil posse ualere, industria sanius quam
so-many he-understood nothing to-be-able to-avail industry more-sensibly than
uiribus censebat utendum. Quatuor igitur ingentes focos e
strength he-judged to-be-used four therefore huge fires from
quatuor partibus ipsius saltus accendit, accensisque plurimas
four parts of-that-very glade he-kindles and-with-kindled very-many
quas secum attulerat carnes passim iniecit ilicemque
which with-himself he-had-brought meats everywhere he-threw-in and-a-holm-oak
uicinam cum coniuge et cane ascendens delituit. Fumo
neighboring with (his)-wife and dog climbing lay-hid with-the-smoke
autem ignium per nemoris latitudinem diffuso, ubi lupi
moreover of-the-fires through of-the-grove the-breadth spread when the-wolves
in confinio degentes — quorum inibi ingens habebatur
in the-neighborhood living of-whom there huge was-held
copia — odorem perceperunt carnium, illo contendere et
abundance the-smell perceived of-the-meats thither to-hasten and
confluere ilico ceperunt, sociisque longius exstantibus
to-flow-together at-once they-began and-with-companions farther standing-off
diro ululatu, ut moris habent, aduocatis, in unius hore spacio
with-dire howling as custom they-have summoned in of-one hour the-space
pene usque ad duo milia conuenere. Aduentu quorum
almost all-the-way to two thousand came-together at-the-coming of-whom
illi xij uiri nimis perterriti seque uidentes tanta
those twelve men too terrified and-themselves seeing by-so-great
luporum hinc et inde obsessos multitudine, dum nec
of-wolves on-this-side and on-that besieged multitude while neither

ualerent fugere nec loco auderent consistere, concauitatem
were-able to-flee nor in-the-place dared to-stand the-hollowness
prefate arboris delitescendi gracia omnes subiere.
of-the-aforesaid tree of-hiding for-the-sake all went-under
Lupi autem conuenientes rogos cateruatim circumstabant
the-wolves but coming-together the-pyres in-packs stood-around
atque in flammarum globos ac si inde carnes erepturi
and into of-flames the-balls as if thence the-meats about-to-snatch
impetum faciebant. Tunc Iuorius, tenso arcu, quatuor
an-onset made then Ivor with-stretched bow four
in illos quatuor ignes uallantes spicula direxit, quatuorque,
against those four the-fires surrounding darts aimed and-four
transfossis illiis, uulnerauit. Sanguine uero effluente, ceteri
with-pierced flanks he-wounded with-the-blood but flowing-out the-other
omnes lupi in eos qui uulnera pertulerant irruerunt eosque
all wolves upon those who the-wounds had-borne rushed and-them
membratim dilacerantes discerpserunt; consuetudinis enim
limb-by-limb tearing tore-apart of-custom for
est illis illo quo ignem perceperint semper contendere,
it-is with-them thither where fire they-have-perceived always to-hasten
eumque quem e sui numero sauciari contigerit unguibus
and-him whom from their number to-be-wounded it-has-happened with-claws
et dentibus discerpere. Lupis uero circa rogos certantibus
and teeth to-tear-apart with-the-wolves but around the-pyres fighting
et tumultuantibus, cauee inclusis metus augebatur,
and rioting in-the-cave for-those-shut-in the-fear was-increased
lupos sui causa circa quercum exterius seuire
the-wolves their-own for-the-sake around the-oak outside to-rage
reputantibus. Ad hec Iuorius cornu ho[r]ribiliter insonuit
reckoning at this Ivor on-the-horn horribly sounded
eiusque strepitu uniuersos inde lupos abegit. Nichil enim
and-by-its din all thence the-wolves drove-off nothing for

adeo lupi quam sagittas et tubarum metuunt strepitum,
so-much wolves than arrows and of-trumpets fear the-din
unde eciam raro aut numquam uenatoribus lesionem inferunt.
whence also rarely or never to-hunters injury they-bring
Iuorius igitur inde, lupis abactis, arborem qua
Ivor therefore thence with-the-wolves driven-off the-tree in-which
considerat descendit ac ignem copiosum ante ipsius fouee
he-had-sat descends and fire abundant before of-the-very hole
introitum qua uiri latebant cumulauit; cuius calore
the-entrance in-which the-men lay-hid heaped-up whose by-the-heat
fumique uapore inclusos pene extinxit. Illi autem
and-of-the-smoke by-the-vapor the-shut-in almost he-extinguished they but
se interius quantum ualebant retrahebant et artabant,
themselves within as-far-as they-were-able drew-back and squeezed
sed Iuorius nichilominus semper ignem propius admouens
but Ivor nonetheless always the-fire nearer moving-up
insequebatur, donec sub ipso ore spelunce flammam
pursued until under the-very mouth of-the-cave the-flame
ingessit. Tunc illi torridi et semiusti una uoce "Iuori,
he-thrust then they scorched and half-burned with-one voice Ivor
miserere!" exclamant "scimus enim quis sis et quod causa
have-mercy cry-out we-know for who you-are and that for-the-sake
paruulorum hoc in nos sis machinatus discrimen.
of-the-little-ones this against us you-have contrived peril
Sed, quesumus, ignem a nobis amoue et facultatem hinc
but we-beg the-fire from us remove and the-means hence
egrediendi tribue; et nos tecum pueris liberum paciemur
of-going-out grant and we with-you the-children free will-allow
abire." Quibus Iuorius: "Exite, ergo." Ignemque e latere
to-go-away to-whom Ivor go-out then and-the-fire from the-side
hinc et inde amouens, exeundi facultatem dedit. Erat
on-this-side and on-that removing of-going-out the-means gave was

autem, ut in anterioribus retuli, ipsius cauee aditus tam
moreover as in the-former-parts I-related of-that-very cave the-entrance so
artus et summissus, ut non nisi unum solum intrantem uel
narrow and low that not except one alone entering or
exeuntem et illum flexo poplite, capite demisso, admitteret
going-out and him with-bent knee with-head lowered it-would-admit
et emitteret. Data itaque exeundi licencia, unus solus
and let-out with-given and-so of-going-out leave one alone
repens manibus et pedibus egreditur. Qui cum ceruicem
creeping on-hands and feet goes-out who when (his)-neck
extulisset, Iuorius a foris e latere spelunce consistens,
he-had-raised Ivor from outside on the-side of-the-cave standing
euaginato gladio, ei caput amputauit. Truncumque ad
with-drawn sword from-him the-head cut-off and-the-trunk to
se cadauer extrahens, "Exite hinc! propere hinc" exclamat
himself the-corpse drawing go-out from-here quickly from-here he-cries
"exite! Quid moramini?" Unus igitur post unum omnes
go-out why do-you-delay one therefore after one all
egressi sunt, singulisque egredientibus Iuorius caput abscidit.
gone-out have and-to-each going-out Ivor the-head cut-off
Hiis ita gestis, pueros iam pene dimidie diei
with-these-things so done the-children already almost of-half a-day
suspensos spacio, eciam fere exanimes, deposuit, allatoque
hanged for-the-space also almost lifeless he-took-down and-with-brought
cibo eorum animas parum refocillauit, ac deinde cum eis et
food their souls a-little he-refreshed and then with them and
suo cane Dolfin et coniuge ad siluam Fleuentanam confugit.
his dog Dolfin and wife to the-wood Fleventan fled
Verebatur namque propter Griffini furorem uel domum
he-feared for on-account-of of-Griffin the-fury either home
redire uel quoquam in patria clam amplius consistere. In
to-return or anywhere in the-country secretly longer to-stay in

illa autem silua rupes ardua nimis eminebat, rupes aquilarum
that moreover wood a-rock steep exceedingly towered the-rock of-the-eagles
nuncupata, eo quod omni tempore quatuor super illam
named for-this that at-every time four upon it
nidificient aquile, contra quatuor principales uentos semper
nest eagles toward the-four principal winds always
uultus conuersos habentes. Et ipsa uero et in ipsa
(their)-faces turned having and that-very indeed and in the-very
rupe aula perampla, perpulcri thalami, diuersaque miri
rock a-hall very-ample very-beautiful chambers and-various of-wonderful
operis ad instar testudinis erant incisa edificia, habitacula
work in the-likeness of-a-tortoise were cut-out buildings the-dwellings
ciclopum olim credita, sed ante illud tempus uix ab aliquo
of-the-Cyclopes once believed but before that time scarcely by anyone
comperta, archano et densissimo nemoris sinu recondita. Hec
found in-the-secret and densest of-the-grove bosom hidden these
edificia Iuorius cum infantulis peciit, ac ibi quinquennio
buildings Ivor with the-little-children sought and there for-five-years
omnibus incognitus moram fecit. Ferina caro quam uenatu
by-all unknown delay made the-wild flesh which by-hunting
conquirebat cibum, latex haustum prebebat; nuces quoque
he-acquired food the-water drink provided nuts also
pomaque siluestria et ceteri fructus qui inibi inueniri
and-apples woodland and the-other fruits which there to-be-found
poterant, autumpnali collecti tempore et reconditi, alimento
could in-the-autumnal gathered time and stored for-nourishment
seruiebant. Iuorius cum Meriadoco uenatum et aucupatum
served Ivor with Meriadoc to-hunt and to-fowl
cotidie pergebat; Morwen uero, uxor eius, puella Orwen
daily went Morwen but wife his with-the-girl Orwen
secum assumpta, in colligendo fructus uel herbas occupabatur.
with-herself taken in gathering fruits or herbs was-occupied

Set hic fortassis queritur quomodo sibi carnes ad esum
but here perhaps it-is-asked how for-themselves the-meats for eating
parauerint, dum et ignis et uasa quibus elixari possent
they-prepared while both fire and vessels in-which to-be-boiled they-might
defuerint. Carnes quidem sibi pabula tum more
were-lacking the-meats indeed for-themselves as-fodder then in-the-manner
siluis exulancium accurare consueuerant. Huiusmodi
in-the-woods of-exiles to-prepare were-accustomed of-this-kind
quippe homines prediis uel patria scelere exigente
indeed men from-estates or from-the-fatherland with-crime demanding
expulsi, publica ab conuersacione remocius semoti, saltus
expelled public from intercourse more-remotely removed of-the-glades
siluarumque latebras usque frequentantes, dum uasis cibis
and-of-the-woods the-hiding-places continually frequenting while of-vessels for-foods
elixandis necessariis indigent, ignem silice eliciunt, piram
to-be-boiled necessary they-lack fire from-flint draw-out a-pyre
quam maximam e sarmentorum lignorumque constructam
as great-as-possible from of-twigs and-of-wood built
congerie copiose accendunt; accenseque caucium quot
heap abundantly they-kindle and-into-the-kindled of-stones as-many-as
uoluerint calefaciendos iniciunt. Interim uero ceteri, terram
they-wish to-be-heated throw-in meanwhile but the-others the-earth
cauantes, binas fossas non eiusdem quantitatis preparant, una
hollowing two pits not of-the-same size prepare one
quarum alta et ampla, altera parum arcior et profundior
of-which deep and ample the-other a-little narrower and deeper
exstat. Sicque constituuntur ad inuicem, ut semipedis
stands and-so they-are-placed to each-other that of-a-half-foot
inconuulse terre spacium inter eas maneat. Per illud autem
of-undisturbed earth a-space between them remains through that moreover
spacium a maiori ad humiliorem foueam fit oblique haud
space from the-greater to the-lower pit is-made obliquely not

magnum foramen quod clepsedra uel sude obturatur.
great a-hole which with-a-water-stopper or with-a-stake is-plugged
Inde unda implent maiorem, carnes uero elixandas in
thence with-water they-fill the-greater the-meats but to-be-boiled in
minori collocant, uiridi quoquouersus substrato gramine,
the-smaller they-place with-green on-every-side spread grass
locatasque iterum herba cooperiunt. Hiis autem ita
and-the-placed again with-grass they-cover with-these-things moreover so
compositis, iam scintillantes foco eiectos caudices in
arranged now sparkling from-the-fire thrown-out the-stones into
foueam repletam deuoluunt latice; ab quorum feruore limpha
the-pit filled they-roll with-water from whose heat the-water
non solum estuans sed eciam ebulliens, dempta clusilla,
not only seething but also boiling-up with-removed the-little-stopper
in continenti pabula percurrere cauea sinitur. Hocque tam
in the-instant the-food to-run-through in-the-hollow is-allowed and-this so
diu fit donec sufficienter elixa caro extrahatur. Iuorius
long is-done until sufficiently boiled the-meat be-drawn-out Ivor
quoque, eo ordine carnes elixandas conficiens, cibum sibi
also in-that order meats to-be-boiled preparing food for-himself
gratissimum et saporissimum accurabat. Attritis autem
most-pleasing and most-savory prepared with-worn-out moreover
et consumptis uestimentis que illuc attulerant, indumenta
and consumed garments which thither they-had-brought clothing
sibi ex papiris texuerunt ac arborum consuerunt foliis.
for-themselves from papyrus they-wove and of-trees they-sewed from-leaves

King Urien of Scotland, riding with Arthur's steward Kay, carries off the girl Orwen; Kay carries off Meriadoc. After two years of mourning, Ivor and Morwen part to seek them. Morwen finds Orwen married to Urien, is recognized among the poor at the wedding, and honored. Ivor comes to Arthur's court with a stag, and Meriadoc leaps the table to embrace him; Kay keeps Ivor, and brings him and Meriadoc to Scotland, where the family is reunited.

Emenso uero v annorum spacio, quadam die, dum nemus
with-passed but of-five years the-space on-a-certain day while the-grove
se solito spatiatum lustrarent et Morwen cum
themselves in-the-accustomed-way to-walk they-traversed and Morwen with
puella longius ab Iuorio esset semota, ecce Urianus cum Kaio,
the-girl farther from Ivor was removed behold Urien with Kay
regis Arturi dapifero, media uia illis occurrit. Urianus
of-king Arthur the-steward in-the-middle of-the-way them met Urien
uero rex erat Scocie curiamque regis Arturi adierat, eumque
but king was of-Scotland and-the-court of-king Arthur had-visited and-him
ad propria repedantem Kaius iussu regis Arturi conducebat.
to his-own returning Kay by-the-order of-king Arthur escorted
Cumque simul properantes cominus puelle deuenissent, salutans
and-when together hurrying near the-girl they-had-come greeting
sibi inuicem Kaius quidem regreditur: Urianus uero ceptum
each-other mutually Kay indeed returns Urien but the-begun
iter prosequitur. Qui puellam eleganti forma contemplatus,
way pursues who the-girl of-elegant form having-contemplated
tanteque esse pulcritudinis, quante nunquam aliquam
and-of-so-great to-be beauty as-great-as never any
nouerat, ipsius amore succenditur. Illo equum conuertit;
he-had-known of-her with-love is-kindled thither (his)-horse he-turned

illam nequicquam reluctantem ante se super sonipedem
her in-vain resisting before himself upon the-steed
sustulit, ac, nutrice flente relicta, suam in patriam abduxit.
he-lifted and with-the-nurse weeping left his-own into country carried-off
Kayus quoque, dum per artam semitam in regrediendo
Kay also while along the-narrow path in returning
tenderet, Iuorium et Meriadocum uenatu honustos obuios
he-made-his-way Ivor and Meriadoc with-hunting laden to-meet
habuit. Ipseque incomparabilem pueri admiratus speciem
he-had and-he the-incomparable of-the-boy admiring beauty
— erat enim flauis capillis, nitida facie, procera statura
he-was for with-blond hair with-shining face tall in-stature
et pectore exstante, ilibus gracilioribus — cornipedem
and with-breast standing-out with-flanks slenderer the-horse
post ipsos iam fugientes admittit, Iuorioque longius terrore
after them already fleeing he-lets-go and-with-Ivor farther by-terror
abacto, Meriadocum rapuit ouansque secum deuexit.
driven-off Meriadoc he-seized and-exulting with-himself carried-off
Iuorius autem, erepto sibi puero Meriadoco, sua
Ivor moreover with-snatched from-him the-boy Meriadoc his
lugubris habitacula repetit, quo sua[m] coniugem similem
mournful dwellings seeks-again where his wife a-like
deflentem querelam offendens quod discrimen incurrerant
weeping complaint meeting what peril they-had-incurred
alterutro referunt. Pro quo infortunio eiusmodi dolor eorum
to-each-other they-relate for which misfortune of-such-a-kind grief their
mentes occupauit, ut continuo biennio post amissionem
minds occupied that continuously for-two-years after the-loss
puerorum se inmitigabili luctu torquentes non sine
of-the-children themselves with-unappeasable mourning torturing not without
maxima cibi potusque penuria inibi soli degerent.
the-greatest of-food and-of-drink want there alone they-lived

Expleto uero biennio, dum una die se conquerentes
with-completed but the-two-years while on-one day themselves lamenting
inuicem multa conferrent, "Quid" ait illa "hic solitarii
to-each-other many-things they-discussed why she-said she here solitary
degimus? Causa puerorum huc confugimus, ut eos uite
do-we-live for-the-sake of-the-children hither we-fled that them alive
conseruaremus, hic hactenus perstitimus; quibus ablatis et
we-might-preserve here hitherto we-have-persisted with-whom taken-away and
desideratis, quid hic nos ulterius detinet? Saniori profecto
longed-for what here us further holds more-sensible surely
uteremur consilio, si quo abducti sint inquirere et
we-would-use counsel if whither carried-off they-have-been to-inquire and
indagare studuissemus. Pergam certe nunquam indultura
to-track we-had-been-eager I-shall-go surely never about-to-indulge
labori, nunquam captura quietem, donec puellam michi
labor never about-to-take rest until the-girl from-me
surreptam usquam fortuna nancisci concesserit. Scio autem
stolen anywhere fortune to-obtain will-have-granted I-know moreover
quod hac parte et manum contra boream abducta sit. Miles
that in-this part and direction toward the-north carried-off she-was the-knight
enim qui uirum conducebat, a quo puella rapta est, dum ab
for who the-man escorted by whom the-girl seized was while from
eo discederet, se in Scociam ad eum uenturum promisit
him he-was-departing himself into Scotland to him about-to-come promised
eique proprio ualedicens nomine Urianum nuncupauit."
and-to-him by-his-own bidding-farewell name Urien called
Iuorius: "Ego quidem curiam regis Arturi frequenter
Ivor I indeed the-court of-king Arthur often
frequentaui, ei uenatorio officio obsequens, quo, si umquam
frequented him in-the-hunting office serving where if ever
Kaius ipsius dapifer michi uisus et cognitus est, illum a me
Kay his steward to-me seen and known has-been him from me

puerum Meriadocum abstulisse non dubito. Ibo et ego,
the-boy Meriadoc to-have-taken-away not I-doubt I-shall-go also I
si forte diuinum numen, nostri miseratum doloris, eum michi
if perhaps the-divine power our having-pitied grief him to-me
aliquorsum obtulerit." Dicta faciunt; se mutuo flentes
somewhere will-have-offered the-words they-do themselves mutually weeping
osculantur; diuersasque uias ineuntes ab inuicem dirimuntur.
kiss and-different ways entering from each-other are-parted
Morwen igitur ad Scociam iter arripuit; ipsaque die
Morwen therefore to Scotland the-way seized and-on-that-very day
qua Urianus rex, puella Oruen sibi in uxore
on-which Urien the-king with-the-girl Orwen to-himself in marriage
dotata, celebres nupcias agebat, illo peruenit. Jam namque
dowered famous nuptials celebrated thither arrived already for
Oruuen nubilem etatem attigerat; et quibus erat oriunda
Orwen marriageable the-age had-reached and from-what she-was sprung
natalibus, ipsa referente, Uriano regi euidenter patuerat.
birth she-herself relating to-Urien the-king plainly it-had-been-shown
Missarum autem peractis selempniis, dum regina Oruen
of-the-masses moreover with-completed the-solemnities while the-queen Orwen
splendidis ornata indumentis ab ecclesia ad palacium rediret,
in-splendid adorned clothing from the-church to the-palace returned
Moruuen, turbis pauperum qui elemosinam petituri
Morwen with-the-crowds of-the-poor who alms about-to-ask
confluerant inmixta, ipsam quidem diligenter contemplabatur,
had-flocked mingled her indeed diligently contemplated
set eam minime cognoscere potuit; ex uarietate quippe
but her not-at-all to-recognize could from the-variety indeed
cultus sepe fallitur cognicio uultus. At regina inter
of-dress often is-deceived the-recognition of-the-face but the-queen among
cateruas pauperum parum subsistens, cui bonus mos
the-companies of-the-poor a-little stopping in-whom a-good custom

inoleuerat egenos semper fouere et eorum inopiam sua
had-grown the-needy always to-cherish and their want with-her
supplere habundancia, dum pietatis in eos intuitum flecteret,
to-supply abundance while of-pity on them the-gaze she-bent
suam nutricem inopinate aduertit, animaduersamque cognouit.
her nurse unexpectedly noticed and-noticed recognized
Quam statim ut aspexit, pallore suffunditur et tum dolore
whom at-once as she-saw with-pallor she-is-suffused and both with-grief
preteritorum, tum gaudio presencium, mente sibi
of-past-things and with-joy of-present-things with-(her)-mind from-her
euanescente, in mentis excessum rapitur ac inter manus
fading into of-mind a-swoon she-is-snatched and among the-hands
procerum quibus incumbebat ad terram labitur. Ad hec
of-the-nobles on-whom she-leaned to the-ground glides at this
nobiles et proceres omnesque circumstantes obstupefacti
the-nobles and lords and-all bystanders astounded
accurrunt. Adest et ipse rex Urianus nimis trepidus,
run-up is-present also himself the-king Urien too frightened
eamque in se reuersam releuans quid habuisset interrogat.
and-her to herself returned raising what she-had-had asks
Regina "Non est mirum, domine" respondit "si uultus
the-queen not it-is wonderful lord she-answered if (my)-face
palluerit, si mens mihi defecerit — mihi me coram illam
has-grown-pale if the-mind for-me has-failed for-me myself before her
intuenti assistere que cum maximo proprio dispendio me
looking to-stand who with the-greatest own cost me
neci surripuit et usque ad etatem adultam educauit.
from-death snatched and all-the-way to age adult brought-up
Set nunc quam cara tibi habear, quo me amore
but now how dear to-you I-am-held with-what me love
diligas, in ea ostendere poteris; quia quicquid boni uel
you-love in her to-show you-will-be-able because whatever of-good or

honoris illi impenderis, me gracius accepturam quam
of-honor on-her you-shall-have-spent me more-gratefully about-to-receive than
mihimet impensum cognoscito." Suamque nutricem medio
on-myself spent know and-her nurse from-the-midst
pauperum euocans, lacrimis prorumpentibus, eius collo
of-the-poor calling with-tears bursting-forth her on-the-neck
brachia iniecit ac ante regem Urianum papira dumtaxat ueste
the-arms she-threw and before king Urien in-papyrus only clothing
amictam statuit. Urianus uero, liberalitatem laudans coniugis,
clad set-her Urien but the-generosity praising of-(his)-wife
iussit Moruuen thalamo induci, optimo cultu indui,
ordered Morwen into-the-chamber to-be-led with-the-best dress to-be-clothed
omniaque ei reperiens necessaria, cum regina fecit morari.
and-all-things for-her finding necessary with the-queen made to-stay
Iuorius autem interea regis Arturi curiam adiit, atque
Ivor moreover meanwhile of-king Arthur the-court approached and
eo conuiuante, cuius fores nunquam tempore prandij
with-him feasting whose doors never in-the-time of-dinner
claudebantur, regiam aulam, omnibus spectaculo factus, subiit;
were-closed the-royal hall to-all a-spectacle made entered
uir namque innormis proceritatis erat, torua facie, barba
a-man for of-enormous tallness he-was with-grim face with-beard
prolixa, incultis crinibus, scyrpis et papijris contextis
long with-unkempt hair with-rushes and papyrus woven
amictus, ense latus cinctus, uenatorium cornu collo,
clad with-a-sword at-(his)-side girt a-hunting horn on-(his)-neck
arcum cum sagittis manu, ceruum uero exanimem magni
a-bow with arrows in-(his)-hand a-stag but lifeless of-great
ponderis inmenseque magnitudinis, quem sibi obuium
weight and-of-immense size which to-him in-(his)-way
casu uenatu ceperat, humeris gestans. Regiam autem
by-chance in-hunting he-had-taken on-(his)-shoulders carrying the-royal moreover

ingressus, uniuersos hinc et inde discumbentes diucius
having-entered all on-this-side and on-that reclining long
immobilis persistens diligenti cepit perlustrari lumine, si forte
motionless persisting with-diligent began to-survey with-eye if perhaps
quempiam inter eos cognosceret, a quo et ipse quis esset
anyone among them he-might-recognize by whom also he-himself who he-was
innotesci ualeret. Set neminem preter Kaium dapiferum
to-be-made-known might-be-able but no-one except Kay the-steward
aduertit quem sibi antea cognitum recognoscebat. Quo
he-noticed whom to-himself before known he-recognized with-whom
uiso, ceteris pretergressis, confestim coram eo ad mensam
seen with-the-others passed-by at-once before him to the-table
accessit, eum salutauit, suoque prolato uocabulo et quis
he-approached him he-greeted and-with-his uttered name and who
esset ostenso, ceruum eius ante pedes deposuit, ut sui
he-was shown the-stag his before feet laid-down that of-himself
munusculum non dedignaretur accipere rogitans.
the-little-gift not he-would-disdain to-accept asking
Meriadocus uero, Iuorio intrante, mense cum aliis residens, ut
Meriadoc but with-Ivor entering at-the-table with others sitting as
eum conspexit, quis erat falli non potuit, confestimque
him he-saw who he-was to-be-deceived not could and-at-once
iunctis pedibus mensam transsiliit, in eius amplexus lacrimis
with-joined feet the-table leapt-over into his embraces with-tears
suffusus irruit, eum necis liberatorem uiteque conseruatorem
suffused rushed him of-death the-deliverer and-of-life the-preserver
contestans et clamitans. Deinde cum eo ante Kaium
calling-to-witness and crying-out then with him before Kay
accedens dapiferum, commemoratis ab eo sibi collocatis
approaching the-steward with-recalled by him on-himself bestowed
beneficiis, ut illius dignaretur, sui gracia, remunerare
benefits that his he-would-deign his-own for-the-sake to-repay

beniuolenciam suppliciter exorabat. Kaius autem non ignarus
kindness suppliantly he-begged Kay moreover not ignorant
quis esset, quippe qui sibi quondam multociens suo solebat
who he-was indeed who to-himself once many-times by-his was-wont
obsequi officio, precipue tamen gracia Meriadoci, illum
to-serve office especially yet for-the-sake of-Meriadoc him
penes se retinuit ac quibus indigebat liberaliter ditauit.
with himself retained and with-what-things he-needed generously enriched
Non multum post hoc temporis effluxerat et Kaius dapifer,
not much after this of-time had-flowed-out and Kay the-steward
ut ipsum Uriano spopondisse commemorauimus, in Scociam
as him to-Urien to-have-promised we-have-recalled into Scotland
proficiscitur, Iuorium et Meriadocum secum adducens;
sets-out Ivor and Meriadoc with-himself bringing
bellorum quippe impedimentis instantibus quibus sub rege
of-wars indeed by-the-hindrances pressing which under king
Arturo semper occupabatur nunquam antea expediri potuit, ut
Arthur always he-was-occupied never before to-be-freed could that
secundum suam promissionem illo proficisci ualuisset.
according-to his promise thither to-set-out he-might-have-been-able
In Scociam igitur ad regem Urianum peruenientes, ultra
into Scotland therefore to the-king Urien arriving beyond
omnem estimacionem Iuorius uxorem, Meriadocus sororem
all expectation Ivor (his)-wife Meriadoc sister
suam sanam et hilarem, ingentique honore et gloria
his sound and cheerful and-with-huge honor and glory
preditam, reperit. Quantum hinc eis exoritur gaudium,
endowed found how-great hence for-them arises joy
quam efficax preteritorum sibi hinc euenerit remedium,
how effective of-past-things for-them hence has-come the-remedy
ex ipsius rei euentu perpendere poteris. Que
from of-the-very thing by-the-outcome to-weigh you-will-be-able what

enim maior leticia quam parentes et amici tristes diucius
for greater gladness than that-parents and friends sad long
diuisi se tandem hillares reperire, post nimios labores
divided themselves at-last cheerful to-find after excessive labors
potiri quiete, pauperiemque et miseriam diuitiis et gloria
to-gain rest and-poverty and misery for-riches and glory
commutare? Universos igitur commune gaudium optinet,
to-exchange all therefore common joy holds
plurimi in deliciis dies ob tantam fortune graciam ab eis
very-many in delights days for so-great of-fortune favor by them
continuantur preteritique dolores releuantur gaudiis.
are-continued and-past griefs are-relieved by-joys

GRIFFIN'S END; THE BLACK KNIGHT'S CHALLENGE

Meriadoc and Orwen ask Arthur to avenge their father. Griffin refuses his summons, fortifies Snowdon, and holds the one open pass against Arthur until Sadoc and Dunewall raid behind him; when he leaves it, Arthur crosses and besieges him three years, until famine forces his surrender. The nobles condemn him and he is beheaded. Meriadoc entrusts Wales to Urien and seeks knighthood. The Black Knight of the Black Glade, claiming his glade against Arthur, offers to fight forty of Arthur's knights, one a day.

Cum autem simul inibi commorarentur, ceperunt sui patrui
when moreover together there they-stayed they-began of-their uncle
Griffini nequiciam, quam tum in suo genitore, tum et
Griffin the-wickedness which both upon their father and also
in se nequiter exercuerat, crebro sermone reuoluere
upon themselves wickedly he-had-exercised in-frequent speech to-revolve
et si aliquo modo uicem sue malicie illi reddere
and if in-some way the-return of-his malice to-him to-render

ualerent propensius agere. Sed, quia regem Arturum
they-might-be-able more-eagerly to-act but because king Arthur
illi fauere non ignorabant, sub cuius Griffinus degebat
him to-favor not they-were-unaware under whose Griffin lived
imperio, sibi minime successurum sciebant, si sine
command for-themselves not-at-all about-to-succeed they-knew if without
regis Arturi assensu et auxilio aliquid in eum moliri
of-the-king Arthur the-assent and help anything against him to-contrive
conarentur. Ex communi igitur sentencia et deliberacione
they-should-attempt from common therefore judgment and deliberation
oportunum tempus nacti, regem Arturum super hiis
a-fitting time having-obtained king Arthur about these-things
se apud eum conquesturi adeunt. A quo honorifice
themselves with him about-to-complain they-approach by whom honorably
suscepti causam aduentus insinuant, flebili querimonia
received the-cause of-(their)-coming they-intimate with-tearful complaint
rem gestam ei per ordinem referunt, et ut se super
the-thing done to-him through order they-relate and that them over
tanto ulcisceretur scelere illius genibus prouoluti suppliciter
so-great he-would-avenge crime of-him at-the-knees prostrated suppliantly
deposcunt. Rex autem Arturus regis quondam Caradoci
they-demand the-king moreover Arthur of-king once Caradoc
probitatem et sapienciam ad memoriam reducens et tam
the-prowess and wisdom to memory bringing-back and so
inauditum Griffini detestans facinus ei confestim misso
unheard-of of-Griffin detesting the-crime to-him at-once with-sent
mandauit nuncio, ut die statuta ad suam ueniret
ordered messenger that on-the-day appointed to his he-should-come
curiam, super fratricidio quod sibi imponebatur responsurus.
court about the-fratricide which on-him was-imposed about-to-answer

Griffinus uero hactenus fama uulgante suos nepotes quos
Griffin but hitherto with-rumor spreading his nephews whom
neci addixerat audito euasisse, semper habens suspectum
to-death he-had-assigned with-it-heard to-have-escaped always holding suspect
se non impune laturum scelus quod in eos orsus fuerat,
himself not unpunished about-to-bear the-crime which against them begun he-had
locis opportunis castella condiderat uirisque et pabulo in
in-places fitting castles had-built and-with-men and with-fodder in
preparacionem pugne callide sufficienter munierat. Et maxime
preparation of-battle cunningly sufficiently had-fortified and especially
niualem montem qui Kambrice Snawdown dicitur, situ
the-snowy mountain which in-Welsh Snowdon is-called by-the-site
loci ceteris tuciorem, munire curauit, quem quasi
of-the-place than-the-others safer to-fortify he-took-care which as-if
asilum constituit omnibus eciam incolis cum paruulis et
a-refuge he-established with-all also the-inhabitants with the-little-ones and
mulieribus et sua supellectili uniuersa super eum tuto abductis
women and their household-goods all upon it safely carried-off
et collocatis. Quibus rebus Griffinus confisus destinato sibi ab
and placed with-which things Griffin trusting to-the-sent to-him by
rege Arturo nuncio se nequaquam ad eius curiam respondit
king Arthur messenger himself by-no-means to his court answered
uenturum, unde Arturus nimium commotus, instructa militum
about-to-come whence Arthur exceedingly moved with-equipped of-knights
copia, cum Uriano rege Scocie contra eum ilico ascendit.
force with Urien king of-Scotland against him at-once went-up
Griffinus uero, cognito ipsius aduentu, omnes uiarum
Griffin but with-known his coming all of-the-roads
transitus quibus Kambria adibatur antea obstruxerat,
the-passages by-which Wales was-approached beforehand had-blocked
una sola relicta peruia, que hinc et inde imminencium
with-one only left passable which on-this-side and on-that of-overhanging

rupium tam artis arcebatur faucibus, uti non nisi unum
rocks so narrow was-confined by-jaws that not except one
post alium uiatorem caperet. Hanc quoque ipse Griffinus,
after another traveler it-would-take this also he-himself Griffin
armatorum stipatus cateruis, obsidens, regem Arturum inibi,
of-armed-men thronged by-companies besieging king Arthur there
nusquam alias reperto transeundi aditu, meare conantem
nowhere else with-found of-crossing approach to-pass trying
facili repellebat iniuria. Quo dum Arturus, nescius
with-easy repelled harm where while Arthur not-knowing
quid faceret, in transeundo moras necteret, Sadocus et
what he-should-do in crossing delays wove Sadoc and
Duneuuallus — illi duo proceres quos a Griffino pueros
Dunewall those two nobles whom from Griffin the-children
petisse superius ostendimus — collecta et conducta
to-have-sought above we-showed with-gathered and hired
ualida multitudine militum, inprouisi parte alia in illius
a-strong multitude of-knights unforeseen from-part another into his
irrupere prouinciam flammaque et cede nulli parcentes etati
burst province and-with-flame and slaughter to-no sparing age
quoquouersus depopulabantur. Cuius rei Griffinus, percepto
everywhere laid-waste of-which thing Griffin with-perceived
nuncio, suis pereuntibus succursum ire contendens, uallem
the-news to-his perishing help to-go striving the-valley
quam obsederat incustoditam reliquit, aciemque contra
which he-had-besieged unguarded left and-the-battle-line against
duos prefatos proceres direxit. Sicque, libero Arturo patefacto
the-two aforesaid nobles directed and-so with-free for-Arthur laid-open
introitu, omnem statim illas Scilleas fauces traiecit exercitum,
entrance all at-once those Scyllaean jaws he-took-across the-army
Griffinumque insecutus in quodam o[p]pido preardua rupe
and-Griffin having-pursued in a-certain town on-a-very-steep rock

constructo obsedit, erectisque in circuitu aggeribus, inpugnare
built besieged and-with-raised in circuit ramparts to-attack
cepit. Fecerunt et ipsi machinas contra machinas, seque
began made also they engines against engines and-themselves
uiriliter propugnantes fortiter restiterunt. Horum extrinsecus
manfully defending strongly resisted of-these from-outside
iuges fiebant assultus; illi econtra cotidie subitos
continual were-made assaults those on-the-other-hand daily sudden
in eos moliebantur excursus. Modo telorum balistarumque
against them contrived sallies now of-darts and-of-ballistas
iactus eminus percrebrescere, modo congressiones militum
the-throws from-afar to-grow-thick now the-clashes of-knights
cominus uideres feruescere; modo distinctis aciebus
at-close-quarters you-would-see to-boil now with-distinct lines
dextrisque consertis in mutuam cedem aduerse irruebant
and-with-right-hands joined into mutual slaughter opposed rushed
caterue, resque maximo agebatur discrimine.
the-companies and-the-thing with-the-greatest was-done peril
At rex Arturus, loci posicione diligencius inspecta, que
but king Arthur of-the-place with-the-position more-diligently examined which
suimet natura eciam absque propugnatore ualde muniebatur
by-its-own nature even without defender very was-fortified
— una namque tantum ex parte, in ipso declui montis
one for only from side in the-very sloping of-the-mountain
latere, difficilime ascendebatur, tantaque erecta celsitudine,
flank with-greatest-difficulty it-was-climbed and-to-such raised height
ut uix ad ipsius culmen telorum iactus pertingeret —
that scarcely to its summit of-darts the-throw reached
perpendensque inclusorum excursibus municipii capiundi
and-weighing by-the-shut-in sallies of-the-town to-be-taken
dilacionem fieri, eos artius propensiusque expungnare
delay to-be-made them more-closely and-more-eagerly to-attack

statuit. Fossam igitur amplam et profundam ante ipsas ualuas
he-decided a-ditch therefore ample and deep before the-very gates
oppidi ducere precipit, ut et eorum refrenaret excursus
of-the-town to-draw he-orders that both their he-might-rein-in sallies
et, si uiribus non posset, uel eos fame ad dedicionem
and if by-force not he-could at-least them by-hunger to surrender
cogeret. Deinde per girum, silua succisa, aggeres
he-might-compel then through the-circuit with-the-wood cut-down ramparts
quam plurimi hinc et inde eriguntur, unde crebri iactus
very many on-this-side and on-that are-raised whence frequent throws
uoluebantur lapidum iaculacionesque agebantur missilium. Ad
were-rolled of-stones and-hurlings were-made of-missiles at
hec Griffinus, obsidionem artatam totumque aduertens negocium
this Griffin the-siege tightened and-the-whole noticing business
in uirtute consistere, singulis quibusque eorum machinamentis
in valor to-consist to-each whatever of-their engines
contraria obiciebat, omni elaborans conamine, ut nequaquam
contrary-things he-opposed with-all laboring effort that by-no-means
ascribi ualeret inercie, si sese quoquomodo deuinci
to-be-ascribed it-could to-sloth if himself in-any-way to-be-defeated
contigisset. Ratum tamen habebat, se nullius uiribus nisi
it-should-happen settled yet he-held himself of-no-one by-strength except
sola fame submittendum. Quod et ita prouenit; toto
by-hunger alone to-be-subjected which also so came-about for-the-whole
namque triennio semper hostibus inuincibilis restitit, donec
for three-years always to-the-enemies invincible he-resisted until
uictrix uincencium ei nimia fames ingruit, que citius
the-victress of-the-conquering on-him excessive hunger pressed which more-quickly
omni robore mentes robustorum flectere et ad dedicionem
than-all strength the-minds of-the-strong to-bend and to surrender
solet compellere. Quid ultra? Famis peste ingruente
is-wont to-compel what further of-hunger with-the-plague pressing

Griffinus conpulsus se in regis Arturi misericordia dedidit.
Griffin compelled himself to of-king Arthur the-mercy surrendered
Arturus autem se de eo misericordiam habiturum negauit,
Arthur moreover himself about him mercy about-to-have denied
nisi suorum parium iudicio procerum. Jussu igitur
except of-his peers by-the-judgment of-the-nobles by-the-order therefore
regis Arturi proceres ad iudicium exeunt, quorum censura eum
of-king Arthur the-nobles to judgment go-out whose censure him
capitali addixit sentencie. Iniustum namque omnibus uidebatur,
to-capital assigned sentence unjust for to-all it-seemed
illum diucius uiuere, quem tantum facinus in fratrem
him longer to-live whom so-great a-crime against (his)-brother
et nepotes constabat commisisse. Data itaque sentencia,
and nephews it-was-agreed to-have-committed with-given and-so sentence
deo eius ultore nequicie, Griffinus capite plectitur.
with-God of-his the-avenger wickedness Griffin with-the-head is-punished
Postquam igitur Griffinus merita exsoluit supplicia, uniuerse
after therefore Griffin the-deserved paid punishments of-all
primatus Kambrie, rege Arturo annuente, Meriadoci cessit
the-primacy of-Wales with-king Arthur assenting of-Meriadoc yielded
dominio. Sed ipse, ut probus iuuenis, maioris honoris
to-the-lordship but he as an-upright youth of-greater honor
apprecians se in florenti etate probitatibus exercere
esteeming himself in flourishing age in-prowesses to-exercise
miliciamque expertum ire quam domi residens desidia
and-knighthood to-try to-go than at-home sitting in-sloth
torpescere, suum socerum Urianum, regem Scocie, conuenit,
to-grow-torpid his father-in-law Urien king of-Scotland met
et, quid apud se deliberarat innotescens, omnem Kambrie
and what with himself he-had-deliberated making-known all of-Wales
prouinciam eius tu[i]cioni commisit — tali condicione
the-province his to-the-protection entrusted on-such condition

inter se sanctita, ut quamdiu experiunde ipse uoluisset
between them sanctioned that as-long-as of-testing he wished
uacare milicie, tam diu sub eius tutela regnum Kambrie
to-be-free for-knighthood so long under his guardianship the-kingdom of-Wales
consisteret, ubi autem in pace reuerteretur, ut paterno
should-stand when moreover in peace he-returned that by-paternal
iure sibi debitum, ad suum, si sibi placeret, rediret
right to-him owed to his if to-him it-pleased he-might-return
imperium. Nondum tamen quam terram peteret deliberacione
command not-yet yet what land he-should-seek with-deliberation
habita, interim in curia regis Arturi perhendinabat, donec
had meanwhile in the-court of-king Arthur he-stayed until
disposuisset, quo ad propositum opus tenderet.
he-had-arranged whither to the-proposed work he-should-make-his-way
Rex autem Arturus per idem tempus apud urbem
king moreover Arthur through the-same time at the-city
liber parumper a bellorum inquietudinibus morabatur.
free for-a-little from of-wars the-disturbances stayed
Cui semper euenire solebat, ut, quociens eum aliquamdiu
to-whom always to-happen it-was-wont that as-often-as him for-some-time
aliquorsum perhendinare contigisset, semper tociens alicuius
somewhere to-stay it-happened always so-often of-some
magni negocii occurrebat euentus. Quod et tunc accidit.
great business occurred the-event which also then happened
Miles enim quidam, Niger Miles de Nigro Saltu dictus, ad
a-knight for a-certain the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade called to
eius curiam aduenit, Nigrum Saltum suum esse calumpnians,
his court came the-Black Glade his to-be claiming
nulliusque nisi sui illum debere subiacere dominio astipulans,
and-of-no-one but his it to-be-bound to-lie-under lordship affirming
quem rex Arturus ut maioris potestatis sibi nitebatur
which the-king Arthur as of-greater power from-him strove

auferre. Econtra rex respondebat predictum Nigrum
to-take-away on-the-other-hand the-king answered the-aforesaid Black
Saltum sui iuris dumtaxat existere, id sibi assumens
Glade of-his right only to-exist that for-himself taking
in argumentum, quod genitor suus, rex Uterpendragon,
into argument that father his king Uther-Pendragon
duos diuersi generis in eodem saltu quondam nigros apros
two of-different kind in the-same glade once black boars
siluestres posuerit, ex quibus omnis grex porcorum qui
woodland had-placed from which all the-herd of-swine which
in illo habebatur processerit. Ad hec Nigri Militis de
in that was-had proceeded to this of-the-Black Knight of
Nigro Saltu erat responsum, quod, licet minime prefatos
the-Black Glade was the-answer that although not-at-all the-aforesaid
nigros apros illius recognosceret, se tamen eorum eo
black boars his he-acknowledged himself yet of-them on-this
pacto libenter liberam ei concessurum capturam, quo
condition gladly free to-him about-to-grant the-capture that
Nigri Saltus possessione et dominio sibi licite uti
of-the-Black Glade the-possession and lordship for-himself lawfully to-use
liceret. "Verumptamen," ait "O rex, si ex rerum
it-might-be-allowed nevertheless he-says O king if from of-things
euentu huius controuersie consistat probacio, mihi nempe
the-outcome of-this controversy should-consist the-proof to-me surely
censura iusticie pocius assentire uidebitur, qui et ex
the-censure of-justice rather to-assent will-seem who both from
ipsius Nigri Saltus effectu auita suffundar nigredine et
of-the-very Black Glade the-effect ancestral am-suffused with-blackness and
Niger Miles de Nigro Saltu ex ipsius Nigri Saltus mihi
the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade from of-the-very Black Glade to-me
nomen diriuetur nomine." Hinc igitur inter eos causarum
the-name is-derived from-the-name hence therefore between them of-causes

discerpsiones et controuersiarum oriuntur litigia. At, ubi
wranglings and of-controversies arise suits but when
discerptantibus finis esse non potuit, isto in calumpnia
to-the-disputers an-end to-be not could this in the-claim
procaciter instante, rege quoque e diuerso illam
boldly pressing with-the-king also from opposite it
procacius infirmare nitente, tandem res parium suorum
more-boldly to-weaken striving at-last the-matter of-peers his
procerum iudicio examinanda committitur, ut, quod illi
of-the-nobles to-the-judgment to-be-examined is-committed that what they
inter regem et suum militem, equitate dictante, decreuissent,
between the-king and his knight with-equity dictating should-have-decreed
dictata equitas utrumque sequi compelleret. Verum Niger
the-dictated equity each to-follow should-compel but the-Black
Miles de Nigro Saltu, illos quod magis regis gracie
Knight of the-Black Glade them what more of-the-king favor
cederet quam quod ad suum profectum proueniret decreturos
would-yield than what to his advantage would-come about-to-decree
non dubitans, sanius et decencius esse duxit, id quod
not doubting sounder and more-fitting to-be thought-it that which
sui iuris calumpniabatur constare suis uiribus disracionare
of-his right he-claimed to-stand by-his strength to-prove
quam suspecto aliorum arbitrio committere, dum ratum et
than to-the-suspect of-others judgment to-commit since settled and
inmutabile sciebat futurum quicquid iudicii protulisset
unchangeable he-knew to-be-about-to-be whatever of-judgment had-brought-forth
examen. Ergo coram omni concilio medius prosiliit et
the-inquiry therefore before all the-council into-the-middle he-leapt and
“Quia,” ait “O rex, te mihi ex aduerso huic cause
because he-says O king you to-me from opposite to-this cause
patrocinari conspicio, istorum me iudicio committere
to-be-patron I-see of-these me to-the-judgment to-commit

non audeo, quos procul dubio quod tibi pocius quam
not I-dare whom without doubt what to-you rather than
mihi succedat decreturos agnosco. Unde, quia preiudicium
to-me may-succeed about-to-decree I-recognize whence because prejudice
incurrere pertimesco, id quod calumpnior me propriis uiribus
to-incur I-fear that which I-claim me by-my-own strength
contra xlta e tuis quos uolueris disracionatum offero, ut
against forty from your whom you-wish proved I-offer that
scilicet hiis singulis xl diebus unum qui agat duellum
namely on-these single forty days one who may-wage the-duel
aduersum me ad Nigrum Saltum dirigas. Quibus si preualere
against me to the-Black Glade you-direct over-whom if to-prevail
potuero, simul et in causa preualeam; si uero contingat
I-shall-be-able together also in the-cause I-may-prevail if but it-happen
succumbere una et mea causa succumbat." Placuit regi et
to-succumb at-once also my cause may-succumb it-pleased the-king and
omnibus quod dixerat, omniumque in hoc conuenit assensus
all what he-had-said and-of-all in this came-together the-assent
non parum admirancium eum aduersus tot et tam fortes
not a-little marveling him against so-many and so strong
regis Arturi campigenas solum audere inire conflictum. Erat
of-king Arthur champions alone to-dare to-enter conflict was
autem Niger Miles de Nigro Saltu iuuenis quidem sed miles
moreover the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade young indeed but a-knight
peroptimus qui nullius umquam formidauerat congressum.
very-excellent who of-no-one ever had-feared the-encounter

Every knight sent is beaten. With three days left Arthur tells Kay to go, Gawain after him, and himself last. Meriadoc, knighted by Kay three years before, begs to go in Kay's place, rides to the ford of the Black Glade, and unhorses the Black Knight, who yields his sword, asks his name and lineage, and swears to serve him as his companion.

Indictum igitur duellum, loco et tempore statuto, iniciatur,
the-proclaimed therefore duel in-the-place and time appointed is-begun
ad quod agendum singulis diebus unus a rege Arturo miles
for which to-be-waged on-single days one by the-king Arthur knight
dirigitur. Sed omnes, uno omine excepti, omnes a Nigro
is-sent but all with-one omen received all by the-Black
Milite de Nigro Saltu prostrati, deuicti et sub nomine
Knight of the-Black Glade laid-low conquered and under the-name
captiui ad eum remissi sunt. Iamque ceteris sinistro fato
of-captive to him sent-back were and-now with-the-others by-sinister fate
transcursis, e quadragenario numero tres tantummodo dies
passed from the-forty number three only days
restabant, cum rex Arturus, inmodice afflictus, tum pudore,
remained when king Arthur immoderately afflicted both by-shame
suos ualidiores equites ab uno deuinci, tum eciam dampno
his stronger horsemen by one to-be-conquered and also by-the-loss
quod sibi ea de causa perpendebat oriri, Kaium dapiferum
which to-himself that from cause he-weighed to-arise Kay steward
suum aduocauit, quem et sic allocutus est: "Intollerabili michi
his summoned whom also thus addressed he-has by-unbearable to-me
mens merore premitur nullaque per diuersa cogitacionum
mind grief is-pressed and-no through the-various of-thoughts
distracta quiete perfruitur, cui nunquam quicquam quam
drawn-apart rest enjoys to-which never anything than

in presenti obrepsit pudibundius. Ecce namque tot mei
in the-present has-crept-up more-shameful behold for so-many of-mine
famosos campigenas quos bello misimus, pro dolor! ab uno
famous champions whom to-war we-have-sent for grief by one
subigi, tot uiros robustos ab uno pudet eneruari,
to-be-subdued so-many men sturdy by one it-shames to-be-unnerved
in quorum singulis, quia meam causam agere noscuntur,
in of-whom each because my cause to-plead they-are-known
tociens me uinci confundor, quociens ipsi ab aduersario
so-often me to-be-conquered I-am-confounded as-often-as they by the-adversary
expungnantur. Et de quo celebre hactenus ubique ferebatur,
are-overcome and about whom famously hitherto everywhere it-was-said
quempiam meorum militum mille aliis preualere solere,
anyone of-my of-knights a-thousand others to-prevail to-be-wont
nunc e conuerso, uerso fortune folio, mille eorum non
now from the-reverse turned of-fortune the-leaf a-thousand of-them not
possunt uni resistere. Igitur quia strenuiores mei exercitus
can one to-resist therefore because the-more-vigorous of-my army
hosti inerter loco cesserunt et dies xlmus duobus
to-the-enemy sluggishly ground have-yielded and the-day fortieth with-two
dumtaxat interpositis instat diebus, uiuaci utendum est
only intervening presses days a-lively to-be-used is
consilio, ut uel saltem hiis iij diebus nostri simul pudoris
counsel that at least in-these three days of-our at-once shame
et dampni resarciatur cumulus. Unde necesse censui te
and loss be-repaired the-heap whence necessary I-have-judged you
in crastinum ad initum debere proficisci duellum, quem
on the-morrow to the-entered to-be-bound to-set-out duel whom
uirtute et industria ceteris sepius ualenciorem expertus
in-valor and industry than-the-others more-often stronger tested
sum et cuius est officium, aliis deficientibus, pro me
I-have and whose is the-office with-others failing for me

semper laboris subire dispendium commilitonibusque uexatis
always of-labor to-undergo the-cost and-to-comrades harassed
et abactis auxilii conferre subsidium. Quod si te eciam
and driven-off of-help to-bring the-aid that if you also
uictrix manus hostilis eidem quo ceteros inuoluerit
the-victorious hand hostile in-the-same as the-others will-have-entangled
discrimini, meus profecto nepos Waluuanius contra eum
peril my surely nephew Gawain against him
conflictum die sorcietur sequenti. Illum quoque si
conflict on-the-day will-draw following him also if
isdem infortunii casus merserit, ipsemet die extrema ad
the-same of-misfortune chance will-have-sunk I-myself on-the-day last to
singulare illius certamen progrediar, quo aut totum cum
the-single his contest I-shall-advance whereby either all with
dedecore perdam seu certe mei esse dominii Nigrum Saltum
disgrace I-shall-lose or surely of-my to-be lordship the-Black Glade
uirtuose decernam. Vade ergo et ut summo sis presto
valiantly I-shall-decide go therefore and that at-the-highest you-be ready
diluculo sedulus preuide." Kaius: "Tanta oracionis prolixitate
dawn diligently provide Kay of-such of-speech prolixity
opus non erat tue mentis scire placitum michi; noueris
need not there-was your mind to-know the-pleasure for-me you-may-know
ratum haberi preceptum. Presto ero et rem quo
settled to-be-held the-command ready I-shall-be and the-matter as
melius potero perficere curabo." Perrexit igitur atque
best I-shall-be-able to-accomplish I-shall-take-care he-went therefore and
secretius cum amicis secedens, quam lepide, quam generose,
more-secretly with friends withdrawing how elegantly how generously
quamque uiriliter rem gereret cum eis deliberabat.
and-how manfully the-thing he-should-manage with them he-deliberated

Hoc ubi Meriadocus comperit, qui iam ante triennium
this when Meriadoc learned who already before three-years
ab eodem Kaio ad militarem nobiliter fuerat promotus
by the-same Kay to the-military nobly had-been promoted
ordinem, ad eum accessit atque an uerum esset quod
order to him approached and whether true it-was what
de eo audierat inquisiuit. Quo respondente uerum, cepit
about him he-had-heard asked with-him answering true began
Meriadocus eum rogare, ut se sui loco duellum cum
Meriadoc him to-ask that him of-him in-the-place the-duel with
Nigro Milite de Nigro Saltu sineret committere, dicens
the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade he-would-allow to-join saying
indecens nimis esse et sue glorie minime expedire, ut
unfitting too-much to-be and to-his glory not-at-all to-help that
cum illo confligeret a quo tot probos patebat deuictos;
with him he-should-clash by whom so-many good-men it-was-plain conquered
quia qui maioris uirtutis hactenus ceteris habitus fuerat
because who of-greater valor hitherto than-the-others held had-been
si et ipse uictus sortem incurrisset uictorum, maiori
if also he conquered the-lot should-have-incurred of-the-conquered to-greater
nempe quam alii exponeretur obprobrio, quippe dum ad
surely than the-others would-be-exposed reproach since while for
hoc eligebatur ut omnes alios ulcisceretur. De se uero si
this he-was-chosen that all others he-might-avenge about himself but if
contigisset deuinci, nec sermonem asserebat habendum; si
it-happened to-be-conquered not a-word he-asserted to-be-had if
autem triumphum de tociens triumphante potuisset nancisci,
but triumph over one-so-often triumphing he-could to-obtain
non solum sibimet sed eciam illi laudis fauorem adquireret,
not only for-himself but also for-him of-praise the-favor he-would-acquire
quia uirtus et probitas militis est honor et gloria
because the-valor and probity of-a-knight is the-honor and glory

principis. Kaius autem ad hec illius iuuente inualitudinem
of-the-prince Kay moreover to these-things of-his youth the-weakness
sibique inexpertam causans haberi miliciam, illum respondit
and-to-him untried pleading to-be-held knighthood him answered
qui se sue commisit fidei sui causa tanto nolle
who himself to-his had-entrusted faith his-own on-account to-so-great to-be-unwilling
destinari periculo, quantum ex bellorum solet prouenire
to-be-assigned peril as-much-as from of-wars is-wont to-come
euentu uel dispendio. Demum tamen, prefatis atque
by-the-outcome or by-the-loss at-last yet by-the-aforesaid and
multis aliis racionibus flexus, ei quod petebat de eius
many other reasons bent to-him what he-asked about his
non diffidens uirtute concessit, plurimum eum hortatus, ut
not distrusting valor granted greatly him having-urged that
sic studeret exequi negocium, quatenus non uituperium
so he-should-strive to-carry-out the-business so-that not reproach
sed laudis utrique adipisci mererentur brauium.
but of-praise for-both to-obtain they-might-deserve the-prize
Meriadocus igitur sub ipso diei crepusculo, armis, ut
Meriadoc therefore under the-very of-the-day twilight with-arms as
decebat, instructus, sonipedem ascendit atque ad Nigrum
befitted equipped the-steed mounted and to the-Black
Saltum, moderaciori tamen gressu, ne equ[u]s anelus
Glade with-more-moderate yet pace lest the-horse panting
fatisceret, contendit. Ambiebat autem ipsum Nigrum
should-grow-weary hastened surrounded moreover the-very Black
Saltum fluuius latus et profundus, qui, quasi limes
Glade a-river broad and deep which as-if a-boundary
et diuisio, terram regis Arturi ab ipso saltu dirimebat.
and division the-land of-king Arthur from the-very glade separated
Ad quem Meriadocus perueniens equo descendit,
to which Meriadoc arriving from-(his)-horse dismounted

faleras deposuit, se in recenti herba parumper refrigerare
the-trappings laid-down itself in fresh grass for-a-little to-cool
et spaciari equum uolutando permisit. Deinde, crine
and to-walk-about the-horse by-rolling allowed then with-hair
composito, singulisque membris leui manu comptis et
arranged and-every limb with-light hand groomed and
detersis, iterum cornipedem stratum ascendit. Vado autem
wiped again the-horse saddled mounted with-the-ford moreover
quo transiturus erat reperto, bucina, sicut alii antea
by-which about-to-cross he-was found on-the-trumpet as others before
fecerant, insonuit, quo Niger Miles de Nigro Saltu militem
had-done he-sounded whereby the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade a-knight
qui secum congrederetur aduenisse cognosceret. Niger autem
who with-him might-clash to-have-come might-know the-Black moreover
Miles de Nigro Saltu, sonitu percepto bucine, arma
Knight of the-Black Glade with-the-sound perceived of-the-trumpet (his)-arms
statim corripuit, ac, equo ascenso, se cursu precipiti
at-once seized and with-horse mounted himself in-course headlong
ei obuium dedit, quique in medio ipsius uadi transitu
to-him to-meet gave and-who in the-middle of-the-very ford crossing
ei occurrens cum illo congressus est. At Meriadocus, equum
him meeting with him clashed has but Meriadoc (his)-horse
cursu, lanceam inpulsu, caucius dirigens, splendidum
in-the-course (his)-lance in-the-thrust more-cautiously directing the-splendid
ei ferrum sub ore stomachi inflixit, et, cum ipso
on-him iron under the-mouth of-the-stomach inflicted and with the-very
ictu dextram fortiter impingens ac in latus artificiose
blow (his)-right-hand strongly driving and into the-side skillfully
retorquens ipsum inpulsum prona petere compulit. Moxque
twisting him thrust-back headlong to-seek compelled and-soon
lanceam scuto infixam deserens, stricto mucrone, in eum
the-lance in-the-shield fixed abandoning with-drawn sword on him

in decliuo uno pede scansili retento pendentem irruit;
on the-slope by-one foot in-the-stirrup held hanging rushed
nasumque cassidis leua arripiens quasi ei caput
and-the-nose-piece of-the-helmet with-(his)-left seizing as-if from-him the-head
amputaturus institit. Niger uero Miles de Nigro Saltu,
about-to-cut-off pressed the-Black but Knight of the-Black Glade
supplices ad eum manus protendens, ut secum paucis,
suppliant to him hands stretching-out that with-him in-few-words
pace interposita, colloqui liceret flagitare cepit.
with-peace interposed to-converse it-might-be-allowed to-demand began
Cuius precibus cedens Meriadocus dextram cohibuit et
whose to-the-prayers yielding Meriadoc (his)-right-hand restrained and
quid dicere uellet annuit. Qui super equum erectus "Multas
what to-say he-wished assented who upon (his)-horse raised many
cum multis" ait "congressiones inij, et nunquam
with many he-says encounters I-have-entered and never
me forc[i]orem nec eciam mei parem usque hodie reperire
me stronger nor even of-me the-equal up-to today to-find
ualui. Tui autem impulsus impetu omnis me protinus
I-have-been-able of-your but struck by-the-onset all me at-once
pristina uirtus reliquit, nec alterius modi mihi tua est
former valor has-left nor of-other kind to-me your has-been
experta inpulsio, quam si celi et terre una adinuicem,
tested thrust than if of-heaven and of-earth together to-each-other
me medio existente, fieret collisio. Dic igitur mihi
me in-the-middle being should-be-made the-collision tell therefore to-me
quis sis, miles eggregie, cui procul dubio etas maturior
who you-are knight excellent to-whom without doubt age riper
incomparabilem uidetur spondere uirtutem, quem eciam nunc
incomparable seems to-promise valor whom even now
inberbem tante fortitudinis comitatur effectus." Meriadocus:
beardless of-such strength accompanies the-effect Meriadoc

"Mei generis originem nunc superfluo duco retexere;
of-my race the-origin now superfluous I-reckon to-unfold
pandam quod ad presens spectat negocium, me, militem
I-shall-disclose what to the-present looks business me a-knight
regis Arturi, hunc Nigrum Saltum contra te disracionatum
of-king Arthur this Black Glade against you to-prove
esse legatum." Cui ille: "Te ipsius militem equidem
to-have-been sent to-whom he you of-him a-knight indeed
sum patenter expertus teque Nigrum Saltum aduersum me
I-have plainly tested and-you the-Black Glade against me
decreuisse prorsus fateor." Gladiumque uagina extrahens
to-have-decided altogether I-confess and-(his)-sword from-the-scabbard drawing
ei ab cuspide in signum uictorie tradidit. "Obsecro tamen,"
to-him by the-point in sign of-victory handed I-beseech yet
subiunxit, "ut tue propaginis seriem mihi notifices,
he-added that of-your stock the-line to-me you-make-known
quia tante fortitudinis tanteque pulcritudinis indolem non
because of-such strength and-of-such beauty a-nature not
reor ex humili plebe descendisse." Tunc Meriadocus,
I-think from humble people to-have-descended then Meriadoc
cuncta que pretaxauimus replicans, omnium suorum
all which we-have-touched-on-above unfolding of-all his
lineam generacionis natalium, prospera et aduersa que
the-line of-descent of-(his)-birth the-prosperous and adverse-things which
pertulerat, sueque mentis ad milicie exercicium propositum,
he-had-borne and-of-his mind for of-knighthood the-exercise the-purpose
singillatim patefecit. Quibus auditis, "Iuste," ait Niger Miles
one-by-one disclosed with-which heard justly says the-Black Knight
de Nigro Saltu "tanto oriundus stemmate, tanta animi
of the-Black Glade from-such sprung stock in-such of-mind
uirtute, corporisque precellis uigore. Nec me pudet aliis
valor and-of-body you-excel vigor nor me it-shames to-others

semper inuincibilem a tali deuinci qualem te iam signis
always invincible by such to-be-conquered as you already by-signs
patentibus euidenter comprobaui. Insuper et me quicquid
plain evidently I-have-proved besides also me whatever
mei est tui ex nunc dicioni submitto, meque, quocumque
of-mine is your from now to-the-sway I-submit and-myself wherever
perrexeris, ad uniuersa que peragere uolueris inseperabilem
you-go to all-things which to-accomplish you-shall-wish inseparable
tibi spondeo futurum comitem, quo nec fideliorem
to-you I-promise to-be-about-to-be a-companion than-whom neither more-faithful
nec magis necessarium te reperturum estimo. Pro insipiente
nor more needful you about-to-find I-reckon for a-fool
reputabitur qui alteri nostrum, altero presente, aliquid
will-be-reckoned who on-one of-us with-the-other present anything
mali moliri uoluerit." Hec dicens, ceruicem ad Meriadoci
of-evil to-contrive will-wish these-things saying (his)-neck to of-Meriadoc
genua suppliciter flexit seque ipsius imperio et dicioni
the-knees suppliantly he-bent and-himself his to-the-command and sway
subdidit. Meriadocus autem, quod sibi a tanto uiro
subjected Meriadoc moreover what to-him by so-great a-man
offerebatur indignum renuere iudicans, ipsius dedicionem
was-offered unworthy to-refuse judging his surrender
cum subieccione gratuito suscepit animo. Deinde inuicem
with subjection with-grateful received mind then mutually
amplexi simul ad curiam regis Arturi properabant,
having-embraced together to the-court of-king Arthur hastened
accepta ab eo fide, interposita cum securitate fidelitate,
with-received from him faith interposed with security with-fealty
ut quoad uiueret suo in obsequio fidelis persisteret.
that as-long-as he-lived his in service faithful he-would-persist

Meriadoc brings the Black Knight to the court and asks that his glade be restored to him; Arthur, at first refusing, yields to his counselors. Meriadoc beats in turn the Rose Knight and the White Knight of their glades, gives them back their land, and takes them as companions. Leaving Wales to Urien, he sets out with the three for the emperor of Germany, at war with Gundebald, king of the land from which no one returns, who has carried off the emperor's daughter; the emperor makes him captain of his mercenaries.

Omnibus autem xl diebus quibus contra Nigrum Militem de
on-all moreover forty days which against the-Black Knight of
Nigro Saltu duellum agebatur nunquam rex Arturus cibum
the-Black Glade the-duel was-waged never king Arthur food
sumere consueuerat, donec qui missus fuerat remeasset.
to-take had-been-accustomed until he-who sent had-been returned
Illo quoque die de Meriadoco quam de aliis magis
on-that also day about Meriadoc than about the-others more
sollicitus et ipse inpastus remansit et nullum e suis
anxious both he-himself unfed remained and none of his
cibari permisit, quousque cognosceret cuius fortune euentus
to-be-fed allowed until he-should-know of-what fortune the-outcome
incurrisset. Moram autem Meriadoco diucius nectente, iussit
he-had-incurred delay moreover with-Meriadoc longer weaving ordered
quendam rex Arturus summam arcem ascendere, si quoquam
a-certain-man king Arthur the-highest citadel to-climb if anywhere
eum repedantem aduerteret. Speculator uero, turri
him returning he-might-notice the-watchman but with-the-tower
conscensa oculisque contra uiam que ad Nigrum Saltum
climbed and-with-eyes toward the-road which to the-Black Glade
ducebat erectis, "Quendam" exclamauit "aduenientem longius
led raised someone he-cried coming farther-off

intueor, quem incessus moderacior et splendor armorum
I-see whom the-gait more-moderate and the-splendor of-the-arms
Meriadocum testantur. Tri[p]licem enim loricam habebat
Meriadoc attest triple for mail he-had
auream, scutum, interlucentibus gemmis, aureis totum
golden a-shield with-gleaming-between gems with-golden wholly
obductum laminis, in cuius equi falleris nil nisi et
covered plates in whose of-the-horse the-trappings nothing except both
pallor electri et fulua auri radiabat species. Sed et
the-pallor of-electrum and the-tawny of-gold shone the-appearance but also
alium" ait "a dextra equitem nige[r]rimis armis secum
another he-says on the-right a-horseman with-blackest arms with-himself
adducit, quem, quantum arma et gestus indicant, Nigrum
he-brings whom as-far-as arms and bearing indicate the-Black
Militem de Nigro Saltu esse prenuncio."
Knight of the-Black Glade to-be I-announce
Rex autem hoc pre admiracione credere non potuit, sed et
the-king moreover this for wonder to-believe not could but also
friuolum esse asserens quod annunciabat dicebat tam probum
frivolous to-be asserting what he-announced he-said so good
et exercitatum militem ab inberbi adolescente inpossibile fore
and practiced a-knight by a-beardless youth impossible to-be
deuinci. Illis autem inde sermocinantibus et diuersa
to-be-conquered with-them moreover thence conversing and different-things
proferentibus, Meriadocus cum Nigro Milite de Nigro Saltu,
uttering Meriadoc with the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade
quem manu ducebat, regiam dignus omnibus spectaculo
whom by-hand he-led the-palace worthy for-all a-spectacle
factus subiit ac ante regem et eius primates progrediens
made entered and before the-king and his chief-men advancing
"Tuam" ait, "O rex, causam decreui; Nigrum Saltum,
your he-says O king cause I-have-decided the-Black Glade

unde causa agebatur, tibi adquisiui; et, si inde teneris
whence the-cause was-pleaded for-you I-have-acquired and if thence you-are-held
dubius, ecce Nigrum Militem de Nigro Saltu, qui illum
doubtful behold the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade who it
sui calumpniabatur dominij, propriis tibi uiribus subactum
of-his claimed lordship by-my-own to-you strength subdued
adduco. Nunc ergo premia que uictori spopondisti exsolue,
I-bring now therefore the-rewards which to-the-victor you-promised pay
ne et ego remuneracionis immunis et tu beneficii uidearis
lest both I of-remuneration devoid and you of-the-benefit you-seem
ingratus." Huiusmodi enim donum rex Arturus singulis
ungrateful of-this-kind for a-gift the-king Arthur to-each
ad duellum proficiscentibus proposuerat, ut, si quis Nigrum
to the-duel setting-out had-proposed that if anyone the-Black
Militem de Nigro Saltu expungnasset, quicquid rediens ab
Knight of the-Black Glade had-overcome whatever returning from
eo peteret, impetraret. Cui rex "Splendido" respondit
him he-asked he-should-obtain to-whom the-king of-splendid answered
"et opulento dignus censeris premio; pete quod placuerit,
and rich worthy you-are-reckoned reward ask what will-please
feres procul dubio quicquid nostra sublimitas tua
you-will-carry-off without doubt whatever our highness of-your
uirtute dignum perpenderit." Meriadocus "Multos tuorum"
valor worthy will-have-weighed Meriadoc many of-yours
ait "huius rei examinacione uexasti, que mei est
he-says of-this matter by-the-examination you-have-harassed which by-my has-been
terminata obsequio. Ecce, habes quod optasti, possides
ended service behold you-have what you-wished you-possess
quod calumpniabaris, decreuisti unde certabas. Age ergo
what you-claimed you-have-decided whence you-contended act therefore
liberaliter, ut liberalem decet in liberalem uirum, ut mei
generously as the-generous befits toward a-generous man that my

gracia Nigri Saltus illi libera restituatur possessio,
for-the-sake of-the-Black Glade to-him the-free be-restored possession
quam se mei causa desiderasse conqueritur. In hoc enim
which himself my for-the-sake to-have-lost he-complains in this for
tota mee summa peticionis consistit, ne suo iure nobilem
whole of-my the-sum of-request consists lest of-his right a-noble
uirum contingat destitui, cuius probitas pocius exigit
man it-happen to-be-deprived whose probity rather demands
augeri quam minui." Arturus "Licet" ait "pro
to-be-increased than to-be-diminished Arthur although he-says according-to
uoto tibi petenda que placeret proposuimus, Nigri Saltus
wish for-you to-be-asked what should-please we-proposed of-the-Black Glade
tamen instanciam nos fecisse meminimus; quo excepto,
yet the-exception we to-have-made remember with-which excepted
quicquid aliud animo sederit gratanter annuimus. Ridiculo
whatever else in-mind has-settled gladly we-grant to-ridicule
quippe et mentis ascriberetur inconstancie, si tam leuis
indeed and of-mind it-would-be-ascribed to-inconstancy if of-so slight
estimem precij, in cuius adquisicione adeo desudaui. Te
I-should-reckon price in whose acquisition so-much I-have-sweated you
ergo aliunde remunerari expete, quia Nigro Saltu
therefore from-elsewhere to-be-rewarded seek because with-the-Black Glade
uestrum neutrum mihi exstat gratum donare." Considentes
of-you neither to-me is pleasing to-give sitting-together
autem illi ipsius familiares et consiliarij proceres et primi
moreover those his intimates and counselors nobles and first-men
palacij eum hortabantur, ne uirum bene de se meritum
of-the-palace him urged lest a-man well of him deserving
promisso et debito cassaret premio; quod nec illius
of-the-promised and due he-should-cheat reward which neither his
probitatem nec ipsiusmet dignitatem decebat, "Et si quod
prowess nor his-own dignity befitted and if what

maius est" aiebant "a te expeteret, annuere debueras,
greater is they-said from you he-should-seek to-grant you-ought-to-have
presertim dum hoc exposcit, quod propriis uiribus adquisiuit.
especially when this he-demands which by-his-own strength he-has-acquired
Justum namque est, ut inde remuneracionis sumat stipendia,
just for it-is that thence of-remuneration he-take the-wages
in cuius adquisicione laboris est perpessus dispendia."
in whose acquisition of-labor he-has endured the-costs
Quorum tandem rex Arturus credens consilio Nigrum Saltum
whose at-last king Arthur trusting to-the-counsel the-Black Glade
Meriadoco ad quidlibet uellet — datum scilicet uel possessum
to-Meriadoc for whatever he-wished given namely or possessed
— iure concessit perpetuo, quem ipse Meriadocus statim
by-right granted perpetual which he-himself Meriadoc at-once
in regis presencia Nigro Militi de Nigro Saltu liberum
in of-the-king presence to-the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade free
et quietum restituit, salua subieccione et fidelitate, quam
and quiet restored saving the-subjection and fealty which
Nigrum Militem de Nigro Saltu sibi fecisse retulimus.
the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade to-himself to-have-made we-have-related
Duello igitur contra Nigrum Militem de Nigro Saltu pro
with-the-duel therefore against the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade for
ipso Nigro Saltu completo, die sequenti Roseus Miles
the-very Black Glade completed on-the-day following the-Rose Knight
de Roseo Saltu adest, qui haud impari calumpnia in
of the-Rose Glade is-present who with-not unequal claim against
regem inuectus Arturum se ab eo conquerebatur auito
the-king having-inveighed Arthur himself by him complained of-ancestral
fundo, Roseo uidelicet Saltu, destitui. Super quo dum inter
estate of-the-Rose namely Glade to-be-deprived over which while between
eos uehemens uerborum accio, racione postposita, nil
them vehement of-words the-pleading with-reason set-aside nothing

equitatis censeret, demum Roseus Miles de Roseo Saltu suam
of-equity judged at-last the-Rose Knight of the-Rose Glade his
causam duelli examini contra quemlibet e regis militibus
cause of-the-duel to-the-test against anyone from of-the-king the-knights
commisit, Rosei Saltus libera possessione concessa cui
committed of-the-Rose Glade the-free possession granted to-whom
prouenisset uictoria. Mittitur et contra hunc Meriadocus, illius
should-have-come the-victory is-sent also against this-one Meriadoc his
congressum ceteris formidantibus; qui, non minori in istum
encounter with-the-others fearing who with-no less on this-one
quam in priorem usus uirtute, prostrauit, deuicit et cepit,
than on the-former using valor laid-low conquered and captured
sibique socium effectum et sue dicioni deditum ad regem
and-to-himself a-comrade made and to-his sway surrendered to the-king
deduxit Arturum. A quo in laboris remuneracionem, ut ipsemet
led Arthur by whom in of-labor remuneration as he-himself
postulauerat, Roseo Saltu Meriadocus donatus et ille quoque
had-asked with-the-Rose Glade Meriadoc presented and he also
Roseo Militi de Roseo Saltu quod ei surripuerat reddidit.
to-the-Rose Knight of the-Rose Glade what from-him he-had-taken-away restored
Huic Candidus Miles de Candido Saltu succedit, qui non
to-this-one the-White Knight of the-White Glade succeeds who with-not
dispari accione in ius ductus, discerptacionum controuersiis
unlike pleading into court led of-the-wranglings with-the-controversies
sibi non prospere cedentibus, singulare certamen proponit.
for-him not prosperously turning-out single combat proposes
Cum Meriadoco in uado fluminis Candidum Saltum
with Meriadoc in the-ford of-the-river the-White Glade
circumfluentis congreditur, a quo et deuincitur; singuli
flowing-around he-clashes by whom also he-is-conquered single
quippe saltus singulis amnibus ambiebantur, in quorum uadorum
indeed glades by-single rivers were-surrounded in whose fords

transitu semper ab eis est mutua facta congressio. Candidus
the-crossing always by them was mutual made encounter the-White
igitur Miles de Candido Saltu a Meriadoco deuictus sibi, sicut
therefore Knight of the-White Glade by Meriadoc conquered to-him as
alii, subicitur, in eius societate recipitur et quem amiserat
the-others is-subjected into his fellowship is-received and which he-had-lost
Candidum Saltum iterum, Meriadoco donante, assequitur.
the-White Glade again with-Meriadoc giving-it obtains
Meriadocus igitur, postquam hos tres sibi confederauit
Meriadoc therefore after these three to-himself he-allied
proceres, scilicet Nigrum Militem de Nigro Saltu, Roseum
nobles namely the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade the-Rose
Militem de Roseo Saltu, et Candidum Militem de Candido
Knight of the-Rose Glade and the-White Knight of the-White
Saltu, uiam quam animo prefixerat ad inquirendam et
Glade the-way which in-mind he-had-fixed for seeking and
exercendam miliciam accelerabat. Regni itaque Kambrie,
exercising knighthood he-hastened of-the-kingdom and-so of-Wales
ut pretaxauimus, suo socero Uriano, regi Scotie, tuenda
as we-touched-on-above to-his father-in-law Urien king of-Scotland to-be-protected
et disponenda negocia commisit, itineris tanti dispendio
and to-be-arranged the-affairs he-entrusted of-a-journey so-great for-the-expense
res necessarias accurauit, se sociosque, quomodo
the-things necessary he-prepared himself and-(his)-companions as
dicebat, armis, equis et preciosis indumentis instruxit et
it-befitted with-arms horses and precious garments equipped and
ad imperatorem Alemannie properare instituit. Missis namque
to the-emperor of-Germany to-hasten decided with-sent for
longe lateque nunciis, sciscitatus fuerat quenam terrarum regio
far and-wide messengers inquired he-had what of-the-lands region
bellorum subiaceret legibus, relatumque sibi fuerat inter
of-wars lay-under the-laws and-reported to-him it-had-been between

imperatorem Alemannie et Gundebaldum, regem terre ex
the-emperor of-Germany and Gundebald king of-the-land from
qua nemo reuertitur, maximas bellorum geri discordias;
which no-one returns the-greatest of-wars were-waged discords
Gundebaldus quippe, rex terre ex qua nemo reuertitur,
Gundebald indeed the-king of-the-land from which no-one returns
unicam filiam imperatoris uiolenter rapuerat nullaque condicione
the-only daughter of-the-emperor violently had-seized and-by-no condition
flecti potuit, ut eam patri suisque redderet natalibus.
to-be-bent could that her to-(her)-father and-to-her he-should-restore birthplace
Hoc seminarium discidii inter eos exstiterat et ad irarum
this seedbed of-discord between them had-stood-out and to of-angers
causas grauissimas bellorumque discrimina instimulauerat.
causes most-grievous and-of-wars the-perils had-goaded
Inuitabantque et conducebant a remotis terrarum recessibus
and-they-invited and hired from remote of-the-lands recesses
milites quoscunque magne probitatis audierant et crebros
knights whomever of-great prowess they-had-heard and frequent
excursus mutuasque congressiones omni pene die inuicem
sallies and-mutual encounters on-every almost day with-each-other
agebant. Fiebantque utrarumque parcium cedes innumerabiles,
they-made and-were-made of-both sides slaughters countless
desolaciones urbium, rapina rerum familiarum et quod
the-desolations of-cities the-plunder of-things of-households and what
hiis est grauius indiscreta captiuorum seruitus ciuium.
than-these is more-grievous the-indiscriminate of-captives slavery of-citizens
Inter que probitas et uirtus uniuscuiusque in propatulo
among which the-probity and valor of-each-one in the-open
facile habebatur et quos laudis decere[n]t premia, quosue
easily was-held and whom of-praise befitted the-rewards or-whom
uituperacionis manere[n]t opprobria, omnium patebat obtutibus.
of-blame awaited the-reproaches of-all lay-open to-the-gazes

Quibus rebus Meriadocus compertis, cunctis ordinatis et
with-which things Meriadoc learned with-all ordered and
dispositis, illo cum sociis iter arripuit, et, terra
arranged thither with (his)-companions the-way seized and by-land
marique multis traiectis dispendiis, ad imperatorem sanus et
and-by-sea with-many crossed costs to the-emperor sound and
incolumis cum omnibus peruenit. Imperator autem, postquam
unharmed with all arrived the-emperor moreover after
quis esset et cur ad se uenisset audiuit, eo quo
who he-was and why to himself he-had-come he-heard with-that which
decuit eum honore suscepit atque inter primos stipendiarios
befitted him honor received and among the-first mercenaries
sui exercitus eum constituit. Non multum post uero, dum
of-his army him set not much after but while
ad quelibet certamina singulosque congressus se probius
for any contests and-single encounters himself more-uprightly
et uirtuosius ceteris omnibus iugiter ageret, uniuersis
and more-valiantly than-the-others all continually he-conducted to-all
gregariis conducticiis et stipendiarijs militibus ab imperatore
common hired and mercenary knights by the-emperor
preficitur; quorum numerus pene usque ad xiij milia
he-is-set-over whose number almost all-the-way to thirteen thousand
recensebatur, Maiores quippe probitates ipse solus cum
was-counted greater indeed prowesses he alone with
suis sociis patrabat cotidie quam maxima pars imperialis
his companions accomplished daily than the-greatest part of-the-imperial
exercitus; unde non solum apud imperiales sed eciam apud
army whence not only among the-imperials but also with
regem Gundebaldum eius nomen celebre ferebatur.
king Gundebald his name famous was-borne

Saguntius, Gundebald's commander, raids the empire. Meriadoc divides his force in four, ambushes the raiders at a river, and drives them to slaughter and drowning. Pursuing the fleeing Saguntius into a vast wood haunted by phantoms, he sleeps with his men and finds the night strangely short; at dawn, in a plain where he had often hunted, rises a marble palace that was not there three weeks before, and boys invite him to dinner.

Quadam autem die prepeti cursu anelo equo nuncius ad
on-a-certain moreover day with-swift course with-panting horse a-messenger to
imperatorem uenit, referens Saguncium, principem milicie
the-emperor came reporting Saguntius the-prince of-the-army
regis Gundebaldi, suam terram cum ualida manu intrasse
of-king Gundebald his land with a-strong band to-have-entered
prouinciamque quoquouersus depredari. Imperator autem
and-the-province on-every-side to-plunder the-emperor moreover
accito confestim Meriadoco iussit cum suis cateruis
with-summoned at-once Meriadoc ordered with his companies
hostibus suum regnum depeculiantibus occurrere predamque
the-enemies his kingdom despoiling to-meet and-the-plunder
quam ceperant de manibus eorum excutere. Meriadocus
which they-had-taken from the-hands their to-shake-out Meriadoc
uero, nil moratus, milites in iiiior turmas diuisit,
but nothing having-delayed the-knights into four troops divided
quarum unam secum retinuit, tribus autem reliquis suos
of-which one with-himself he-kept over-the-three moreover remaining his
tres socios prefecit. Fines autem illius prouincie quidam
three companions he-set the-borders moreover of-that province a-certain
fluuius profundo cingebat gurgite, quem hostes prede ducti
river with-deep surrounded whirlpool which the-enemies of-plunder led
cupidine uado transierant quemque eciam regredientibus
by-desire by-the-ford had-crossed and-which also returning

illis traicere erat necesse et loco eodem, quia nusquam
for-them to-cross was necessary and in-the-place same because nowhere
alias uadum reperiebatur. Citra huius fluminis ulteriorem
else a-ford was-found on-this-side-of of-this river the-farther
ripam Meriadocus Nigrum Militem de Nigro Saltu cum sua
bank Meriadoc the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade with his
turma transmisit, ut, si hostes in reuertendo suam manum,
troop sent-across that if the-enemies in returning his band
fluuio traiecto, euaderent, a Nigro Milite de Nigro Saltu
with-the-river crossed should-escape by the-Black Knight of the-Black Glade
inopini exciperentur. Candido uero Militi de Candido Saltu
unexpected they-might-be-received to-the-White but Knight of the-White Glade
precepit cum suis, ut aduersariis predam eriperet,
he-ordered with his-men that from-the-adversaries the-plunder he-should-snatch
dum ipsemet cum eisdem congrederetur. Roseum quoque
while he-himself with the-same should-clash the-Rose also
Militem de Roseo Saltu, cui iiiitam partem exercitus
Knight of the-Rose Glade to-whom the-fourth part of-the-army
commiserat, non longe in insidiis constituit esse, qui sibi
he-had-entrusted not far in ambush he-placed to-be who to-him
belligeranti, si opus esset, ferret subsidium. Hoc igitur
fighting if need were should-bring help in-this therefore
ordine disposito exercitu, ipse ocius aduersarios peciit,
order with-arranged army he more-quickly the-adversaries sought
quorum itineris et accionis consilium per exploratores
whose of-the-journey and of-the-action the-plan through scouts
totum certius inuestigauerat. Casu autem euenit quod
whole more-surely he-had-tracked by-chance moreover it-happened that
eis ad predicti fluuii transitum occurrit, maximam predam
them at of-the-aforesaid river the-crossing he-met the-greatest plunder
uirorum, mulierum, pecudum et diuersarum supellectilum
of-men of-women of-cattle and of-various household-goods

secum ducentibus. In eos igitur irruens primo impetu
with-themselves leading upon them therefore rushing at-the-first onset
eorum agmen deiecit, quia et preda onusti incedebant
their column he-threw-down because both with-plunder laden they-went
et in amnis transitu maxime impediebantur. At tamen
and in of-the-river the-crossing greatly they-were-hindered but yet
Saguncius ad eorum primum congressum uniuersam predam
Saguntius at their first clash all the-plunder
cum sarcinis iussit quam tocius in unum infra agmen
with the-packs ordered as speedily-as-possible into one within the-column
coaceruari militibusque per cuneos expeditis, strictis
to-be-heaped and-with-the-knights through wedges freed with-drawn
gladiis, in se irruentibus resistere. Discriminosum igitur
swords on themselves rushing to-resist perilous therefore
inter eos est bellum conflatum, dum hii totis uiribus
between them was war kindled while these with-all strength
niterentur que perdiderant excutere, illi econtra uiriliter
strove what they-had-lost to-shake-out those on-the-other-hand manfully
contenderent capta retinere. Meriadocus autem hinc
contended the-captured-things to-retain Meriadoc moreover on-this-side
et inde furibundus pererrans armatorum agmina nunc
and on-that raging wandering-through of-armed-men the-columns now
more bellue in hostes irruebat et prosternebat,
in-the-manner of-a-beast on the-enemies rushed and laid-low
modo suorum animos uariis exhortationibus ad certandum
now of-his-men the-minds with-various exhortations to contending
audaciores efficiebat. Ipse quidem uirtute Saguncius autem
bolder made he indeed in-valor Saguntius but
numero militum precellebat. Pungna uero magna protrahitur
in-the-number of-knights excelled the-fight but great is-prolonged
parte diei, licetque innumerabilis hostium multitudo
for-part of-the-day and-although a-countless of-enemies multitude

undique cateruatim a Meriadoco pessumdaretur, anceps
everywhere in-crowds by Meriadoc were-sent-to-ruin doubtful
tamen semper mansit uictoria, donec Roseus Miles de
yet always remained victory until the-Rose Knight of
Roseo Saltu, qui non eminus infra nemoris abdita pro
the-Rose Glade who not far-off within of-the-grove the-hidden-places for
subsidio latuerat, cum sua cohorte inprouisus a latere
help had-lain-hid with his cohort unforeseen from the-side
in eos excurreret aciesque confertas dissiparet. Turbatis
upon them should-sally and-the-lines dense scatter with-disturbed
autem et disiectis ordinibus, tunc primum abductam predam
moreover and dispersed ranks then first the-carried-off plunder
pertinacibus calumpniatoribus liberam deseruerunt sueque
to-the-persistent claimants free they-abandoned and-to-their
saluti fuga consuluerunt. Et quia insequencium ab omni
safety by-flight consulted and because of-the-pursuers from every
latere telis micantibus uia euadendi nusquam patebat,
side with-darts flashing a-way of-escaping nowhere lay-open
estuosos gurgitis fluctus precipites irruperunt, eo uiam
the-seething of-the-whirlpool waves headlong they-burst-into there a-way
querentes, quo nunquam ante uiator transierat. Presens
seeking where never before a-traveler had-crossed present
tamen discrimen iuuit astucia; equites quippe super
yet the-peril helped cunning the-horsemen indeed on
equos amnis medio, quo maior raptus aque ferebatur,
horses of-the-river in-the-middle where greater the-rush of-water was-borne
magno spacio interiecto, duobus in locis constiterunt, ut
with-great space interposed two in places stood that
rigor aque reliquo transeunti exercitui facilior fieret.
the-force of-the-water for-the-rest crossing army easier might-become
Verum idem fluuius nocte preterita aquis niualibus
but the-same river on-the-night past with-waters snowy

ex uicinis montibus defluentibus adeo inundauerat, quod
from neighboring mountains flowing-down so had-flooded that
eciam ipsi equites egre in eo consisterent. Quia tamen
even themselves the-horsemen hardly in it could-stand because yet
mortis urgebat necessitas, pedites cum equitibus mixtim
of-death pressed the-necessity the-foot-soldiers with the-horsemen mixed
certatimque se in profundum dederunt, leuiorem mortem
and-vying themselves into the-deep gave a-lighter death
fluuium quam hostilem gladium sibi illaturum credentes.
the-river than the-hostile sword on-themselves about-to-bring believing
Submersi sunt itaque fere omnes qui flumen transituri priores
drowned were and-so almost all who the-river about-to-cross the-first
ingressi sunt; sed eorum mors ceteris salus fuit; tot
entered have but their death to-the-others safety was so-many
enim tunc undis perierunt, ut ceteri expediti per eorum
for then in-the-waves perished that the-rest unencumbered over their
corpora transitum haberent. Sed, flumine transito, dum
bodies passage had but with-the-river crossed while
letarentur se discrimen euasisse, in aliud inciderunt.
they-rejoiced themselves the-peril to-have-escaped into another they-fell
Niger quippe Miles de Nigro Saltu, qui, ut prediximus,
the-Black indeed Knight of the-Black Glade who as we-said-before
illo a Meriadaco premissus fuerat, illos flumen transgressos
thither by Meriadoc sent-ahead had-been them the-river having-crossed
excepit, necemque fugientes nece affecit. Meriadocus
received and-death fleeing with-death brought Meriadoc
quoque, ereptam predam Candido militi de Candido Saltu
also the-snatched plunder to-the-White knight of the-White Glade
commendans, eos insecutus est extremosque fugiencium
entrusting them pursued has and-the-hindmost of-the-fleeing
exicio dabat. Saguncius autem, ubi suos a fronte et
to-destruction gave Saguntius moreover when his-men in front and

a tergo uidit occumbere, sibi maturius preuidens, ad
from behind he-saw to-fall for-himself in-good-time providing to
quandam annosam siluam que in uicino erat cum paucis
a-certain ancient wood which in the-neighborhood was with a-few
elabitur. Cuius fugam cum Meriadocus cognouisset, Nigro
slips-away whose flight when Meriadoc had-learned to-the-Black
Militi de Nigro Saltu totum relinquens exercitum ad delendas
Knight of the-Black Glade the-whole leaving army for destroying
uel capiendas reliquias hostium, ipse fugientem Saguncium
or capturing the-remnants of-the-enemies he the-fleeing Saguntius
per opaca silue, tantum cctis expeditis secum
through the-shady-parts of-the-wood with-only two-hundred unencumbered with-himself
assumptis militibus, persequi festinauit, quem mangnopere
taken knights to-pursue hastened whom greatly
uiuum capere cupiebat. Niger igitur Miles de Nigro Saltu
alive to-capture he-desired the-Black therefore Knight of the-Black Glade
cum Roseo Milite de Roseo Saltu, hostes sine miseracione
with the-Rose Knight of the-Rose Glade the-enemies without pity
cedentes, uniuersis aliis interfectis, pene usque ad vi
cutting-down with-all others killed almost all-the-way to six
milia captiuorum cum multimodis spoliis abducunt atque
thousand of-captives with manifold spoils lead-away and
Candidum Militem de Candido Saltu, qui trans flumen cum
the-White Knight of the-White Glade who across the-river with
excussa preda remanserat, pecierunt.
the-shaken-out plunder had-remained sought
Interea Meriadocus fugientem Saguncium per densitatem
meanwhile Meriadoc the-fleeing Saguntius through the-density
silue cum cctis militibus persequebatur, eum minime
of-the-wood with two-hundred knights pursued him not-at-all
comprehensurus; jam enim a conspectu eius remocius
about-to-catch already for from sight his more-remotely

euaserat, atque deinde per quandam strictam semitam
he-had-escaped and then through a-certain narrow path
a uia trita declinans, iter quod ad suam ducebat
from the-road beaten turning-aside the-way which to his led
patriam, silua egressus arripuerat. Erat autem eadem
country from-the-wood gone-out he-had-seized was moreover the-same
silua uasta nimis et horrida, quam cuius esset latitudinis
wood vast exceedingly and rough which of-what it-was breadth
uel longitudinis nullus unquam rimari potuit: uidelicet,
or length no-one ever to-search-out could namely
ob feritatem inmanium beluarum eam inhabitancium
on-account-of the-ferocity of-the-monstrous beasts it inhabiting
et ob innumera et incredibilia fantasmata que
and on-account-of countless and incredible phantoms which
per siluam uiantes uexabant et deludebant. Tot quippe
through the-wood travelers vexed and mocked so-many indeed
fantasiarum in ea apparebant species, ut nullus transeuncium
of-fantasies in it appeared forms that none of-the-passers
ab earum illusionibus immunis effugeret. Quorundam
from their illusions immune escaped of-certain-ones
quoque animos, humano sensu, tum terroribus, tum suis
also the-minds of-human sense both by-terrors and by-their
transformacionibus, priuatos, quasi in extasim ad alia secula
transformations deprived as-if in a-trance to other worlds
raptos dementes effecerant. Meriadocus igitur, predictam
snatched mad they-had-made Meriadoc therefore the-aforesaid
siluam ingressus, toto spacio estiui diei post meridiem
wood having-entered for-the-whole space of-the-summer day after noon
in eam procedebat. Vesperascente uero, in quodam saltu cum
into it advanced with-evening-falling but in a-certain glade with
suis descendit, atque, equis in recenti herba pabulatum
his-men he-dismounted and with-the-horses in fresh grass to-graze

dimissis, membra pausaturus sub diuo accubuit, suis uigilibus
sent-off (his)-limbs about-to-rest under the-sky lay-down to-his watchmen
precipiens, ut statim primo diluculo ad proficiscendum
ordering that at-once at-the-first dawn for setting-out
excitarentur. Verum se collocantes, sompnum capturi,
they-should-be-roused but themselves placing sleep about-to-take
uix oculos clauserant, dum ecce aurora albescente,
scarcely (their)-eyes they-had-closed when behold with-the-dawn whitening
ut sibi pro uero uidebatur, diescebat. Vigiles itaque
as to-them for true it-seemed day-broke the-watchmen and-so
Meriadocum adierunt, eumque excitantes, "Domine," inquiunt,
Meriadoc approached and-him rousing lord they-say
"surge; iam enim dies lucescit." Ille autem magis sompno
rise already for the-day grows-light he moreover more by-sleep
grauatus quam alleuiatus, ualde admirans, excitantibus se
weighed-down than relieved greatly marveling to-the-rousers him
dixit: "Vix sompnum cepi, et nunc dies est? ubi est ergo
said scarcely sleep I-took and now day it-is where is then
nox? Certe aut ego prolixiori solito sompno indigeo aut
the-night surely either I longer than-usual sleep need or
nox solito breuior est." Jussit tamen eadem hora surgere
the-night than-usual shorter is he-ordered yet at-the-same hour to-rise
ac iter inceptum carpere. Pergentibus uero lux semper
and the-way begun to-take to-the-going but the-light always
clarior sole ascendente apparebat, ita ut, dum necdum
clearer with-the-sun rising appeared so that while not-yet
miliarium et semis peregissent, ultra primam horam diei
a-mile and a-half they-had-completed beyond the-first hour of-the-day
esse iudicarent. Circa quod tempus diei in quandam
to-be they-judged around which time of-the-day into a-certain
planiciem latissimam peruenerunt, in quam sepe Meriadocus
plain very-broad they-came into which often Meriadoc

cum imperatore uenatum ierat. In ipsa autem planicie subito
with the-emperor to-hunt had-gone in the-very moreover plain suddenly
sibi ingencia edificia apparuerunt, miri et preclari operis
to-them huge buildings appeared of-wonderful and splendid work
columpnis celatis et depictis, celsis laquearibus, ex lapide
with-columns carved and painted with-lofty paneled-ceilings of stone
marmoreo et porphiritico tabulatis parietum constructis et
marble and porphyry with-floors of-walls built and
constratis, omnia circumcirca alta fossa ualloque prerupto
paved all all-around with-a-deep ditch and-rampart steep
cingente. At Meriadocus ob tantorum edificiorum tam subitam
surrounding but Meriadoc at of-so-great buildings so sudden
structuram non parum obstupefactus "Miror," inquit, "O
structure not a-little astounded I-wonder he-said O
commilitones mei, de tanta rei nouitate quam uideo, unde
comrades my at so-great of-the-thing novelty which I-see whence
hee domus marmoree eiusmodique rerum apparatus qui nostris
these houses marble and-of-this-kind of-things the-apparatus which to-our
patent oculis aduenerí[u]t. Necdum quippe dies xxius est,
are-open eyes have-come not-yet indeed the-day twenty-first it-is
ex quo in hac ipsa planicie cum imperatore et quibusdam e
from when in this very plain with the-emperor and certain of
uobis uenatus sum, quo temporis spacio nec tantum opus
you hunted I-have in-which of-time space neither so-great a-work
perfici nec, si posset perfici, a nobis utique quiuisset
be-completed nor if it-could to-be-completed from us at-all it-could-have
celari. Procedamus tamen et cuius sint habitacula uel a
to-be-hidden let-us-advance yet and whose are the-dwellings or by
quibus constructe inuestigemus." Illis igitur procedentibus,
whom built let-us-investigate with-them therefore advancing
subito ante ianuas palacii pueri pene xxx apparuerunt,
suddenly before the-gates of-the-palace boys almost thirty appeared

speciosi ualde, ciclade purpur[e]a et bisso amicti. Qui
beautiful very in-a-robe purple and in-linen clad who
omnes uenientibus occurrentes Meriadocum alacri uultu cum
all to-the-comers running-to-meet Meriadoc with-eager face with
sociis salutauerunt atque ad prandium inuitauerunt. Jam
(his)-companions greeted and to dinner invited already
autem hora diei tercia sibi esse uidebatur. Meriadocus
moreover the-hour of-the-day third to-them to-be seemed Meriadoc
autem, quamquam iter inceptum acceleraret, iudicauit tamen
moreover although the-way begun he-hastened judged yet
ingredi, hac causa precipua, ut inhabitatores cognosceret
to-enter for-this reason chiefly that the-inhabitants he-might-know
et res tam mirabilis et stupenda sibi patefieret.
and the-thing so marvelous and astounding to-him be-made-plain

THE SILENT FEAST AND THE STORM

A beautiful lady knows Meriadoc by name and tells him the palace is ancient and the place not the one he thinks; she feasts him, but the whole court keeps silence. When he presses the steward, the steward answers with grimaces until he seems a demon, and Meriadoc and all his men flee in terror. Night falls before they have gone a mile, their horses run mad, and at morning they find themselves in a river, fifty-four men lost. In a storm Waldomer and most of the men go to a castle from which no one has come out without disgrace, while Meriadoc stays under an oak with eleven knights.

Curiam igitur ingressi sunt, quam maxima multitudinis
the-court therefore entered they-have which a-very-great of-a-multitude
incognite replebat frequencia, atque ad hostium aule
unknown filled the-throng and at the-door of-the-hall
descenderunt. Inde per porphiriticos gradus ascendentes ubi
they-dismounted thence by porphyry steps ascending when

regiam subierunt, in eminenciore domus parte preclarum
the-palace they-entered in the-more-eminent of-the-house part a-splendid
accubitum aduerterunt sericis pannis nobiliter stratum, in
couch they-noticed with-silk cloths nobly spread in
quo femina decoris inestimabilis recubabat, quam et lepidi
which a-woman of-beauty inestimable reclined whom both the-elegant
gestus et incomparabilis pulcritudo nitorque glorie non parue
gestures and incomparable beauty and-the-gleam of-glory not of-small
nobilitatis esse affirmabant. Tota quippe domus intrinsecus
nobility to-be affirmed the-whole indeed house within
uariis ornamentis erat ornata, nobilesque uiri procerum
with-various ornaments was adorned and-noble men of-the-nobles
militumque hinc et inde circumsidebant, diuersis ludis
and-of-the-knights on-this-side and on-that sat-around in-various games
se spaciantes. Quidam enim simulatam pugnam bifaria
themselves diverting some for a-feigned fight with-twofold
acie pirgis componebant; alii alearum iacturis operam
line with-chessmen arranged others of-dice to-the-throws effort
dabant; nonnulli tesseris iactis euentum lucri uel dampni
gave some with-the-dice thrown the-outcome of-gain or of-loss
fortune committebant. Quorum lusum predicta matrona,
to-fortune committed whose play the-aforesaid matron
illorum domina, in accubitu suo iacens, dum contemplaretur,
their mistress on couch her lying while she-contemplated
ubi intrantem Meriadocum est intuita, parum se erigens
when entering Meriadoc she-has looked-on a-little herself raising
eum lepide prior salutauit et ad se euocauit, omnibus
him elegantly first greeted and to herself called with-all
illis iussis assurgere. Ille autem aduocatus audacter processit
those ordered to-rise he moreover summoned boldly advanced
atque super lectum iuxta eam resedit, suis militibus sparsim
and upon the-couch beside her sat-down with-his knights scattered

per aulam assidentibus. Ad quem uirago "Bene," ait
through the-hall sitting-by to whom the-heroine well she-says
"Meriadoce, ad nos uenistis; multum enim temporis est, ex
Meriadoc to us you-have-come much for of-time it-is from
quo te desiderabam uidere, tuas audiens probitates." Cui
when you I-desired to-see your hearing-of prowesses to-whom
ille: "Stupendum est non modice quod uideo et audio, uel
he astonishing it-is not moderately what I-see and hear either
quomodo mei faciem aut nomen cognoueris uel quis
how my face or name you-have-come-to-know or who
in hoc loco tantas structuras tam repente condiderit, cum
in this place such-great structures so suddenly has-founded when
necdum mensis transiit quod hic nec unus lapis edificii
not-yet a-month has-passed that here not one stone of-a-building
fuerit." Illa ad hec: "Ne mireris, Meriadoce, si te tuo
was she to this do-not wonder Meriadoc if you by-your
uocauerim nomine, diu quippe est quod mihi et uultu
I-have-called name long indeed it-is that to-me both by-face
et nomine haberis cognitus. Sed multum erras de hiis
and by-name you-are-held known but much you-err about these
edificiis, que tam subito constructa asseris, quia et hec
buildings which so suddenly built you-assert because both these
habitacula sunt a priscis temporibus. Nec hic locus est
dwellings are from ancient times nor this place is
quem tu esse existimas nec umquam nisi modo in hoc loco
which you to-be reckon nor ever except now in this place
fuisti. Nunc autem nobiscum comedes, quam diu placuerit
have-you-been now but with-us you-will-eat as long it-shall-please
penes nos perhendinaturus." Vocatisque ministris, iussit
with us about-to-stay and-with-summoned servants she-ordered
confestim mensam apponi. Qua apposita, solus quidem
at-once a-table to-be-set-before with-which set alone indeed

Meriadocus iuxta illam ad celsiorem mensam recubuit; milites
Meriadoc beside her at the-higher table reclined the-knights
autem eius mixtim cum aliis discubuerunt. Maximus famulatus
but his mixed with others reclined very-great the-service
ministrancium assistebat; splendidus apparatus dapium regalium
of-the-attendants stood-by a-splendid array of-dishes royal
apponebatur; tot erant fercula, quod numerum excederent,
was-set-before so-many were the-courses that the-number they-exceeded
quod sicut postea Meriadocus se astruebat nunquam in
so-that as afterward Meriadoc himself declared never in
aliqua curia uidisse nec tante dulcedinis aliqua degustasse.
any court to-have-seen nor of-such sweetness any to-have-tasted
Verum omnes in communi silencium tenebant, ut nullus
but all in common silence kept so-that no-one
in tota aula uel seruiencium aut discumbencium cum
in the-whole hall either of-the-servants or of-the-reclining with
considente seu conseruiente aliquid loqueretur.
one-sitting-beside or serving-with anything spoke
Quod Meriadocus aduertens, et quia necdum interrogauerat
which Meriadoc noticing and because not-yet he-had-asked
qui essent, circa finem prandii dapiferum ad se uocauit,
who they-were near the-end of-the-dinner the-steward to himself called
atque, matrona alias intendente esse curie, quesiuit que
and with-the-matron elsewhere attending to-be of-the-court asked what
gens essent, si sua domina uirum haberet, nomen quoque
people they-were if their mistress a-husband had the-name also
eiusdem, necnon et cur ita omnes tacerent, ut eciam cum
of-the-same and-also even why so all were-silent that even with
suis militibus qui erant extranei et eorum uerbis exhilarari
his knights who were strangers and their by-words to-be-cheered
debuissent nullus penitus uerbum consereret. Dapifer autem,
ought no-one at-all a-word joined the-steward moreover

dum ad interrogata responsum reddere debuisset, ruga
while to the-questions an-answer to-give he-ought with-a-wrinkle
in naso contracta, subsannam ei pro responso reddidit.
in (his)-nose drawn-up a-sneer to-him for answer gave
At Meriadocus, eum hoc reputans ludendo fecisse, iterum
but Meriadoc him this reckoning in-jest to-have-done again
eum ut quesita sibi intimaret blande rogauit. Ille
him that the-questions to-him he-should-make-known coaxingly asked he
uero iterato, more canis estuantis, linguam ab ore
but again in-the-manner of-a-dog panting (his)-tongue from (his)-mouth
usque ad mentum deorsum exerens, subiuncto cachinno,
all-the-way to (his)-chin downward thrusting-out with-added guffaw
Meriadocum deridebat. Meriadocus autem, nec tunc quidem
Meriadoc mocked Meriadoc moreover not then indeed
rem ut erat intelligens et derisionem adhuc lusum
the-thing as it-was understanding and the-mockery still a-jest
existimans, "Uir" ait "eggregie, quid est quod agas? Ego
reckoning man he-says excellent what is-it that you-do I
que michi ignota et tibi bene sunt cognita a te
what-things to-me unknown and to-you well are known from you
quero et tu mihi responsionis loco contraccionem narium
ask and you to-me of-answer in-place a-drawing-up of-the-nostrils
et distorte bucce reddis ualgium. Queso ut uel nunc
and of-a-distorted cheek give a-grimace I-beg that at-least now
demum interrogata mihi edicas." Verum dapifer, nichil ei
at-last the-questions to-me you-declare but the-steward nothing to-him
locutus, tercio ad instar auricularium aselli ambas
having-said a-third-time in the-likeness of-the-ears of-an-ass both
manus circa tempora sparsis digitis agitans, ardentibus
hands around (his)-temples with-spread fingers waving with-burning
oculis, patenti oris rictu, Meriadoco, ac si iam eum
eyes with-open of-mouth gape on-Meriadoc as if now him

deuoraret, incubuit, uultusque eius adeo immutatus est, ut
he-would-devour leaned and-face his so changed was that
similior demoni quam homini uideretur. Unde Meriadocus,
more-like to-a-demon than to-a-man he-seemed whence Meriadoc
nimium perterritus, statim e mensa prosilire uoluit.
exceedingly terrified at-once from the-table to-leap wished
Quod matrona aduertens, quasi irata, dapiferum increpare
which the-matron noticing as-if angry the-steward to-rebuke
cepit, "Tolle, tolle," clamitans "nec uiro nobili iniuriam
began stop stop crying nor to-a-man noble injury
inferas, ne alicuius rusticitatis nota nostram curiam notare
bring lest of-any rusticity the-mark our court to-brand
ualeat." Tantus autem timor Meriadocum omnesque eius
may-be-able so-great moreover fear Meriadoc and-all his
socios eadem hora inuasit, ut, mensa confestim sublata,
companions at-the-same hour invaded that with-the-table at-once removed
consurgerent atque tremebundi cum festinacione exirent.
they-rose and trembling with haste went-out
Dies autem, quantum ad eorum estimacionem, ad uesperum
the-day moreover as-far-as to their estimation to evening
iam uergebatur. Equis igitur ascensis, non plene miliarium
already was-declining with-horses therefore mounted not fully a-mile
perrexerant cum noctis tenebre adeo dense incumbebant,
they-had-proceeded when of-night the-darkness so thick pressed
ut nullus ab alio aduerti ualeret. Isdem quoque stupor
that none by another to-be-noticed could the-same also stupor
atque insania que sibi contigerat eciam eorum equis
and madness which to-them had-happened also their upon-horses
incubuit; qua incumbente, in tantum debac[c]hati sunt,
pressed with-which pressing in so-much raged they-have
quod nullus ex eorum sessoribus eorum aliquem domare uel
that none of their riders of-them any to-tame or

a precipiti refrenare cursu ualuisset. Dispersi sunt
from headlong to-rein-in course would-have-been-able scattered they-were
itaque huc illucque per siluam, quo insania equos ferebat,
and-so hither thither through the-wood where the-madness the-horses carried
totaque nocte quasi in congressione pungne, admissis equis,
and-the-whole night as-if in a-clash of-battle with-horses let-go
sibi occurrentes; equi cum equis uirique cum uiris in
to-each-other meeting horses with horses and-men with men in
occursu mutuo collidebantur. Quique dum inuicem occurrerent,
meeting mutual were-dashed and-who while each-other they-met
quisque ad alium clamabat, ut cursum sisteret, manibusque
each to the-other cried that (his)-course he-should-stop and-with-hands
extentis, quisque alium quocumque posset loco ac si se
stretched each the-other wherever he-could in-place as if themselves
mutuo retenturi arripiebat. Sed nec equi refrenari nec
mutually about-to-hold-back seized but neither the-horses to-be-reined nor
a se potuerunt retineri. Eorum igitur quam plurimi,
by themselves could to-be-held-back of-them therefore very many
collisis membris, tam equorum quam equitum sparsim
with-crushed limbs both of-the-horses and of-the-riders here-and-there
ceciderunt; alii autem per auia ducti a sociis
fell others moreover through pathless-places led from (their)-companions
errauerunt; reliqui omnes, una cum Meriadoco in cuiusdam
strayed the-rest all together with Meriadoc into of-a-certain
fluminis profundo gurgite circa matutinum tempus inopini
river the-deep whirlpool around morning time unexpectedly
deuecti, usque ad sellarum carpellas tumescentibus aquis
carried all-the-way to of-the-saddles the-pommels with-swelling waters
insederunt. Die autem facto, tunc primum quidem
sat with-the-day moreover made then first indeed
ubi essent cognouerunt, fluuiumque egressi, licet
where they-were they-learned and-the-river having-gone-out-of although

inmenso labore, quinquaginta iiij e suo numero deesse
with-immense labor fifty four from their number to-be-missing
inuenerunt. Meriadocus uero, tantis infortuniis acceptis,
they-found Meriadoc but so-great misfortunes received
magno consternatus est dolore, conuersusque ad socios "O
with-great dismayed was grief and-turned to (his)-comrades O
commilitones," inquit "dies fantastica nos deliciis pauit. Sed
comrades he-says the-day phantasmal us with-delights has-fed but
quo fuerimus, quos conuiuas habuerimus, infortunium quod
where we-have-been whom as-fellow-guests we-have-had the-misfortune which
nos secutum est euidenter edocuit. Tamen ob amissionem
us followed has plainly has-taught yet for the-loss
sociorum magis doleo, quos scio me minime reperturum."
of-(my)-companions more I-grieve whom I-know me not-at-all about-to-find
Flumen igitur egressi parum a labore fessa
the-river therefore having-gone-out-of a-little from labor (their)-weary
membra pausauerunt, indeque in siluam progrediebantur,
limbs rested and-thence into the-wood advanced
quorsum irent prorsus ignorantes. Dumque se siluam
whither they-were-going altogether not-knowing and-while themselves the-wood
egressuros sperarent, in interiora eius semper tendebant.
about-to-leave they-hoped into the-inner-parts of-it always they-made-their-way
Post meridiem aut[em] tempestas ualida est eis exorta,
after noon moreover a-storm strong was for-them risen
scilicet uis uenti cum inundacione pluuie et coruscacione
namely the-force of-wind with flood of-rain and lightning
fulminum terroribusque tonitruum; quibus malis in tantum
of-thunderbolts and-terrors of-thunder by-which evils in so-much
quassati sunt, ut felices iudicarent qui ea tempestate
shaken were that happy they-judged who in-that storm
sub tecto manebant. Anxius igitur nimis Meriadocus et
under a-roof remained anxious therefore exceedingly Meriadoc and

nescius quid faceret, inquirebat a sociis si quem
not-knowing what he-should-do asked from (his)-companions if any
in uicino nossent locum, quo sub aliquo edificio
in the-neighborhood they-knew place whither under some building
a tanta procella possent confugere. Cui unus militum
from so-great a-tempest they-could to-flee to-whom one of-the-knights
respondit, castellum permaximum in confinio haberi sed
answered a-castle very-great in the-vicinity to-be-held but
neminem umquam illud intrasse qui sine dedecore exierit.
no-one ever it to-have-entered who without disgrace went-out
Erat autem inter alios tiro quidam, Waldomerus nomine,
was moreover among the-others a-recruit certain Waldomer by-name
cognatus ipsius imperatoris, qui, amore ductus, Meriadocum
a-kinsman of-the-very emperor who by-love led Meriadoc
ad bellum comitatus fuerat. Hic, tam horride tempestatis
to war accompanied had this-one of-so dreadful a-storm
semper inualescente turbine, dum iam dies uergebatur
always with-growing-strong the-whirlwind while already the-day was-declining
ad uesperam et iam ictus tonitruum et coruscaciones
to evening and already the-strokes of-thunder and the-flashes
fulminum ferre ulterius non posset, cepit a milite querere
of-thunderbolts to-bear further not he-could began from the-knight to-ask
quorsum esset castellum, quod se nosse prope adesse
whither was the-castle which himself to-know near to-be
predixerat, et ut se illo duceret rogare. Ad hec miles:
he-had-said and that him thither he-should-lead to-ask to this the-knight
“Ego quidem te, si uis, ad castellum ducam. Sed ipse
I indeed you if you-wish to the-castle shall-lead but I
in castellum minime tecum introibo. Verumptamen predico
into the-castle not-at-all with-you shall-enter nevertheless I-foretell
tibi inde grauissime te peniturum, antequam exeas.” Cui
to-you thence most-grievously you about-to-repent before you-go-out to-whom

Waldomerus “Ne cures” ait; “tantum ad castellum me
Waldomer do-not care he-says only to the-castle me
ducito, quia hic non remanebo.” Duxit itaque illum miles ad
lead because here not I-shall-remain he-led and-so him the-knight to
castellum, quem eciam pene uniuersi qui cum Meriadoco erant,
the-castle whom also almost all who with Meriadoc were
exceptis xi tantum militibus, secuti sunt, dicentes se
excepted eleven only knights followed have saying themselves
uelle pocius quamlibet experiri fortunam quam sub tanto
to-wish rather any to-try fortune than under so-great
ibi periclitari discrimine. Miles autem qui illos duxerat,
there to-be-endangered peril the-knight moreover who them had-led
ubi fores oppidi attigit, illis ualedicens ad Meriadocum
when the-gates of-the-town he-reached to-them bidding-farewell to Meriadoc
reuersus est, qui iam se cum hiis qui secum remanserant
returned has who already himself with those who with-him had-remained
sub umbra annose quercus a procella contulerant.
under the-shade of-an-ancient oak from the-storm had-betaken

In the empty castle the men sit in dumb terror. Meriadoc joins them, takes food from a girl's table, is struck by a tall man, and is sent back his sword with the girl's rebuke; he throws into a well a huge beardless man who strikes him with a roasting spit, and chases a giant who has killed twenty of his men into a house of armed men, where he fights until they let him go. His men have fled with his horse; a weeping woman gives him her murdered husband's steed, and he kills the two robbers.

Valdomerus igitur, cum ceteris se commitantibus castellum
Waldomer therefore with the-others him accompanying the-castle
ingressus, omnes aditus apertos inuenit sed neminem
having-entered all approaches open found but no-one
in toto castello. Intrauerunt autem quandam aulam in
in the-whole castle they-entered moreover a-certain hall in
superiore turri sitam, auleis coopertam, et tapetis
the-upper tower situated with-hangings covered and with-carpets
undique stratam, in cuius medio ignis lucidissimus accensus
everywhere spread in whose middle a-fire most-bright kindled
ardebat. Stabula quoque equorum in ulteriori ipsius parte
burned the-stables also of-the-horses in the-farther of-it part
erant, satis habundancia prebenda et foragine. Que cum
were quite with-abundance of-provender and fodder which when
Waldomerus uidisset: "Descendite," clamauit "O socii;
Waldomer had-seen dismount he-cried O comrades
optime hospitati sumus. Ecce omnia affatim suppetunt
excellently lodged we-are behold all-things amply are-at-hand
quibus maxime indigebamus. Domus est nobis ornata, ignis
which most we-needed the-house is for-us adorned the-fire
accensus, iumentis autem sufficiencia pabula in stabulo.
kindled for-the-beasts moreover sufficient fodder in the-stable
Delirauit qui nos ab hoc hospicio dehortari contendit."
he-raved who us from this lodging to-dissuade strove

Igitur descendentes equos in stabulis constituerunt, pabula
therefore dismounting the-horses in the-stables they-set fodder
apposuerunt, armisque depositis, focum circumsederunt.
they-set-before and-with-arms laid-down the-hearth sat-around
Sed dum parumper ibi consedissent, tam ingens timor
but when a-little there they-had-sat so huge a-fear
eos inuasit, ut nullus alium alloqui nec eciam intueri
them invaded that none another to-address nor even to-look-at
auderet, sed, demissis capitibus, terram tacentes aspiciebant,
dared but with-lowered heads the-ground silent they-looked-at
ac si iam sibi necem imminere uererentur. Interea
as if already for-themselves death to-impend they-feared meanwhile
illi qui cum Meriadoco remanserant, ingruentibus noctis
those who with Meriadoc had-remained with-pressing of-night
tenebris predictaque tempestate semper in peius uergente,
darkness and-the-aforesaid storm always to worse turning
ceperunt se inuicem conqueri, quod non issent
began themselves to-each-other to-complain that not they-had-gone
cum sociis sed in tanta procella remansissent. Prefatum
with (their)-comrades but in so-great a-tempest had-remained the-aforesaid
militem, qui alios ad castellum duxerat, deprecabantur,
knight who the-others to the-castle had-led they-begged
ut ipsos quoque ad commilitones quam tocius ducere
that them also to (their)-comrades as quickly-as-possible to-lead
festinaret. Miles autem, quamquam inuitus, dux eis
he-should-hasten the-knight moreover although unwilling leader for-them
usque ad castellum factus est, sed ipse confestim ad
all-the-way to the-castle made was but he at-once to
Meriadocum rediit. Aduenientibus autem istis, priores
Meriadoc returned with-coming moreover these the-former
a terrore quo tenebantur illorum aduentu admodicum
from the-terror by-which they-were-held their at-coming a-little

releuati sunt; sed ubi et ipsi cum eis fere dimidia hora
relieved were but when also they with them almost a-half hour
consederunt, eodem pauore omnes comprehensi exanguibus
sat-down by-the-same dread all seized to-the-bloodless
similes uidebantur. Meriadocus inter hec in silua cum
like seemed Meriadoc among these-things in the-wood with
uno milite consistens, tum aeris intemperie urgente, tum
one knight standing both of-the-air with-the-inclemency pressing and
ueritus ne suis militibus sui in absencia aliquid discriminis
having-feared lest to-his knights of-him in absence anything of-peril
contingeret; "Duc me" ait "ad socios, cum quibus malo
should-happen lead me he-says to (my)-comrades with whom I-prefer
si qua sunt participari pericula quam hic sine illis tutus
if any there-are to-share the-dangers than here without them safe
consistere." Cui miles: "Libenter te ad illos ducam, sed
to-stand to-whom the-knight gladly you to them I-shall-lead but
ego huc redibo." Duce igitur milite, Meriadocus oppidum
I hither shall-return with-as-leader therefore the-knight Meriadoc the-town
peciit, et, ductore redeunte, aulam subiit. Quem intrantem
sought and with-the-guide returning the-hall entered whom entering
cum nemo salutasset nec ei assurgeret, "Qua causa,"
when no-one had-greeted nor to-him rose for-what cause
clamauit "o socii, sic obmutescitis?" Tunc Waldomerus,
he-cried o comrades thus are-you-dumb then Waldomer
resumpta audacia, caput erexit atque "Meriadoce, ne
with-resumed boldness (his)-head raised and Meriadoc do-not
mireris" respondit "nos ita silere; quia tam immodico
wonder he-answered us so to-be-silent because by-so immoderate
pauore tenemur, quod nec nos intueri alterutro nobis mens
dread we-are-held that neither us to-look-at each-other to-us mind
sit." Ad hec Meriadocus "Surgite" ait "quam tocius;
there-is to this Meriadoc rise he-says as quickly-as-possible

nichil aliud quam inercia uos detinet. Quid ueremini? Surgite,
nothing else than sloth you holds-back what do-you-fear rise
discumbite, mensam apponite; nimis enim longa ieiunia
recline the-table set-before too for long fasts
continuauimus. Ego autem, si in hac domo habentur, que
we-have-prolonged I moreover if in this house are-had what-things
nobis sunt uictui perquiram necessaria." Surgentibus itaque
for-us are for-food I-shall-search-out necessary with-rising and-so
illis et discumbentibus, Meriadocus confestim thalamum
them and reclining Meriadoc at-once chamber
unum et alium adiit, sed, in illis nullum reperiens,
one and another approached but in them no-one finding
tercium quoque subiit, in quo puellam mirande forme
the-third also entered in which a-girl of-wonderful beauty
thoro residentem offendit, ante quam et mensam positam
on-a-couch sitting he-came-upon before whom also a-table placed
cum pane et uino sufficienti. Meriadocus igitur oblati
with bread and wine sufficient Meriadoc therefore of-the-offered
cibi ductus cupidine iiies utres uino plenos collo sibi
food led by-desire three skins with-wine full on-the-neck for-himself
et brachiis suspendit, cophinumque placentis refertum inter
and on-(his)-arms hung and-a-basket with-cakes filled between
manus corripiens, ad socios festinus reuertebatur, nil
(his)-hands seizing to (his)-comrades hurrying returned nothing
prorsus nec eciam salutacionis uerba locutus cum uirgine.
at-all not even of-greeting words having-spoken with the-maiden
Verum illi properanti quidam procere stature in secundo
but to-him hurrying a-certain-man of-tall stature in the-second
occurrit thalamo, qui, percuntatus quis esset et cur panem
met chamber who having-asked who he-was and why the-bread
et uinum domini sui furatus fuisset, ex inprouiso cum
and wine of-lord his stolen he-had from unforeseen with

pungno ei tempora eo annisu contudit, ut pene
fist on-him the-temples with-that effort struck that almost
ad pedes eius Meriadocus prosterneretur gladiusque quem
at the-feet his Meriadoc was-laid-low and-the-sword which
manu tenebat longius propelleretur. Ille autem, de gladio
in-(his)-hand he-held farther was-driven he moreover about the-sword
nil cogitans sed ut que rapuerat perferre posset
nothing thinking but that what he-had-seized to-carry-through he-might-be-able
ad socios, citato gressu ab illo in aulam profugit;
to (his)-comrades with-quickened step from him into the-hall fled
quibus et allata apposuit, dicens se quoque ad
to-whom also the-brought-things he-set-before saying himself also to
coquinam iturum. Prius tamen, dum se deliberaret ulcisci
the-kitchen about-to-go first yet when himself he-considered to-avenge
de illo qui se percusserat et ensem non inuenisset, confusus
on him who him had-struck and the-sword not he-had-found confused
parum resedit, quid sibi contigisset pre pudore non audens
a-little he-sat-down what to-him had-happened for shame not daring
referre sociis. Unde dum tristis resideret, ecce quidam
to-relate to-(his)-comrades whence while sad he-sat behold a-certain-man
a thalamo uenit, ipsius ferens mucronem sibi a puella
from the-chamber comes his bearing sword to-him from the-girl
missum mandante eum rusticum et inertem esse: rusticum,
sent bidding him boorish and sluggish to-be boorish
quod se non salutasset et sibi apposita abstulisset,
because her not he-had-greeted and from-her the-things-set-before had-taken
inertem quod contra inermem ense munitus resistere
sluggish because against an-unarmed-man with-a-sword armed to-resist
minime ausus fuisset. Gladium autem Meriadocus adeptus
not-at-all dared he-had the-sword moreover Meriadoc having-obtained
confestim coquinam adiit, lancemque permaximam optimis
at-once the-kitchen approached and-a-platter very-great with-the-best

ferculis que in ea affatim repperit impleuit. Juxta focum
dishes which in it abundantly he-found filled beside the-hearth
autem dormiebat uir inberbis, raso capite, inmanis
moreover slept a-man beardless with-shaven head of-monstrous
corporis, qui Meriadoco tumultuante in colligendis epulis
body who with-Meriadoc making-a-tumult in gathering the-viands
excitus, quasi amens, prosiliit, ueru quo grues assari
roused as-if mad leapt-forth the-spit on-which cranes to-be-roasted
solebant ambabus manibus arripuit, Meriadocumque iam
were-wont with-both hands seized and-Meriadoc already
exeuntem nactus ei inter scapulas tanta ui ueru
going-out having-caught on-him between the-shoulders with-such force the-spit
ingessit, quanta, ut puto, eum exanimem reddidisset,
thrust as-much as I-think him lifeless would-have-rendered
nisi fustis in ictu confracta ictum debilitasset. Ante
unless the-stick in the-blow broken the-blow had-weakened before
hostium uero coquine et penes illud puteus altus erat.
the-door but of-the-kitchen and beside it a-well deep was
Meriadocus igitur percussus lancem concitus deposuit, suum
Meriadoc therefore struck the-platter hastily laid-down his
percussorem per aures — quia capillis carebat — furibundus
striker by the-ears because hair be-lacked raging
corripuit, eleuauit, nequicquam renitentem in profundum
seized raised in-vain resisting into the-depth
putei proiecit et cum lance dapifera ad socios
of-the-well threw and with the-platter dish-laden to (his)-comrades
profugit. Cum quibus et residens eos alacriter hortabatur
fled with whom also sitting them eagerly urged
comedere. Illis itaque in summa prandentibus, truculentus
to-eat they and-so at the-height dining a-truculent
satelles, gigantee forme, semitrabem dorso gerens, aulam
attendant of-giant form a-half-beam on-(his)-back bearing the-hall

ingressus est. Qui, quoquouersus torua rotans lumina, "Qui
entered has who on-every-side grim rolling eyes who
sunt" exclamauit "hii latrones, qui domum domini mei
are he-cried these robbers who the-house of-lord my
furtim ingressi sunt eiusque cibos more ardalionum
stealthily entered have and-his food in-the-manner of-busybodies
diripuerunt et consumpserunt?" Cui cum Meriadocus
plundered and consumed to-whom when Meriadoc
respondere conaretur, ille excussam fortiter trabem in eos
to-answer tried he the-shaken-out strongly beam at them
proiecit, cuius casu illorum xx exangues reddidit. At
threw whose by-fall of-them twenty lifeless he-made but
Meriadocus, socios male tractari ab illo non ferens
Meriadoc (his)-comrades ill to-be-treated by him not bearing
diucius, euaginato gladio, in eum irruit atque in fugam
longer with-drawn sword upon him rushed and into flight
conuertit, fugientique insistens, tam diu per thalamos,
turned and-the-fleeing pressing-on so long through the-chambers
per curiam et per nemus eum insectatus est, donec in
through the-court and through the-grove him pursued has until in
sequendo eum in domum quandam armatis plenam circa
pursuing him into a-house certain with-armed-men full around
crepusculum inopinus incidit. Dumque armatorum territus
twilight unexpectedly he-fell and-while of-armed-men terrified
multitudine egredi uellet, omnes in eum solum irruentes
by-the-multitude to-go-out he-wished all upon him alone rushing
ipsum remanere coegerunt. Ille autem, dorso applicato
him to-remain compelled he moreover with-back applied
parieti, scutum protendit, uiriliter restitit, nec ante tum
to-the-wall (his)-shield stretched-out manfully resisted nor before both
propugnando, tum impugnando destitit, quousque, ex eis
by-defending and by-attacking ceased until of them

quam plurimis occisis, ceteri ipsius pertinacia uicti ei
very many killed the-rest his by-persistence conquered to-him
dextram darent ac libere quo uellet ire permitterent.
the-right-hand gave and freely whither he-wished to-go allowed
Meriadocus igitur ab illis liberatus ad castellum rediit sed
Meriadoc therefore from them freed to the-castle returned but
sociorum neminem repperit. Uniuersi enim pre timore
of-(his)-comrades no-one he-found all for for fear
fugerant sonipedemque eius cum armis secum duxerant.
had-fled and-steed his with arms with-them had-led
Nescius itaque quid ageret pedester per siluam solus iter
not-knowing and-so what he-should-do on-foot through the-wood alone (his)-way
carpebat. Jam autem, sole ascendente, dies clarauerat;
took already moreover with-the-sun rising the-day had-grown-bright
pergenti uero illi fit obuia mulier, Ueradario residens,
to-him-going but to-him becomes to-meet a-woman on-a-palfrey sitting
sonipedem dextra ducens, lacrimis obducta faciem. Hec
a-steed with-(her)-right-hand leading with-tears covered as-to-face she
a Meriadoco interrogata cur fleret respondet, uirum suum,
by Meriadoc asked why she-wept answers husband her
strenuum militem, paulo ante a duobus spurcissimis latronibus
vigorous knight a-little before by two most-foul robbers
fraude interfectum, se ab illis captam set tunc a sompno
by-fraud killed herself by them taken but then by sleep
pressis fugisse; quem ducebat uelle dare sonipedem
with-(them)-overcome to-have-fled the-one-whom she-led to-wish to-give steed
qui mortem domini sui ulcisceretur. Spondet ulcionem
who the-death of-lord her might-avenge promises vengeance
Meriadocus; equum ascendit; cum illa pergit; unum dormientem
Meriadoc the-horse mounts with her goes one sleeping
opprimit; alter excitus et resistens similem casum luit.
he-overwhelms the-other roused and resisting a-like fate pays

Meriadoc finds his men again. His three companions, leading the imperial army to his help, have been ambushed by King Guntram, Gundebald's brother; Meriadoc falls on Guntram's army, destroys it, kills Guntram, and takes his kingdom. The emperor promises him his daughter if he can rescue her. Invited secretly by the princess, Meriadoc goes with his three companions to Gundebald's city, throws the gatekeeper into the river, and lets them in.

Inde digressus, muliere relicta, ut fortuna fauebat,
thence departing with-the-woman left as fortune favored
prefatus miles qui in silua illis ad castellum pergentibus
the-aforesaid knight who in the-wood with-them to the-castle going
remanserat ei occurrit. Quem Meriadocus uidens ualde
had-remained him met whom Meriadoc seeing greatly
letatur, ei casus suos exponit, sociorum turbam
rejoices to-him misfortunes his sets-forth of-(his)-comrades the-crowd
amissam refert, se non sapienter egisse, quod ipsius
lost relates himself not wisely to-have-acted that his
noluerit parere consilio. Miles autem ad hec eum
he-had-not-wished to-obey counsel the-knight moreover at this him
consolatus cum eo ultra progreditur. Non longius uero
having-consoled with him further advances not farther but
processerant et ecce ante se in quadam planicie
they-had-advanced and behold before themselves in a-certain plain
armatorum turbam incidere conspexerunt. Quibus conspectis,
of-armed-men a-crowd to-come they-saw with-which seen
Meriadocus iussit militi ibi subsistere, dum ipse ad cuneum
Meriadoc ordered the-knight there to-halt while he to the-wedge
quem uiderant properaret et qui essent inquireret. Substitit
which they-had-seen should-hasten and who they-were should-inquire halted
miles; Meriadocus sonipedem post eos admisit, extremosque
the-knight Meriadoc (his)-steed after them let-go and-the-hindmost

nactus, suos quos perdiderat omnes cognouit una cum
having-reached his whom he-had-lost all recognized together with
Waldomero esse socios; fortuitu namque uniuersi qui, ut
Waldomer to-be comrades by-chance for all who as
premissum est, ab illo deuiarunt paulo ante in ipsa planicie
set-forth-before it-is from him strayed a-little before in that-very plain
sibi inuicem occurrerant. Quibus ex insperato uisis,
to-themselves mutually had-met with-whom from unhoped-for seen
ultra quam credi potest Meriadocus exhilaratus est, quia
beyond than to-be-believed can Meriadoc gladdened was because
nunquam se eos recuperaturum crediderat. Milites igitur
never himself them about-to-recover he-had-believed the-knights therefore
ex inuencione ducis et dux ex militum recepcione
from the-finding of-the-leader and the-leader from of-the-knights the-recovery
letificati tractabant mutuo iam fore sibi capiendum
gladdened discussed mutually now to-be for-themselves to-be-taken
consilium, ne ulterius similia discrimina sua incuria
counsel lest further like perils by-their carelessness
incurrerent. Unde adinuicem conferentes, dum fere usque
they-should-incur whence with-each-other conferring while almost all-the-way
ad tria miliaria processissent, clamor et tumultus perualidus,
to three miles they-had-advanced a-shout and tumult very-strong
quasi bellancium strepitus, eorum auribus eminus insonuit.
as-if of-fighters a-din their in-the-ears from-afar sounded
Obstupefacti igitur uniuersi se circa ducem fuderunt, at
astounded therefore all themselves around the-leader poured but
Meriadocus, id quoque fantasticum esse existimans, remque
Meriadoc that also phantasmal to-be reckoning and-the-thing
prescire antequam ipse illo accederet cupiens, duos
to-know-beforehand before he thither should-approach desiring two
equites qui unde tantus clamor esset indagarent premisit.
horsemen who whence so-great a-shout was should-track-down sent-ahead

Illi autem interim, equis descensis, eorum reditum in loco
they moreover meanwhile with-horses dismounted their return in the-place
expectabant. Nunci[i] itaque festinantes qua tumultuancium
awaited the-messengers and-so hurrying where of-those-in-tumult
uoces perceperant iter arripiunt. Sed non longius abierant,
the-voices they-had-perceived the-way seize but not farther they-had-gone
cum silua egressi cruentas certancium cateruas pre
when from-the-wood gone-out bloody of-the-fighters companies before
se offenderunt totam quoquouersus terre superficiem
themselves they-came-upon the-whole on-every-side of-the-earth surface
cadaueribus occisorum stratam, riuulos effusi sanguinis
with-corpses of-the-slain strewn streams of-shed blood
toto campo diffluere. Puerum igitur quendam cominus
over-the-whole field to-flow a-boy therefore certain near
extra prelium stantem aduocant, a quo qui esse[n]t
outside the-battle standing they-call-over from whom who were
ille confligencium turme querunt. Quibus puer: "Exercitus
those of-the-clashing the-troops they-ask to-whom the-boy armies
sunt imperatoris et regis Gundebaldi." Ad hec illi "Quis"
they-are of-the-emperor and of-king Gundebald at this they who
inquiunt "ductor est imperialis excercitus?" Puer: "Tres
they-say leader is of-the-imperial army the-boy three
socii Meriadoci exercitui presunt, quos ipse pridie ad
comrades of-Meriadoc the-army command whom he the-day-before at
hostium spolia reliquerat, dum ipse Meriadocus Saguncium,
of-the-enemies the-spoils had-left while he Meriadoc Saguntius
ducem Gundebaldi, de bello fugientem persequeretur. Verum
the-leader of-Gundebald from battle fleeing pursued but
quia ipse Meriadocus statuto termino ad illos non rediit,
because he Meriadoc at-the-appointed term to them not returned
cum uniuerso quem regebant exercitu qua eum isse
with the-whole which they-ruled army where him to-have-gone

putabant uia compendiosiori in eius subsidium illum secuti
they-thought by-way shorter to his help him followed
sunt, uerentes ne aliquo tardaretur discrimine. Sed uiarum
have fearing lest by-some be-be-delayed peril but of-the-roads
inscij cum inconsultius fines hostium intrassent, a rege
ignorant when rather-rashly the-borders of-the-enemies they-had-entered by king
Guntranno, fratre Gundebaldi, qui in uicinis regnat, hodie
Guntram brother of-Gundebald who in the-neighboring reigns today
matutino tempore insidiis circumuenti sunt. Jamque, ut
in-the-morning time by-ambushes surrounded they-were and-now as
ipsimet cernere potestis, eorum usque ad internicionem
yourselves to-see you-can their all-the-way to slaughter
ceditur exercitus, illique iam tanto coartantur periculo,
is-cut-down army and-they now with-so-great are-pressed danger
ut in proximo aut morientes occumbent aut certe ducentur
that in the-near-future either dying they-will-fall or surely will-be-led
captiui; hostium quippe innumerabiles conuenere copie.
captive of-the-enemies indeed countless have-come-together forces
Verum nec uictoribus leta relinquitur uictoria; omnes enim
but nor to-the-victors glad is-left victory all for
ex aduersa parte nisi perpauci qui reliqui sunt iam
from the-opposite side except very-few who left are already
corruerunt. Quia tres prefati socii, scilicet Niger Miles de
have-fallen because the-three aforesaid comrades namely the-Black Knight of
Nigro Saltu et Roseus Miles de Roseo Saltu et Candidus
the-Black Glade and the-Rose Knight of the-Rose Glade and the-White
Miles de Candido Saltu, tanta uirtute in eos debac[c]hati
Knight of the-White Glade with-such valor against them raged
sunt, ut pocius leonum quam hominum illorum uideretur
have that rather of-lions than of-men their seemed
esse fortitudo."
to-be strength

Hiis auditis, a puero nuncij conciti ad Meriadocum
with-these heard from the-boy the-messengers roused to Meriadoc
reuertuntur eique audita referunt. Meriadocus autem,
return and-to-him the-heard-things report Meriadoc moreover
sociorum infortunium suum reputans, ducentos quos
of-(his)-comrades the-misfortune his-own reckoning the-two-hundred whom
secum habebat equites duas in turmas diuisit, nilque
with-himself he-had horsemen two into troops divided and-nothing
moratus, ad locum certaminis, nunciis precedentibus,
having-delayed to the-place of-the-contest with-the-messengers going-ahead
quam celer[r]ime properat. Quo ubi uentum est, haud
as swiftly-as-possible hastens where when come it-was not
procul tres socios suos ab hostibus circumuallatos iamque
far the-three comrades his by the-enemies walled-around and-already
capiendos uel interficiendos conspicit. Paucis igitur suos
to-be-captured or to-be-killed he-sees in-few(-words) therefore his-men
de pristina hortatus uirtute, aduersarios ab utroque latere
of former having-exhorted valor the-adversaries from each side
uiriliter iussit inuadere. Nec mora, clamore ualido sublato et
manfully he-ordered to-attack nor delay with-a-shout strong raised and
equis ad cursum concitatis, bifaria acie e silua inopini
with-horses to running roused in-twofold line from the-wood unexpected
excurrunt, hostes undique acriter inuadunt, inuasos
they-rush-out the-enemies from-everywhere fiercely attack the-attacked
dissipant, dissipatos partim capiunt, partim obtruncant,
scatter the-scattered partly capture partly cut-down
omnesque in fugam conuertunt captamque predam de
and-all into flight turn and-the-captured plunder from
manibus eorum excutiunt. Aduersarii namque eos plures
the-hands their shake-out the-adversaries for them more
quam erant subsidio uenisse putauerunt, ideoque primo
than they-were as-help to-have-come thought and-therefore at-the-first

eorum impetu statim terga uerterunt. Fuerant autem
their onset at-once (their)-backs turned had-been moreover
qui capti erant ex imperialibus septingenti quinquaginta
who captured were of the-imperials seven-hundred fifty
equites qui, hostium fuga excussi, eos qui se ceperant
horsemen who of-the-enemies by-the-flight shaken-free those who them had-captured
statim infestare ceperunt, et qui e bello fugientes
at-once to-harass began and who from the-battle fleeing
se in siluam receperant, hostes abactos uidentes, in
themselves into the-wood had-received the-enemies driven-off seeing into
campum reuersi sunt. Occisorum autem ex parte imperialium
the-field returned have of-the-slain moreover on the-side of-the-imperials
habebatur numerus ccccti xxxvi. Ceteri omnes salui.
was-held the-number four-hundred thirty-six the-rest all safe
Fugientibus igitur aduersariis, Meriadocus a tergo cum
with-the-adversaries therefore fleeing Meriadoc from behind with
suis truculentus insistit necemque miserandam ingerit. Omnes
his-men truculent presses-on and-death pitiable brings all
enim quos assequi poterant neci dabant. Cesus est igitur
for whom to-overtake they-could to-death they-gave cut-down was therefore
ab eis uniuersus regis Guntranni exercitus, ut nulle penitus
by them the-whole of-king Guntram army so-that no at-all
ex eo superessent reliquie. Ipse quoque Guntrannus fugiens
of it should-survive remnants he also Guntram fleeing
a Meriadoco anticipatus occiditur. Per cuius regnum suum
by Meriadoc forestalled is-killed through whose kingdom his
ilico duxit exercitum, omnia circumcirca ferro et flamma
at-once he-led army all all-around with-iron and flame
pessumdans. Potitus est igitur uniuersis municipiis eius
ruining gained-possession he-has therefore of-all towns his
et urbibus, quarum quasdam ui expugnauit, quasdam
and cities of-which some by-force he-stormed some

in dedicionem accepit. Prebebat autem larga stipendia
into surrender received he-provided moreover ample pay
suis militibus de hostium spoliis. Inierat autem cum
to-his knights from of-the-enemies the-spoils he-had-entered moreover with
sociis consilium, se minime ad imperatorem rediturum,
(his)-comrades counsel himself not-at-all to the-emperor about-to-return
nisi ante miris a se gestis. Mandauit tamen
unless first with-wonderful-things by himself done he-sent yet
imperatori bellorum euentus et queque a se gesta fuerant.
to-the-emperor of-the-wars the-outcomes and whatever by himself done had-been
Imperator uero, illum de singulari collaudans uirtute, rescripsit
the-emperor but him for singular praising valor wrote-back
ei, cun[c]ta que adquisi[u]erat uel adquisiturus foret in
to-him all-things which he-had-acquired or about-to-acquire was in
sua, prout uellet, potestate mansura, et, si filiam suam
his as he-wished power about-to-remain and if daughter his
quam rex Gundebaldus rapuerat eripere posset, se eam
whom king Gundebald had-seized to-snatch-back he-could himself her
sibi in matrimonio dotaturum diuiciasque et gloriam affatim
to-him in marriage about-to-dower and-riches and glory amply
collaturum. Quibus mandatis ab imperatore Meriadocus
about-to-confer with-which commands from the-emperor Meriadoc
acceptis nitendum sibi summo opere iudicabat, ut inceptam
received to-be-striven for-himself with-highest effort he-judged that the-begun
probitatem meliori fine concluderet, ne sua inercia perderet
prowess with-a-better end he-should-close lest by-his sloth he-should-lose
quod tanti honoris sibi a tanto offerebatur principe.
what of-so-great honor to-him by so-great was-offered a-prince
Igitur per ciuitates et castella que ceperat aptis locis
therefore through the-cities and castles which he-had-taken in-suitable places
dispositis suorum militum presidiis, ipse priuatus, usus
with-arranged of-his of-knights garrisons he private having-used

consilio, tantum cum tribus sociis suis, scilicet Nigro
counsel only with three comrades his namely the-Black
Milite de Nigro Saltu et Roseo Milite de Roseo Saltu et
Knight of the-Black Glade and the-Rose Knight of the-Rose Glade and
Candido Milite de Candido Saltu, in regnum Gundebaldi
the-White Knight of the-White Glade into the-kingdom of-Gundebald
regis proficiscitur; regna quippe horum duorum fratrum
the-king sets-out the-realms indeed of-these two brothers
collimitabantur, trium dierum interiecto itinere. Jam enim
bordered of-three days with-interposed journey already for
fama uirtutum eius usque ad aures filie imperatoris
the-fame of-the-virtues his all-the-way to the-ears of-the-daughter of-the-emperor
peruenerat. Ipsa quoque clanculo nuncios ad Meriadocum
had-come she also secretly messengers to Meriadoc
miserat, mandans ei, se ob probitates eius illum solum
had-sent bidding him herself for the-prowesses his him alone
diligere, ipsius amiciciam oppido appetere; et si ad eam
to-love his friendship greatly to-seek and if to her
uellet uenire, sua industria se e potestate Gundebaldi
he-wished to-come by-his industry herself from the-power of-Gundebald
eripere, insuper et regnum ipsius ualeret adquirere. Hoc
to-snatch moreover also the-kingdom his he-would-be-able to-acquire this
tamen ei per nuncios sepe inculcauit, ut, si ad se ueniret,
yet to-him through messengers often she-inculcated that if to her he-came
cum manu priuata accederet, dicens eum potius cautela
with a-band private he-should-approach saying him rather by-caution
quam uiribus id negocium ad effectum posse perducere.
than by-strength that business to effect to-be-able to-bring
Comparatis itaque uie necessariis, Meriadocus solummodo
with-prepared and-so for-the-way necessaries Meriadoc only
et tres socii eius iter ineunt. Errauerunt autem in siluam
and three comrades his the-way enter strayed moreover into a-wood

quamdam, quam transgressuri intrauerant, biduoque fame
certain which about-to-cross they-had-entered and-for-two-days with-hunger
affecti sunt, quia nulla hominum habitacio in uicino
afflicted were because no of-men dwelling in the-neighborhood
aderat, a quibus sibi necessaria emere poterant.
was-present from whom for-themselves necessaries to-buy they-could
Quinto demum die, in extrema hora nemoris, grex boum,
on-the-fifth at-last day in the-farthest edge of-the-grove a-herd of-oxen
quasi de pascuis domum reuertens, tempore uespertino ante
as-if from the-pastures home returning in-time evening before
se apparuit. Tunc Meriadocus ait Nigro Militi de Nigro
them appeared then Meriadoc says to-the-Black Knight of the-Black
Saltu: "Festinanter precede; collem qui ante nos eminet
Glade hastily go-before the-hill which before us towers
ascende; si locus sit quo diuertere hac nocte possimus
climb if a-place there-be where to-turn-aside this night we-may-be-able
inspice; hic quippe grex quem conspicimus non longius
look-at here indeed the-herd which we-see not farther
remota hominum repetunt habitacula." Niger igitur Miles de
remote of-men seek dwellings the-Black therefore Knight of
Nigro [Saltu], ut sibi iubebatur, precessit, montem ascendit,
the-Black Glade as to-him was-ordered went-before the-mountain climbed
circumspexit, rediit, clamauitque ad socios: "Venite;
looked-around returned and-cried to (his)-comrades come
ne moremini; urbs preclarissima muro circumdata trans
do-not delay a-city most-splendid with-a-wall surrounded across
montem habetur, cuius eciam suburbana firma concludunt
the-mountain is-held whose also suburbs strong enclose
menia." Colle itaque traiecto, hominem inuenerunt in
walls with-the-hill and-so crossed a-man they-found in
agro, a quo que et cuius urbs esset urbisque quesierunt
a-field from whom what and whose the-city was and-of-the-city they-asked

aditum. Responsum est ab eo urbem Gundebaldi regis
the-approach answered it-was by him the-city of-Gundebald the-king
et nobiliorem municioremque tocius regni ipsius esse,
and the-nobler and-better-fortified of-the-whole kingdom his to-be
ob cuius decorem et firmitatem filiam imperatoris quam
for whose beauty and strength the-daughter of-the-emperor whom
ceperat in eam posuisse in eamque clausam obseruare;
he-had-taken into it to-have-placed in and-it shut to-guard
portis autem ciuitatis sedulos continue custodes pre timore
at-the-gates moreover of-the-city diligent continually guards for fear
imperatoris presidere neminemque ab occasu solis usque
of-the-emperor to-preside and-no-one from the-setting of-the-sun all-the-way
ad ipsius ortum die sequenti urbem ingredi uel egredi
to its rising on-the-day following the-city to-enter or to-go-out
permittentes; si autem urbem uoluissent intrare, gregem
allowing if but the-city they-had-wished to-enter the-herd
boum precedentem sequerentur. Intrabat autem grex in
of-oxen going-ahead they-should-follow entered moreover the-herd into
suburbana per quandam portam paruulam. Secuti sunt
the-suburbs through a-certain gate small followed they-have
igitur armenta boum, atque suburbana subeuntes ad ualuas
therefore the-herds of-oxen and the-suburbs entering to the-doors
ciuitatis peruenerunt repagulis firmissime obseratas. Meriadocus
of-the-city they-came with-bars most-firmly bolted Meriadoc
autem aduocans ianitorem rogauit blande, ut sibi ianuas
moreover calling the-doorkeeper asked coaxingly that to-him the-doors
patefaceret. Ille uero tantummodo portarum aperto postico,
he-should-open he but only of-the-gates with-opened postern
“Cuiates” ait “estis? pacificene an exploratores?” Cui
of-what-country he-says are-you peaceful or spies to-whom
Meriadocus: “Ex Britonibus originem ducimus; regi
Meriadoc from the-Britons origin we-draw to-the-king

Britannie diu militauimus; pacifici sumus; ut regi Gundebaldo
of-Britain long we-have-served peaceful we-are that king Gundebald
seruiamus in hanc patriam uenimus, quem ab imperatore
we-may-serve into this country we-have-come whom by the-emperor
Alemannie grauari audiuimus. Si militibus indiget et
of-Germany to-be-burdened we-have-heard if of-knights he-has-need also
nostro seruicio, presto habemur ipsius parere imperio. Nos
our service ready we-are-held his to-obey command us
ergo intrare permitte." Contra ianitor: "Laudandi
therefore to-enter allow on-the-other-hand the-doorkeeper to-be-praised
quidem estis, quod ad subsidium domini mei uenistis,
indeed you-are that to the-help of-lord my you-have-come
cui talium uirorum non parua incumbit necessitas. Verum
on-whom of-such men not small presses need but
propter fraudes imperialium sibi assidue insidiancium ab
on-account-of the-frauds of-the-imperials for-him constantly lying-in-ambush by
ipso uetitum est, aliquem extraneum hanc ingredi ciuitatem,
him forbidden it-is any stranger this to-enter city
nisi ex precepto oris ipsius uel prefecti, quem ad
unless by command of-the-mouth his or of-the-prefect whom for
tuendam reliquit ciuitatem. Rex quippe longius tridie
guarding he-left the-city the-king indeed farther for-three-days
infra suum regnum profectus est, dimisitque in hac urbe
within his kingdom set-out has and-left in this city
filiam imperatoris, quam ui abduxit, ut ipsa eum
the-daughter of-the-emperor whom by-force he-carried-off as she him
rogauit, ob cuius ereptionem cotidie pene milites imperatoris
asked for whose rescue daily almost the-knights of-the-emperor
per hanc discurrunt prouinciam et uariante fortuna plurime
through this run-about province and with-varying fortune very-many
hinc inde fiunt congressiones. Qua de re claustra
on-this-side on-that are-made encounters which about matter the-bolts

urbis arcius obseruantur, ne aliqua incuria hosti pateat
of-the-city more-strictly are-watched lest by-any carelessness to-the-enemy lie-open
aditus. Vos autem ite et uobis in suburbano hospicia
an-approach you but go and for-yourselves in the-suburb lodgings
capite, donec rex redierit uel cum prefecto huius
take until the-king will-have-returned or with the-prefect of-this
urbis locuti fueritis. Cui Meriadocus "Immo" ait "tu ad
city spoken you-shall-have to-whom Meriadoc nay he-says you to
prefectum uade et renuncia illi quatuor milites ante ualuas
the-prefect go and announce to-him four knights before the-doors
stare urbisque precari ingressum; simul et cur aduenerimus
to-stand and-of-the-city to-beg entrance together and why we-have-come
ei insinua." Ad hec ianitor "Non faciam," respondit
to-him intimate to this the-doorkeeper not I-shall-do-it he-answered
"quia non mihi uacat et porte iam sunt claudende.
because not for-me there-is-leisure and the-gates already are to-be-closed
Discedite hinc ad hospicium uestrum. Procacia uestra uos
depart from-here to lodging your boldness your you
aliquas demonstrat machinari insidias." Quo dicto, cum
some shows to-contrive ambushes with-which said when
posticum claudere uellet, Meriadocus equo prosiliens
the-postern to-close he-wished Meriadoc from-(his)-horse leaping-down
"Obsecro" ait, "amice, tria uerba mecum secrecius ad tuum
I-beseech he-says friend three words with-me more-secretly to your
prefectum loquere." Janitore uero negante et posticum
prefect speak with-the-doorkeeper but refusing and the-postern
claudere festinante, Meriadocus, aduertens neminem cum eo
to-close hurrying Meriadoc noticing no-one with him
infra ianuas adesse, pede dextro tam fortiter posticum
within the-doors to-be-present with-foot right so strongly the-postern
impulit, ut et ipsum ianitorem postico impulsum solo
drove that also the-very doorkeeper by-the-postern struck on-the-ground

resupinum prosterneret. Introque fremebundus irrumpens,
on-his-back he-laid-low and-within roaring bursting
ipsum per tempora cor[r]eptum foras extraxit atque in
him by the-temples seized outside dragged and into
rapidum flumen, quo urbs ambiebatur, proiecit. Deinde
the-rapid river by-which the-city was-surrounded threw then
introgressus portas aperuit et socios urbem intrare fecit.
having-entered the-gates opened and (his)-comrades the-city to-enter made

THE PRINCESS'S PLAN

The emperor's daughter, ruling the city in Gundebald's absence, receives Meriadoc, who gives a false name, and keeps him two days. She tells him of her captivity and of Gundebald's custom: he tests every knight who would serve him in single combat on the narrow causeway to his palace on the marsh island called the land from which no one returns, and he has thrown every one into the marsh. She promises him Gundebald's own arms and the brother of Gundebald's horse.

Dum hec ab illis geruntur, fortuitu filia imperatoris
while these-things by them are-done by-chance the-daughter of-the-emperor
in turri muris contigua ad superiores fenestrarum absides
in the-tower to-the-walls adjoining at the-upper of-the-windows arches
cum duabus puellis stabat, hinc uirorem pratorum, fluenta
with two girls stood here the-greenness of-the-meadows the-streams
fluminum, illinc amenitatem se spaciando despectans
of-the-rivers there the-pleasantness herself diverting looking-down-on
nemorum. Que, uniuersa que ad ualuas urbis acta sunt
of-the-groves who all-things which at the-doors of-the-city done were
intuita, statim cepit coniecturare ipsum esse Meriadocum
having-watched at-once began to-conjecture him to-be Meriadoc
qui tantum facinoris perpetrare ausus fuisset. Verita igitur
who so-great a-deed to-perpetrate dared had having-feared therefore

ne a ciuibus res gesta comperiretur, sine mora nuncium
lest by the-citizens the-thing done be-discovered without delay the-messenger
quem ante ad Meriadocum miserat clanculo acciuit, portas
whom before to Meriadoc she-had-sent secretly she-summoned the-gates
urbis adire celerrime precepit, qui essent quos pre illis
of-the-city to-approach most-swiftly ordered who they-were whom before them
stare uiderat inquisiturum. Nuncius festinauit, ualuas peciit,
to-stand she-had-seen about-to-inquire the-messenger hastened the-doors sought
re inuestigata ad dominam rediit, Meriadocum adesse
with-the-thing investigated to (his)-mistress returned Meriadoc to-be-present
nunciauit. Remittitur nuncius festinanter, Meriadocum ad
announced is-sent-back the-messenger hastily Meriadoc to
castellum perducturus. Mandauit autem illi, ut diceret,
the-castle about-to-lead she-bade moreover him that he-should-say
mutato nomine, se regi militaturum aduenisse. Rex
with-changed name himself for-the-king about-to-serve to-have-come the-king
autem, ut predixi, remocius profectus fuerat. Prefectus quoque
moreover as I-said-before more-remotely set-out had the-prefect also
ad regalia exercenda negocia eadem die urbem exierat.
for royal to-be-exercised business on-the-same day the-city had-gone-out
Filia uero imperatoris, ut domina, urbi presidebat,
the-daughter but of-the-emperor as mistress over-the-city presided
cuius iussionibus animo libenciori quam ipsius regis omnes
whose commands with-mind more-willing than of-the-very king all
ciues obsecundabant. Meriadocus igitur, castellum ingressus,
citizens obeyed Meriadoc therefore the-castle having-entered
filiam imperatoris cum considentibus lepide salutauit,
the-daughter of-the-emperor with those-sitting-with elegantly greeted
suumque interrogantibus nomen mentitus, regi subsidio
and-his to-those-asking name having-falsified for-the-king as-help
se aduentasse cum sociis astruebat. Exceptus est
himself to-have-come with (his)-comrades asserted received was

autem ab illa coram aliis, ut extraneus, sed post refeccionem
moreover by her before others as a-stranger but after the-refreshment
cene, quibusque militum sua hospicia petentibus, puella,
of-the-supper with-each of-the-knights their lodgings seeking the-girl
cum sui consilii consciis remanens, eum introduxit thalamis
with of-her counsel the-confidants remaining him led-into the-chambers
omnibusque refocillauit deliciis. Cui, cum uniersa que circa
and-with-all refreshed delights to-whom when all-things which about
imperatorem et a se gesta erant narrasset, "Mecum"
the-emperor and by herself done were she-had-related with-me
ait illa "O Meriadoce, hiis duobus perhendinabis diebus;
says she O Meriadoc these two you-will-stay days
tercio quo te misero proficisceris."
on-the-third on-which you I-shall-have-sent you-will-set-out
Moratus est igitur apud illam Meriadocus duobus diebus
stayed has therefore with her Meriadoc for-two days
omnique gaudio et delectacione recreatus est. Die
and-with-every joy and delight refreshed was with-the-day
autem tercio illucescente, Meriadocum illa aduocauit, cui et
moreover third dawning Meriadoc she summoned to-whom also
hec locuta est: "Patens tibi est, Meriadoce, me a rege
these-things spoken she-has plain to-you it-is Meriadoc me by king
Gundebaldo ui captam et ui a patre, iam triennium
Gundebald by-force captured and by-force from (my)-father already three-years
est, abductam. Nec tamen me quasi captiuam sed uelut filiam,
it-is carried-off nor yet me as-if a-captive but as a-daughter
immo eciam ut dominam, semper hactenus habuit. Tocius
nay even as a-mistress always hitherto he-has-held of-the-whole
enim sui regni principatus meis subiacet iussionibus atque ad
for of-his kingdom the-principality to-my lies-under commands and to
meum nutum uniuersa eius precipua pendent negocia. Ipsemet
my nod all his chief hang affairs himself

rex mee uoluntati in omnibus obsequitur, nec est quod
the-king to-my will in all-things complies nor there-is what
uelit patrare quod menti mee obesse nouerit. Verum
he-would-wish to-accomplish which to-mind my to-be-contrary he-knows but
licet mihi pro uoto suppetant omnia, meam tamen mihi
although to-me according-to wish all-things be-at-hand my yet to-me
conscienciam semper captiuitatis remordet iniuria; unde mihi
conscience always of-captivity gnaws the-injury whence to-me
regnum est pro carcere, diuiciarum copias inopiam reputo,
the-kingdom is for a-prison of-riches the-abundance poverty I-reckon
honor et gloria mihi uidentur dolor et augustia, nec est
honor and glory to-me seem grief and anguish nor there-is
aliquid quod meo sedeat animo, quamdiu tenear sub captiuitatis
anything which to-my sits mind as-long-as I-am-held under of-captivity
uinculo. Nitendum est igitur ut hinc eripiar, quia gratius
the-chain to-be-striven it-is therefore that hence I-be-snatched because more-pleasing
est mihi eciam cum miseriis mori libera quam cum omnibus
it-is to-me even with miseries to-die free than with all
deliciis uiuere captiua. Ad quod efficiendum neminem te
delights to-live captive for which to-be-accomplished no-one than-you
magis scio idoneum, quia qui tot probitatum singulari
more I-know fit because who of-so-many prowesses by-singular
uirtute es assecutus insignia certa sum te meum uelle
valor you-have obtained the-marks sure I-am you my wish
completurum, si ad hoc uolenti animo erigaris. Duo autem
about-to-fulfill if to this with-willing mind you-be-roused two moreover
sunt que huic rei maxime suffragantur. Unum autem
there-are things-which this matter most favor one moreover
est, quod in re militari sollers haberis et strenuus, et,
is that in the-matter military skillful you-are-held and vigorous and
ut puto, solus inuentus es, qui Gundebaldi incomparabilem
as I-think alone found you-are who of-Gundebald the-incomparable

conterat fortitudinem, qui in rebus bellicis nunquam sui
may-crush strength who in things warlike never of-himself
parem inuenit. Aliud est quod ipse rex Gundebaldus ob
the-equal has-found the-other is that himself the-king Gundebald for
morum peruersitatem et importabilem tirannidem uniuersis
of-manners perversity and unbearable tyranny to-all
sui regni ciuibus odiosus habetur, tuaque fama audita,
of-his kingdom citizens hateful is-held and-with-your fame heard
tuum aduentum ardentibus animis hactenus affectauerunt.
your coming with-burning minds hitherto have-longed-for
Rem autem quo te docuero aggredieris ordine.
the-thing moreover in-what you I-shall-have-taught you-will-undertake order
"Curiam ipsius Gundebaldi a me digressus adibis,
the-court of-that-very Gundebald from me departed you-will-approach
quodque sub eius stipendiis militaturus aduenerис ei
and-that under his pay about-to-serve you-have-come to-him
intimabis. Set sunt quedam in quibus te premunitum
you-will-intimate but there-are certain-things in which you forewarned
esse desidero. Ipse Gundebaldus incomparabilis exstat uirtutis,
to-be I-desire he Gundebald of-incomparable stands valor
cui mos huiusmodi noscitur hactenus fuisse, ut nullum
of-whom custom of-this-kind is-known hitherto to-have-been that none
sibi militari cupientem consorcio sue admiserit milicie,
for-himself to-serve wishing to-the-fellowship of-his he-has-admitted army
antequam quarum esset uirium ipsemet singulari congressione
before of-what he-was strength he-himself in-single combat
fuerit expertus. Est autem ei quedam insula, quindecim
had tested there-is moreover to-him a-certain island fifteen
ex omni parte patens miliariis, super Rheni fluminis
on every side extending miles on of-the-Rhine river
ripas sita, terra de qua nemo reuertitur nuncupata; ex
the-banks situated the-land from which no-one returns named from

cuius uocabulo ipse cognominatus est rex terre de
whose name he-himself surnamed has-been the-king of-the-land from
qua nemo reuertitur. Que quidem insula idcirco terra
which no-one returns which indeed island for-this-reason the-land
de qua nemo reuertitur dicta cognoscitur, quod sit tota
from which no-one returns called is-known because it-is all
palus perpetua, omni destituta soliditate, que nec hominum
marsh perpetual of-all bereft solidity which neither of-men
nec pecudum umquam tulerit uestigia; omnis quippe illius
nor of-cattle ever has-borne the-footprints all indeed of-that
superficies insule ad instar bituminis liquescit et defluit
the-surface island in the-likeness of-bitumen melts and flows-away
mollicie, nulla firmitate subnixa, ut pocius liquidum bitumen
with-softness by-no firmness supported that rather liquid bitumen
quam solidam terram iudices. Inde est — quia quicquid
than solid earth you-would-judge thence it-is that whatever
illam ingreditur statim mergitur — terra de qua nemo
it enters at-once is-sunk the-land from which no-one
reuertitur merito nuncupatur. Non herbas gignit, non arbores
returns deservedly it-is-called not grasses it-begets not trees
nec aliquid quod uitalem spiret animam. Eiusdem latitudinis
nor anything which vital may-breathe soul of-the-same breadth
cuius et longitudinis est. In medio tamen ipsius, quasi
of-which also length it-is in the-middle yet of-it as-if
in puncto centri, pene miliarium et semis terra solida
at the-point of-the-center almost a-mile and a-half the-land solid
est; quem locum, municioni congruum et inexpungnabilem
is which place for-fortification suitable and impregnable
Gundebaldus considerans, mira arte et industria uiam
Gundebald considering with-wonderful art and industry a-way
permeabilem per mediam paludem ad illum usque direxit.
passable through the-middle marsh to it all-the-way directed

Longissimis enim trabibus centenorum pedum sibique
with-very-long for beams of-a-hundred feet and-to-each-other
more complium ex aduerso incastratis paludi
in-the-manner of-joints from opposite mortised into-the-marsh
spisso ordine et directo infixis, alios pedis crassitudinem
in-thick order and straight fixed others of-a-foot thickness
habentes super capita eorum contabulari fecit. Has quoque
having upon the-heads of-them to-be-boarded he-made these also
contabulaciones lapidibus strauit, ut natura pocius quam ars
floorings with-stones he-paved that nature rather than art
uiam uideatur effecisse. Secat autem insulam a quatuor
the-way may-seem to-have-made cuts moreover the-island from four
partibus per medium in modum crucis porrecta, cuius
parts through the-middle in the-manner of-a-cross stretched whose
partes coeunt in predictam solidam continentem in medio
parts meet in the-aforesaid solid mainland in the-middle
loco sitam, in qua ipse Gundebaldus aulam uenusti
place situated in which he-himself Gundebald a-hall of-charming
operis construxit, [h]ortum diuersarum arborum fructuumque
work built a-garden of-various trees and-fruits
conseruit et aquarum riuulos diriuauit. Quam aulam fere
planted and of-waters streams drew-off which hall almost
semper dum pacis fruitur ocio frequentat, ubi et omnes
always while of-peace he-enjoys the-leisure he-frequents where also all
suos congessit thesauros. A quatuor autem lateribus quatuor
his he-has-heaped treasures on four moreover sides four
castella insulam muniunt, scilicet quibus locis uiarum capita
castles the-island fortify namely in-which places of-the-roads the-ends
ab insula exeunt. Sed predicta semita artissima est, ut
from the-island go-out but the-aforesaid path most-narrow is so-that
obuiantes non capiat, trium pedum porrecta in latitudinem.
those-meeting not it-holds of-three feet stretched in breadth

Nam paludis profunditas et inconstancia laciorem fieri
for of-the-marsh the-depth and instability broader to-be-made
minime passa est. Gundebaldus igitur, ut premonstraui, dum
not-at-all allowed has Gundebald therefore as I-have-shown-before when
ad se uenientes milites et sibi seruire cupientes probare
to himself coming knights and him to-serve wishing to-test
desiderat, ipse aulam prescriptam armatus petit, militem ad
he-desires he-himself the-hall above-described armed seeks the-knight at
quodlibet unum ex quatuor castellis statuit; deinde, admissis
any one of the-four castles he-places then with-horses
equis, in arta semita inuicem congrediuntur. Verum
let-go in the-narrow path with-each-other they-clash but
omnes qui cum eo hactenus conflixerunt ipse prostrauit atque
all who with him hitherto have-fought he has-laid-low and
in profundam paludem nunquam resurrecturos deiecit.
into the-deep marsh never about-to-rise-again has-thrown-down
Est quippe uir nulli probitate posterior, habens sonipedem
he-is indeed a-man to-no-one in-prowess inferior having a-steed
generosum et precipuum, cuius solius ualore multos
noble and outstanding whose alone by-the-worth many
egregios milites ille deuicerit et prostrauerit. Certus itaque
excellent knights he has-conquered and laid-low sure and-so
sis te cum illo oportere congredi et te ei minime
be you with him to-be-fitting to-clash and you to-him not-at-all
posse resistere, si prefato equo uectus tibi occurrerit,
to-be-able to-resist if on-the-aforesaid horse carried you he-shall-have-met
nisi meo muniaris a[m]miniculo. Habeo namque apud me
unless with-my you-be-armed support I-have for with me
sonipedem quem Gundebaldus mihi commendauit, fratrem
a-steed which Gundebald to-me entrusted the-brother
alterius sonipedis quem ipse secum detinet sed illo
of-the-other steed which he with-himself keeps but than-that

multo ualenciorem et egregiorem. Preclara quoque ipsius
much stronger and more-excellent splendid also his
arma penes me seruantur, que una cum pretaxato equo
arms with me are-kept which together with the-aforementioned horse
tibi tradam, quibus munitus ipsius occursum secure
to-you I-shall-hand-over with-which armed his encounter securely
poteris recipere. Videas ergo ut te probe strenueque
you-will-be-able to-receive see therefore that you uprightly and-vigorously
contineas, quia uita et salus utriusque nostrum ex hoc
conduct-yourself because the-life and safety of-each of-us on this
pendet negocio. Si tibi successerit, et mihi succedet; si
hangs business if for-you it-shall-have-succeeded also for-me it-will-succeed if
quid aduersi incurreris, et me casus idem manebit."
anything adverse you-shall-have-incurred also me the-fate same will-await

GUNDEBALD'S FALL; THE EMPEROR'S PLOT

Mounted on the Arabian horse, Meriadoc meets Gundebald on the causeway; the king, seeing the horse, knows himself betrayed, and Meriadoc throws him with his horse into the marsh, where they vanish. By the king's oath the courtiers accept Meriadoc, and the princes give him the kingdom, though they will submit to the emperor only if the emperor gives him his daughter. The emperor, hard pressed by the king of Gaul, promises her to that king instead and plots against Meriadoc.

Hiis dictis, suffusa lacrimis dextrarium e claustris quibus
these-things said suffused with-tears the-warhorse from the-stalls in-which
tenebatur fecit produci Arabicum, forma, pulcritudine,
it-was-held she-made to-be-brought-forth an-Arabian in-form beauty
decore et ualore sola regia sella dignum. Erat enim capite
grace and worth only of-a-royal saddle worthy it-was for with-head
paruo et macilento, acutis et erectis auribus, collo lato
small and lean with-sharp and erect ears with-neck broad

spisso et neruoso, corpore plano et producto, iliis
thick and sinewy with-body level and long with-flanks
stricciorib̃us, pectore diffuso, crassis clunibus et rotundis,
narrower with-breast spread with-thick haunches and round
cauda protensa crispa et demissa, tibiis grossis et
with-tail stretched curly and hanging-down with-shanks stout and
ualentibus, magnis pedibus, firmis ungulis, uiuaci gestu,
strong with-great feet with-firm hoofs with-lively bearing
magnarum uirium, lenis motus, cursu uelocissimus, tante
of-great strength of-gentle movement in-running most-swift of-such
mansuetudinis, ut manu pueri posset circumflecti. Hunc
gentleness that by-the-hand of-a-boy it-could be-turned-around this
equum falleris quibus condecebat co[m]ptum et ornatum
horse with-the-trappings with-which it-befitted groomed and adorned
iussit Meriadocum ascendere, supradictis regis armis
she-ordered Meriadoc to-mount with-the-above-said of-the-king arms
ei contraditis. Mutuo igitur ualedicto, Meriadocus ad
to-him handed-over with-mutual therefore farewell Meriadoc to
regem tendere cum sociis cepit. Quem apud unum e
the-king to-make-his-way with (his)-comrades began whom at one of
quatuor castellis insulam cingentibus reperiens, ea condicione
the-four castles the-island girding finding on-that condition
ab eo suscipitur, ut, si singularem illius congressum perferre
by him he-is-received that if the-single his encounter to-endure
ualuisset, numero ipsius ascriberetur milicie. Quid
he-should-have-been-able to-the-number of-his he-should-be-ascribed army what
plura? Dies statuitur, quo inuicem congrederentur.
more the-day is-appointed on-which with-each-other they-should-clash
Occultabat autem Meriadocus sonipedem usque ad diem
hid moreover Meriadoc the-steed all-the-way to the-day
congressionis, iuxta preceptum puelle, ne a Gundebaldo
of-the-clash according-to the-instruction of-the-girl lest by Gundebald

comperiretur. Numquam enim Gundebaldus cum eo certamen
it-be-discovered never for Gundebald with him combat
inisset, si illum equum Meriadocum habere cognouisset.
would-have-entered if that horse Meriadoc to-have he-had-known
Duelli dies aduenerat et uterque se ad certamen preparat.
of-the-duel the-day had-come and each himself for the-contest prepares
Rex ab aula in insula sita, Meriadocus a proximo
the-king from the-hall in the-island situated Meriadoc from the-nearest
castello armatus progreditur. Verum ubi appropinquauerunt
castle armed advances but when they-came-near
et rex Gundebaldus suum sonipedem aduertit, confestim
and king Gundebald his steed noticed at-once
expaluit, omneque robur ipsius emarcuit; in sortibus quippe
he-grew-pale and-all strength his withered in the-lots indeed
acceperat se ab illo solo uincendum qui sibi singulari
he-had-received himself by him alone to-be-conquered who him in-single
pungna illo equo uectus occurrisset. Non tamen erat tunc
fight on-that horse carried should-have-met not yet was then
tempus penitendi nec locus periculum euitandi, quia, ut
the-time for-repenting nor the-place the-danger for-avoiding because that
alter libere transiret, alterum deici ante erat necesse.
the-one freely might-cross the-other to-be-thrown-down first was necessary
Tota igitur res solis consistebat uiribus. Hec tamen
the-whole therefore matter on-alone consisted strength these-things yet
horrenda uoce intonuit, se ab illis proditum in quibus
with-horrible voice he-thundered himself by those betrayed in whom
maxime confidebat, subiu[n]xitque: "Meriadoce, Meriadoce,
most he-trusted and-added Meriadoc Meriadoc
nunc primum quis sis agnosco. Tua cum puella amicicia
now first who you-are I-recognize your with the-girl friendship
supplantauit me." Meriadocus autem eius dicta non attendens,
has-supplanted me Meriadoc moreover his words not attending

a[d]misso equo, demissa lancea, eum uiriliter impulit, atque
with-given-rein horse with-lowered lance him manfully thrust and
cum equo in unum globum, uersis uestigiis, in paludem
with (his)-horse into one ball with-turned footsteps into the-marsh
deiecit. Absor[p]tique sunt ambo, scilicet rex cum sonipede,
threw-down and-swallowed-up were both namely the-king with (his)-steed
in profundo bituminis nec unquam postea uisi sunt.
in the-depth of-the-bitumen nor ever afterward seen they-were
Rege igitur Gundebaldo in palude submerso, quia
with-the-king therefore Gundebald in the-marsh drowned because
propter uie artitudinem equum Meriadocus circumflectere
on-account-of of-the-way the-narrowness (his)-horse Meriadoc to-turn-around
minime poterat, usque ad aulam progressus est. Ex
not-at-all could all-the-way to the-ball advanced has at
cuius aduentu milites, custodes palacii, regis interitum
whose coming the-knights guards of-the-palace of-the-king the-death
cognoscentes, sine mora in ultionem domini in eum
learning without delay for vengeance of-(their)-lord against him
unanimes irruissent, ni pacta condicio et lex statuta
unanimous would-have-rushed had-not the-agreed condition and the-law appointed
uetuissent. Sanctitum namque inter regem et Meriadocum
forbidden sanctioned for between the-king and Meriadoc
iureiurando, suo uniuerso audiente exercitu, fuerat, ut,
by-oath with-his whole hearing army it-had-been that
si, illo deuicto, Meriadocus uictor existeret, ob ipsius
if with-him conquered Meriadoc victor should-stand for his
necem nil prorsus mali a suorum quoquam pateretur,
death nothing at-all of-evil from of-his-men anyone he-should-suffer
et, quia herede carebat, suo quoque libere potiretur
and because of-an-heir he-lacked his also freely he-should-gain-possession
imperio; tot quippe ante Meriadocum secum confligentes
command so-many indeed before Meriadoc with-him fighting

prostrauerat, ut nec ipsum quidem sibi posse resistere
he-had-laid-low that not him indeed to-himself to-be-able to-resist
certus extiterit, ideoque pactum huiusmodi quasi pro ridiculo
sure he-was and-therefore a-pact of-this-kind as-if for a-joke
cum eo inierit. Sed longe aliter quam sperabatur contigit.
with him he-entered but far otherwise than was-hoped it-happened
Aulici igitur, tum condicione sanctita constricti, tum eius
the-courtiers therefore both by-the-condition sanctioned constrained and his
probitatem admirati, non solum ei nocere cauerunt, uerum
prowess admiring not only him to-harm took-care-not but
eciam cum ingenti ipsum laude susceperunt, ut dominum
also with huge him praise received as lord
acclamantes illum dignum imperio, qui uirum contriuerit,
acclaiming him worthy of-command who the-man had-crushed
cuius impetum neminem umquam ferre potuisse constabat.
whose onset no-one ever to-bear to-have-been-able it-was-agreed
Arma itaque thesaurosque ei contradunt. Mittit confestim
the-arms and-so and-the-treasures to-him they-hand-over he-sends at-once
pro sociis ad castellum de quo ad bellum egressus
for (his)-comrades to the-castle from which to the-fight gone-out
est. Nunciatur quoque res gesta per reliqua oppida
has is-announced also the-thing done through the-remaining towns
confinia. Conueniunt ad Meriadocum principes; coadunantur
neighboring come-together to Meriadoc the-princes are-joined
militum cohortes; in regni gubernatorem ab omnibus
of-knights the-cohorts as of-the-kingdom governor by all
assumitur, summaque rerum potestas ei conceditur. Dedisur
he-is-taken-up and-the-highest of-things power to-him is-granted is-given
illi uniuersa prouincia; tocius regni cessit potencia.
to-him the-whole province of-the-whole kingdom yielded the-power
Meriadocus autem, eorum liberalitati et munificencie debitas
Meriadoc moreover their to-the-generosity and munificence due

gracias referens condignisque muneribus singulos remunerans,
thanks returning and-with-worthy gifts each rewarding
illis in commune insinuat, quod miles sit imperatoris;
to-them in common intimates that a-knight be-is of-the-emperor
quod ab eo ad subiugandos hostes directus; quod hiis rebus
that by him for subjugating enemies sent that in-these things
maxime suam operam adhibuerit, ut filiam imperatoris
most his effort he-had-applied that the-daughter of-the-emperor
a captiuitate excuteret; quod quicquid illis in regionibus
from captivity he-might-shake-out that whatever those in regions
adquisisset uiribus et nomini imperatoris ascriberet; quod
he-had-acquired to-the-strength and name of-the-emperor he-ascribed that
imperator sibi filiam se in matrimonio daturum, si eam
the-emperor to-him (his)-daughter himself in marriage about-to-give if her
e Gundebaldi posset manibus eripere, spoponderit; propter
from of-Gundebald he-could the-hands to-snatch had-promised on-account-of
que omnia oportere se consensu, consilio et ordinacione
which all-things to-be-fitting himself by-the-consent counsel and ordering
imperatoris agere, que agenda erant super regnorum que
of-the-emperor to-do what to-be-done were about of-the-kingdoms which
assecutus fuerat regimine. Ad hec principes ex communi
obtained he-had the-rule to these-things the-princes by common
responderunt consultu, se nichil imperatori debere; se
answered counsel themselves nothing to-the-emperor to-owe themselves
nichil ex ipso tenere; se nunquam sub eius dicione
nothing from him to-hold themselves never under his sway
fuisse; se nec timore nec uiribus imperatoris sibi
to-have-been themselves neither by-fear nor by-the-strength of-the-emperor to-him
cessisse. Si traditum a se principatum in antiqua
to-have-yielded if the-handed-over by them principality in ancient
libertate uellet tueri, gratum illius sibi foret dominium;
freedom he-wished to-protect pleasing his to-them would-be the-lordship

si sub imperatoris deliberaret transferre imperium, iret
if under of-the-emperor he-decided to-transfer the-command he-should-go
quo uellet, ut uenerat; ipsi sibi alium regem preficerent.
where he-wished as he-had-come they for-themselves another king would-set-over
Dum hoc inter eos diu uentilatum fuisset, tandem in hac
while this among them long aired had-been at-last in this
se[n]tencia consenserunt principes, ut, si imperator ei suam
opinion agreed the-princes that if the-emperor to-him his
filiam in coniugium traderet, regnum suum imperatoris
daughter in marriage should-hand-over kingdom their of-the-emperor
dicioni subigi non refutarent; sin autem, id nullo
to-the-sway to-be-subjected not they-would-refuse but-if-not moreover that in-no
modo fieri paterentur. Tali fine conuentus soluitur.
way to-be-done they-would-allow with-such an-end the-assembly is-dissolved
Meriadocus autem, munitis undecumque urbibus et castellis,
Meriadoc moreover with-fortified everywhere cities and castles
ad puellam rediit, a qua cum magna triumphali pompa
to the-girl returned by whom with great triumphal pomp
magnisque occurrencium est exceptus preconiis.
and-great of-those-meeting he-has-been received with-proclamations
Dum autem Meriadocus in hiis esset occupatus negociis,
while moreover Meriadoc in these was occupied affairs
ingens bellum inter imperatorem et regem Gallie exoritur,
a-huge war between the-emperor and the-king of-Gaul arises
quo imperatorem ualde comprimi et coartari contigit.
by-which the-emperor greatly to-be-pressed and to-be-confined it-happened
Rex quippe Gallie ex inprouiso super eum ducens
the-king indeed of-Gaul from unforeseen upon him leading
exercitum, longe lateque eius depeculiatus prouincias, quasdam
an-army far and-wide his despoiled provinces some
quoque preclaras urbes et municipia expugnauit, ciues
also splendid cities and towns stormed citizens

captiuauit, reliqua omnia ferro et flamma pessumdans. Tres
captured remaining all-things with-iron and flame ruining three
eciam ipsius duces cum maxima multitudine sibi occurrentes
also his leaders with a-very-great multitude him meeting
prostrauit omnemque eorum usque ad internicionem fudit
laid-low and-all their all-the-way to slaughter routed
exercitum. Imminente igitur sibi rege et assidua
army with-pressing therefore on-him the-king and with-constant
infestacione incumbente, compulsus est imperator cum eo
harassment pressing compelled was the-emperor with him
pacem firmare talique condicione inire concordiam, ut
peace to-confirm and-on-such condition to-enter concord that
filiam suam quam Gundebaldo Meriadocus eripuerat maritali
daughter his whom from-Gundebald Meriadoc had-snatched by-marital
lege coniungeret, concessis ei omnibus que de suo imperio
law he-would-join with-granted to-him all-things which from his empire
armis optinuerat; iam quippe ei Meriadocus uniersa a
by-arms he-had-obtained already indeed to-him Meriadoc all-things by
se gesta scripto innotuerat. Cauit autem diligentissime
himself done in-writing had-made-known took-care moreover most-diligently
imperator ne quod cum rege Gallie super filie sue
the-emperor lest what with the-king of-Gaul about of-the-daughter his
desponsacione conuenerat ullo modo Meriadoco patefieret;
the-betrothal he-had-agreed in-any way to-Meriadoc be-disclosed
unde et ad huius rei noticiam non nisi consiliarios suos
whence also to of-this thing the-knowledge not except counselors his
quemquam admiserat. Nouerat enim probitatem Meriadoci et
anyone he-had-admitted he-knew for the-prowess of-Meriadoc and
quantum in re militari ualeret quantumque iam sibi
how-much in the-matter military he-was-strong and-how-much already to-him
ex duobus regnis que adquisi[u]erat robur accreuisset. Studuit
from the-two kingdoms which he-had-acquired strength had-grown he-strove

itaque eum fraude circumuenire, qua filiam suam de
and-so him by-fraud to-get-around by-which daughter his from
manibus eius auferre ipsumque sui potestati posset subigere.
the-hands his to-take-away and-him his to-the-power he-could to-subject

THE FALSE CHARGE

The emperor summons Meriadoc with his daughter and his princes, shuts her in a tower, and spies on them. Before his council he accuses Meriadoc of having violated and made pregnant the daughter he meant to give him, and armed men seize Meriadoc and his companions; his army is taken in its quarters. The daughter is nearly driven to kill herself, but trusts that Meriadoc, if he can escape, will repay the traitors.

Hec imperatur apud se et cum amicis deliberans duos
these-things the-emperor with himself and with friends deliberating two
nobilissimos proceres, xl suo in comitatu milites habentes, ad
most-noble nobles forty his in retinue knights having to
Meriadocum cum suis signatis direxit apicibus, quibus primum
Meriadoc with his sealed sent letters in-which first
Meriadocum laude efferebat multiplici, illum patronum et
Meriadoc with-praise he-extolled manifold him the-patron and
tutorem sui sepe clamitans imperii. Deinde dignas laboribus
protector of-his often crying-out empire then worthy of-the-labors
ipsius remuneraciones promittebat; quedam quoque de
his rewards he-promised certain-things also about
propriis negociis que circa se uersabantur interserebat. Ad
his-own affairs which around him were-turning he-inserted at
ultimum uero mandabat et precipiebat illum sine dilacione
the-last but he-bade and commanded him without delay
ad se properare, suam filiam cum principibus utriusque
to himself to-hasten his daughter with the-princes of-each

regni adducere, tum quia eam uisendi nimio detinebatur
kingdom to-bring both because her of-seeing by-excessive he-was-held
affectu, tum quod nupcias eiusdem peragere festinaret, quas
affection and because the-nuptials of-her to-perform he-was-hurrying which
se absente perfici nolebat, tum eciam ut principes
with-himself absent to-be-completed he-did-not-wish and also that the-princes
quos conuenire iubebat sibi dedicionem facerent. Meriadocus
whom to-come-together he-ordered to-him surrender might-make Meriadoc
autem, huiusmodi ab imperatore mandata suscipiens,
moreover of-this-kind from the-emperor commands receiving
magnum sue glorie ex dictis ipsius reputabat emolumentum
a-great of-his glory from the-words his he-reckoned advantage
accidisse, non perpendens hamum cibo tectum, uenenum
to-have-befallen not weighing the-hook by-food covered the-poison
melle dulcoratum, uerba captancia decepcionis blandiciis
with-honey sweetened the-words captious of-deception with-flatteries
illita extitisse. Nec mora, procerum coegit concilium, in
smeared to-have-been nor delay of-the-nobles he-gathered a-council in
quorum audiencia mandata imperatoris recitari iussit.
whose hearing the-commands of-the-emperor to-be-recited he-ordered
Quibus auditis, confestim fauor cunctorum eum assecutus
with-which heard at-once the-favor of-all him followed
est, illum dignum acclamantium regni gubernacione
has him worthy of-(those)-acclaiming of-the-kingdom of-the-governance
qui tot et tanta a tanto principe percipere meruisset
who so-many and so-great from so-great a-prince to-receive had-deserved
laudum preconia; promiseruntque se cum illo una
of-praises proclamations and-they-promised themselves with him together
ituros eique in omnibus que imperasset obsecundaturos
about-to-go and-to-him in all-things which he-commanded about-to-comply
et quicumque casus manerent socios fore atque participes.
and whatever chances awaited companions to-be and sharers

Cum maximo igitur decore atque nobilitate profeccione parata,
with the-greatest therefore grace and nobility with-the-departure prepared
Meriadocus, assumpta filia imperatoris, iter propositum
Meriadoc with-taken the-daughter of-the-emperor the-way proposed
arrip[u]it. Comitabantur autem eum xii comites ingenuitate
seized accompanied moreover him twelve counts in-nobility
et diuiciis conspicui procerumque multitudo usque ad
and riches conspicuous and-of-nobles a-multitude all-the-way to
lxxxiiii quos non minus xx milia militum sequebantur.
eighty-four whom not less twenty thousand of-knights followed
Nam cum tanta militum copiositate aduenit, ut eciam
for with such of-knights abundance he-came that even
imperatori terribilis uideretur. Aduentanti autem imperator
to-the-emperor terrible he-seemed him-coming moreover the-emperor
quasi gratulabundus occurrit, aliud uultu pretendens quam
as-if congratulating met another-thing in-face pretending than
quod mente machinabatur. Jussit autem omnem turbam
what in-mind he-contrived he-ordered moreover all the-crowd
que cum eo uenerat, exceptis primoribus, circumcirca per
which with him had-come with-excepted the-chief-men all-around through
uillulas et castella hospitari, uolens, si quid accidisset,
the-hamlets and castles to-be-lodged wishing if anything should-have-happened
omne robur exercitus ab eo remocius consistere, quatinus
all the-strength of-the-army from him more-remotely to-stand so-that
eorum presencia ei minime foret presidio. Primores
their presence to-him not-at-all should-be for-protection the-chief-men
autem et principes cum Meriadoco in suo excepit palacio.
moreover and princes with Meriadoc in his he-received palace
Aggregauerat autem et imperator innumerabilem miliciam, ita
had-gathered moreover also the-emperor a-countless soldiery so
ut uix urbis qua morabantur menia ipsam capere[n]t.
that scarcely of-the-city in-which they-stayed the-walls it could-hold

Nata[m] uero suam statim, ubi aduenit, a consorcio
the-daughter but his at-once when she-came from the-company
Meriadoci remouens, in celsiori turre constituit, adhibita
of-Meriadoc removing in a-loftier tower he-placed with-applied
ei diligenciori custodia. Ne tamen dolus pateret, aditus
to-her a-more-diligent guard lest yet the-trick be-plain approach
ad eam Meriadoco minime negabatur; sed quid inter eos
to her to-Meriadoc not-at-all was-denied but what between them
gereretur suis sedulo rimari iussit, occasionem aduersus
was-done his-men diligently to-search-out he-ordered an-occasion against
eum querens qua iuste uideretur eum grauare debere.
him seeking by-which justly he-might-seem him to-burden to-be-bound
Nunciatur imperatori interea ab insidiantibus, Meriadocum
is-announced to-the-emperor meanwhile by those-lying-in-wait Meriadoc
cum filia sua sepius secreta uerba conserere, oscula
with the-daughter his more-often secret words to-join kisses
inmoderacius imprimere et striccioribus stringere colla
immoderately to-press and with-tighter to-clasp the-necks
complexibus. Quod imperator audiens ad suam exercendam
embraces which the-emperor hearing for his to-be-exercised
nequiciam se uiam reperisse congratulatus est ualde.
wickedness himself a-way to-have-found congratulated-himself has greatly
Conuocat igitur omnes principes qui ad curiam conuenerant
he-summons therefore all the-princes who to the-court had-come-together
una cum Meriadoco et suis proceribus, induxitque palacio,
together with Meriadoc and his nobles and-led-them into-the-palace
quasi cum eis super aliquo consultaturus negocio. Uniuersam
as-if with them about some about-to-consult business all
autem reliquam turbam clausis iussit amoueri foribus.
moreover the-remaining crowd with-closed he-ordered to-be-removed doors
Occuluerat autem et infra palacium et extra in pomerium
he-had-hidden moreover both within the-palace and outside in the-orchard

quo ab aquilonari parte ambiebatur palacium ualidam manum
which from the-northern side was-surrounded the-palace a-strong band
armatorum usque ad mille quingentos milites, quibus
of-armed-men all-the-way to a-thousand five-hundred knights to-whom
signum dederat, quid quando agere proposuerat. Facto
a-sign he-had-given what when to-do he-had-proposed with-made
igitur concessu nobilium et silencio imperato, "Non uos,"
therefore an-assembly of-the-nobles and with-silence commanded not you
ait imperator "O patres et principes, latere existimo, quo
says the-emperor O fathers and princes to-escape I-think with-what
affectu meos familiares semper coluerim uel quibus honoribus
affection my intimates always I-have-cherished or with-what honors
mihi fideles extulerim quantisue sub me militantes sim
to-me the-faithful I-have-raised or-with-how-great under me serving I-am
solitus remunerari stipendiis. Cum amicis mihi namque est
wont to-reward wages with friends to-me for is
secretorum communicacio cum de me iam bene meritis
of-secrets the-sharing with of me already well the-deserving
regni tuicio, cum mihi militantibus thesaurorum
of-the-kingdom the-protection with to-me the-serving of-treasures
particio. Illis diligentem, istis liberalem, reliquis aut[em]
the-sharing to-those diligent to-these generous to-the-others moreover
ex[h]ibere munificum me semper studui. Hinc amicorum
to-show munificent myself always I-have-striven hence of-friends
constanciam, procerum fidelitatem, militum uero singularem
the-constancy of-the-nobles the-fealty of-the-knights but singular
circa me comparaui uirtutem. Argumentum mee oracioni
toward me I-have-acquired valor the-proof for-my speech
hic qui adest Meriadocus existit, quem quam fauorabiliter
this-man who is-present Meriadoc stands whom how favorably
ad me aduentantem exceperim, ad quante dignitatis gradus
to me coming I-received to of-what dignity grades

sublimauerim satis habetur compertum. Primum namque ex
I-raised enough is-held known first for from
stipendario in numero meorum familiarium eum acciui;
a-mercenary into the-number of-my intimates him I-summoned
deinde gregariis uniuersis et stipendariis militibus meis
then over-the-common all and mercenary knights my
prefeci; auricularem et consiliarium meum constitui; preclaras
I-set a-confidant and counselor my I-appointed splendid
illi quoque prouincias ad regendum tradidi; hiisque
to-him also provinces for ruling I-handed-over and-than-these
satis maiora ei conferre proposui, tum ob illius
enough greater-things to-him to-confer I-proposed both on-account-of his
uirtutem, tum quod id mee glorie rebar comparere. Quidem
valor and because that to-my glory I-thought to-accrue indeed
strenuum eum fateor multisque pro me sudasse laboribus.
vigorous him I-confess and-in-many for me to-have-sweated labors
Verumptamen queso cuius tociens triumphauit uiribus?
nevertheless I-ask by-whose so-often did-he-triumph strength
Nonne meis? Nonne robore mei exercitus uictor exstitit?
surely by-mine surely by-the-strength of-my army victor he-stood
Cuius est suffultus diuiciis? Nonne suis ex meo erario
by-whose was-he supported riches surely to-his from my treasury
stipendia prebebantur militibus? Duo quidem regna subegit.
wages were-supplied knights two indeed kingdoms he-subdued
Sed quomodo? Decertante meo exercitu. Natam quoque
but how with-contending my army daughter also
meam de manibus Gundebaldi excussit. Sed per quid?
my from the-hands of-Gundebald he-shook-out but through what
Per industriam mee ipsius filie. Nichil ergo absque meo
through the-industry of-my own daughter nothing therefore without my
egit amminiculo. Ut tamen meam in eo liberalitatem et
he-did support that yet my toward him generosity and

munificenciam ostenderem, super omnem quem ei ante
munificence I-might-show above all which on-him before
honorem contuli, deliberaui meam copulare filiam, augere
honor I-conferred I-decided my to-join daughter to-increase
diuicias insuper et terciam partem mei imperii eius subdere
riches besides and the-third part of-my empire his to-subject
dominio. Idque exequi iam festinassem, nisi scelus
to-the-lordship and-that to-carry-out already I-would-have-hastened unless the-crime
ipsius interuenisset quod me a meo diuertit proposito.
his had-intervened which me from my turned-aside purpose
Tanto namque ipse Meriadocus in me excessit
with-so-great for he Meriadoc against me has-transgressed
facinore, ut non solum promissis destitui beneficiis, uerum
a-crime that not only of-the-promised to-be-deprived benefits but
eciam sit dignus dirissimis subigi suppliciis. Meo
also he-be worthy to-the-most-dire to-be-subjected punishments to-my
quippe dedecori dedit operam nilque pudibundius quam
indeed disgrace he-gave effort and-nothing more-shameful than
quod gessit inferre potuit. Pudet me meimet ipsius
what he-did to-bring-upon-me could it-shames me of-my own
proferre uerecundiam. Nisi tamen proferatur a uobis,
to-bring-forth the-disgrace unless yet it-be-brought-forth by you
sciri non potest filiam meam quam me more regio
to-be-known not can daughter my whom me in-the-manner royal
desponsaturum nouerat, me insciente, oppressit, uiolauit,
about-to-betroth he-knew with-me not-knowing he-overpowered violated
et, ut puto, sicut uenter tumescens innuit, grauidam reliquit.
and as I-think as the-belly swelling hints pregnant left
Meam munificenciam sua preuenit nequicia, illamque sibi
my munificence by-his has-forestalled wickedness and-her to-himself
prostituit que sibi illibata desponsari debuit. Apud uos
prostituted who to-him untouched to-be-betrothed ought among you

igitur meam depono querelam, expectaturus quid uestra
therefore my I-lay-down complaint about-to-await what your
super hoc censura, equitate dictante, censeat."
about this censure with-equity dictating may-judge
Ad hec Meriadocus, ultra quam credi potest miratus et
at this Meriadoc beyond than to-be-believed can astonished and
ob inauditam prodicionem que sibi intentabatur ira
for the-unheard-of treachery which against-him was-aimed with-anger
feruescens, dum in medium prosilisset, ut ab illatis
boiling while into the-middle he-had-leapt that from the-brought
se excusaret calumpniis, confestim qui in latebris
himself he-might-excuse false-charges at-once who in hiding-places
erant, accepto signo, hinc et inde eruperunt armati.
were with-received the-signal on-this-side and on-that burst-out armed
Meriadocum cum sociis, strictis gladiis, circum dederunt,
Meriadoc with (his)-comrades with-drawn swords around they-put
circumdatos ut inermes ceperunt, captosque abducentes
the-surrounded as unarmed they-captured and-the-captured leading-off
in arcem fortissimam que confinis erat palacio sub arta
into a-citadel most-strong which adjoining was to-the-palace under strict
incluserunt custodia. Eadem quoque tempestate destinauit
they-shut-in guard at-the-same also time sent
imperator quatuor legiones per circumiacentes uillulas
the-emperor four legions through the-surrounding hamlets
ad Meriadoci occupandum exercitum, dato precepto, ut
for of-Meriadoc seizing the-army with-given order that
Meriadoco fauentes ergastulis manciparent, qui autem
Meriadoc those-favoring to-workhouses they-should-deliver those-who but
niterentur resistere gladiis cederentur. Ex quibus plurimi,
should-strive to-resist with-swords should-be-cut-down of whom very-many
prodicione comperta, fugam inierunt, quidam uiriliter
with-the-treachery found-out flight entered some manfully

pungnantes interfecti sunt, reliqua multitudo usque ad
fighting killed were the-remaining multitude all-the-way to
xiii m[ilia] sese imperatori dederunt; sparsim quippe per
thirteen thousand themselves to-the-emperor surrendered scattered indeed through
uillas hospitati fuerant, unde leuiter ab imperialibus, ut
the-farms lodged they-had-been whence easily by the-imperials as
incauti et dispersi, occupati sunt. Imperatoris autem filia
incautious and dispersed seized they-were of-the-emperor moreover the-daughter
ubi qua fraude sit circumuentus Meriadocus audiuit, tam
when by-what fraud has-been trapped Meriadoc she-heard with-so
ingenti est absor[p]ta merore, ut uix a propriis manibus
huge was swallowed-up grief that scarcely from her-own hands
abstineret, quin semet ipsam interficeret. Continuit tamen
she-held-back but-that herself very she-should-kill she-restrained yet
mentis ardorem, certa de futuris existens, quod Meriadocus,
of-mind the-ardor sure about the-future being that Meriadoc
si posset euadere, uicem suis proditoribus recompensaret.
if he-could to-escape the-return to-his betrayers would-repay

The king of Gaul, finding his bride pregnant, refuses her and renews the war. Meriadoc escapes from his tower by a rope of torn clothes, creeping like a dog past the guards, and fights in the Gallic ranks, killing the emperor's commander, a leader, and the emperor's nephew, and then the emperor himself. The king of Gaul gives him back his wife and his possessions and makes him second in his empire; Meriadoc has a son, from whom many kings descend, and grows old in honor.

Uicesimo autem die quo hec gesta sunt rex
on-the-twentieth moreover day on-which these-things done were the-king
Gallie cum magna nobilitate aduenit, sibi pactam filiam
of-Gaul with great nobility came to-himself the-pledged daughter
imperatoris in uxorem ducturus. Verum ubi ad puelle
of-the-emperor as wife about-to-take but when to of-the-girl
uentum est colloquium, remque secrecius et diligencius
come it-was the-conversation and-the-matter more-secretly and more-diligently
inuestigans, eam grauidam rex deprehendisset, ilico, quasi
investigating her pregnant the-king had-detected at-once as-if
hoc in iniuriam suam factum fuisset, ipsius repudiauit
this for injury his done it-had-been her repudiated
connubium, se scortum in coniugium abiurans umquam
marriage himself a-harlot in wedlock swearing ever
ducturum. Federa quoque que cum imperatore inierat
about-to-take the-treaties also which with the-emperor he-had-entered
sine dilacione abrupit, id in suum dedecus machinatum
without delay broke-off that for his disgrace contrived
fuisse sepius inculcans. Nil tamen quod ei iure
to-have-been more-often inculcating nothing yet which from-him by-right
belli abstulerat penitus restituere uoluit, sed, fracta pacis
of-war he-had-taken-away at-all to-restore he-wished but with-broken of-peace
condicione bellique renouato tumultu, passim imperatoris
condition and-of-war renewed tumult everywhere of-the-emperor

depredabatur prouincias. E contra imperator, ubi de pace
he-plundered the-provinces from opposite the-emperor when about peace
sibi spes excidit, congregat et ipse non paruas tam
for-him hope fell gathers also he not small both
pedestrium quam equestrium copias, furentique regi maturat
of-foot and of-horse forces and-the-raging king hastens
occurrere. Certus ab utrisque dies certaminis indicitur, quo
to-meet fixed by both the-day of-contest is-proclaimed on-which
quis eorum adeptus fuisset uictoriam alterius potiretur
whoever of-them obtained had victory of-the-other should-gain-possession
imperio.
command
Meriadocus interea prefati turri tenebatur inclusus. Verum
Meriadoc meanwhile in-the-aforesaid tower was-held shut-in but
propter bellorum euentus laxiori seruabatur custodia.
on-account-of of-the-wars the-outcomes with-looser was-kept guard
Imperator enim facti penitens a uinculis immunem eum
the-emperor for of-the-deed repenting from bonds free him
esse preceperat, sperans animum eius se aliquo modo
to-be had-ordered hoping the-mind his himself in-some way
posse lenire. Dolebat enim grauiter, quod prodicionis pro
to-be-able to-soothe he-grieved for heavily that of-treachery for
eo arguebatur crimine, uirum quod sibi utilem perdidisset,
him he-was-accused by-the-charge a-man that to-him useful he-had-lost
regemque nichilominus sibi hostem existere. Postquam autem
and-the-king nonetheless to-him enemy to-stand after moreover
Meriadocus bellum parari cognouit, qualiter euadere
Meriadoc war to-be-prepared learned how to-escape
posset apud se sedule deliberabat. Segregatus namque
he-could with himself diligently he-deliberated separated for
a sociis per se solus manebat. Quid[d]am autem
from (his)-comrades by himself alone he-remained something moreover

insolitum machinatus est, sicut mens hominis, ubi magis
unaccustomed contrived he-has as the-mind of-man when more
artatur, magis artificiosa sepius inuenitur. Quodam igitur
it-is-confined the-more ingenious more-often is-found on-a-certain therefore
uespertino tempore omnes pannos quos habebat, exceptis
evening time all the-cloths which he-had with-excepted
lineis, in frusta conscidit, ipsasque scissuras ad instar
the-linen into pieces he-cut and-the-very cuttings in the-likeness
funiculi ad inuicem connexuit, funemque longissimum ex
of-a-cord to each-other he-joined and-a-rope very-long from
conscissa ueste contexuit. Quem eciam trabe ligatum per
the-cut-up clothing he-wove which also to-a-beam tied through
quandam humiliorem fenestram deorsum deposuit, per quem
a-certain lower window downward he-let-down by which
ipse ad terram confestim descendit. Deinde, ut specie
he to the-ground at-once descended then that by-the-appearance
canis excubias falleret, usque ad uallum manibus
of-a-dog the-watches he-might-deceive all-the-way to the-rampart on-hands
pedibusque repebat. Quo sine aliquo impedimento transito,
and-feet he-crept which without any bindrance crossed
ad domum cuiusdam militis, qui in uicino degebat
to the-house of-a-certain knight who in the-neighborhood lived
sibique erat familiarissimus, citissime tendebat. A quo
and-to-him was most-familiar most-swiftly he-made-his-way by whom
quidem ubi quis esset agnitus honorificentiss[im]e susceptus
indeed when who he-was recognized most-honorably received
est et omnibus refocillatus deliciis. Tribus autem diebus
he-was and with-all refreshed delights three moreover days
cum eo perhendinauit. Quarto uero locum certaminis
with him he-stayed on-the-fourth but the-place of-the-contest

peciit una cum suo hospite, qui eciam adinuenit sibi in
he-sought together with his host who also found for-him in
armis et equis queque erant necessaria.
arms and horses whatever-things were necessary
Pugne dies illuxerat, et a suis ducibus armis septus
of-the-fight the-day had-dawned and by their leaders with-arms girt
uterque in campum decertaturus producitur exercitus.
each into the-field about-to-fight is-led-out army
Meriadocus in prima fronte se regalibus latenter ingessit
Meriadoc in the-first front himself into-the-royal secretly thrust
cohortibus. Nulla mora, distinctis et ordinatis aciebus,
cohorts no delay with-distinguished and ordered lines
discurrunt pedites; congrediuntur equites; clamor ad sidera
run-about the-foot-soldiers clash the-horsemen the-shout to the-stars
tollitur; cominus eminusque pungnatur; corruunt passim
is-raised at-close-quarters and-from-afar it-is-fought fall everywhere
uulnerati; nunc hac, nunc illac, uicti uictoresque pellunt
the-wounded now here now there the-conquered and-the-conquerors drive
et propelluntur. At Meriadocus, inter primos se semper
and are-driven but Meriadoc among the-first himself always
agens, principem milicie imperatoris obuium habuit. Cum
conducting the-chief of-the-army of-the-emperor to-meet had with
quo congressus se in necem medio campo prostrauit ac
whom having-clashed him to death in-the-middle field he-laid-low and
eius equum abduxit. Post hunc cuidam duci qui primam
his horse led-away after this-one a-certain leader who the-first
conducebat aciem occurrit. Huic quoque sub cauo pectore
commanded line he-met to-this-one also under the-hollow breast
ferrum recondit mortiferum, abducensque sonipedem illum
the-iron he-buried deadly and-leading-away the-steed him
in suo sanguine uolutantem reliquit. Tercium imperatoris
in his blood rolling left the-third of-the-emperor

nepotem, qui post eum imperaturus credebatur, furibundus
the-nephew who after him about-to-rule was-believed raging
excepit; nec meliori omine, istum quippe cum equo in
he-received nor with-a-better omen this-one indeed with (his)-horse in
una deiectum congerie nece mulctauit tristesque manes ad
one thrown-down heap with-death he-punished and-the-sad shades to
Tartara misit. Deinde orbiculatim inter utrasque perequitans
Tartarus sent then in-a-circle between both riding-through
acies, quasi imperialibus insultaret, splendidam in eos
the-lines as-if the-imperials he-were-insulting the-splendid against them
lanceam uibrabat atque ad suum lacessibat congressum.
lance brandished and to his challenged encounter
Imperator autem, ex interitu suorum optimatum et
the-emperor moreover from the-destruction of-his nobles and
familiarium tanto accepto infortunio, animo nimis
intimates with-so-great received misfortune in-mind too
torquebatur, atque, nisi in eo uindicaretur, mori mallet
was-tortured and unless on him he-were-avenged to-die he-would-prefer
quam uiuere. Ignorabat tamen quis esset. Cumque illius
than to-live he-did-not-know yet who he-was and-when his
congressum nullum suorum amplius conspiceret audere
encounter none of-his further he-saw to-dare
excipere "Occumbam" exclamauit "cum ceteris, nisi hos qui
to-receive I-shall-fall he-cried with the-others unless those who
occubuerunt ulciscar." Equum igitur calcaribus subducens
have-fallen I-avenge the-horse therefore with-the-spurs urging
ad cursum coegit Meriadocumque prefixa cuspide
to running he-compelled and-Meriadoc with-fixed-forward point
omni uirtute peciit. E contra Meriadocus totis habenis
with-all valor attacked from opposite Meriadoc with-all reins
in imperatorem admisit sonipedem atque in eum preceps
on the-emperor let-go (his)-steed and on him headlong

irruit. Eoque imperatorem aggressus est impetu, ut
rushed and-with-such the-emperor attacked he-has charge that
nec clipeus obstiterit nec lorica, quin ualida impacta
neither the-shield resisted nor the-mail-coat but-that with-strong driven
dextra lancea ei penetralia transuerberaret et cum calido
right-hand the-lance his inner-parts pierced and with warm
sanguine spiritum per auras eliceret. Dum autem corrueret
blood (his)-spirit through the-airs drew-out while moreover he-fell
"Qualia" inquit Meriadocus "mihi, O imperator, prebuisti
such-as he-said Meriadoc to-me O emperor you-have-provided
stipendia, talia et ego tibi impendo seruicia." Hec
wages such also I to-you pay services these-things
dicens, se continuo cateruis armatorum immiscuit,
saying himself at-once with-the-companies of-armed-men mingled
ne cui comperiretur quis esset euadere cupiens. Rex
lest by-anyone it-be-learned who he-was to-escape desiring the-king
autem quecumque gesserat sedulo conte[m]platus lumine
moreover whatever-things he-had-done diligently having-contemplated with-(his)-eye
mittit statim post eum qui illum ad se cum honore
sends at-once after him men-who him to himself with honor
deducerent, ne tam probus miles suam euaderet noticiam,
should-lead lest so upright a-knight his should-escape notice
et quia ipsius gestiebat remunerari uirtutem qua de tam
and because his he-longed to-reward valor which over so
ualido hoste triumphauerat. Cumque ante se ductus fuisset
strong an-enemy he-had-triumphed and-when before him led he-had-been
Meriadocumque cognouisset, cuius probitas sibi satis relata
and-Meriadoc he-had-recognized whose probity to-him enough related
fuerat, rex subridens "Meriadoce, Meriadoce," ait "e
had-been the-king smiling Meriadoc Meriadoc he-says by
merito in illum talia exercuisti quem tante perfidie
desert against him such-things you-have-exercised who of-such treachery

constat in te co[m]misisse facinus. Laborasti pro me,
it-is-agreed against you to-have-committed a-crime you-have-labored for me
nec ero tibi ingratus, sicut ille exstitit. Ille tibi
nor I-shall-be to-you ungrateful as he stood he from-you
uxorem mei causa abstulit. Ego uero illam restituam."
your-wife my for-the-sake took-away I but her I-shall-restore
Neci igitur imperatore tradito, ipsius totus dispergitur
to-death therefore with-the-emperor handed-over his whole is-scattered
exercitus. Verum non multum post regis Gallie dicioni
army but not much after of-the-king of-Gaul to-the-sway
cum uniuerso imperio subditur. Rex autem, imperii
with the-whole empire it-is-subjected the-king moreover of-the-empire
potitus gubernaculo, Meriadoco confestim suam coniugem
having-gained the-helm to-Meriadoc at-once his wife
cum omnibus que ipse Meriadocus conquisi[u]erat restituit;
with all-things which he-himself Meriadoc had-acquired restored
insuper et magnas possessiones ei adiecit; suos proceres
besides also great possessions to-him added his nobles
in custodia detentos ei reddidit eumque secundum a
in custody held to-him returned and-him second from
se super totum suum imperium constituit. Nascitur post
himself over all his empire he-appointed is-born after
hec Meriadoco filius, ex quo multi reges et principes
these-things to-Meriadoc a-son from whom many kings and princes
processerunt. Meriadocus uero in omni probitate consenuit.
proceeded Meriadoc but in all prowess grew-old

De ortu Waluuanii

The Rise of Gawain

Lot, nephew of the king of Norway, raised at Uther's court, loves Uther's daughter Anna, and she secretly bears a son. She gives him to rich merchants with treasure, a cloak, a ring, and a charter naming his parents. When their ship lands near Narbonne, the fisherman Viamundus steals the child and the treasure; seven years later he goes to Rome, poses as a noble, and is given the palace of Scipio by the emperor.

Uterpendragon rex, pater Arturi, omnium Britannie confinium
Uther-Pendragon the-king father of-Arthur of-all of-Britain bordering
prouinciarum sue dicioni reges subegerat, tributariosque
of-the-provinces to-his sway the-kings had-subjected and-tributary
efficiens eorum filios partim loco obsidum, partim honestate
making their sons partly in-place of-hostages partly in-honesty
morum militarique erudiendos disciplina sua in curia detinebat.
of-manners and-in-military to-be-trained discipline his in court kept
Inter quos Loth nepos [Si]chelini regis Norgwegie educabatur,
among whom Lot nephew of-Sichelin king of-Norway was-brought-up
adolescens mirandus aspectu, robore corporis animique
a-youth wonderful in-aspect with-strength of-body and-of-mind
uirtute preditus, unde et regi Uthero eiusque filio
with-valor endowed whence also to-the-king Uther and-to-his son
Arturo ceteris suis coetaneis karior habitus ipsius secreta
Arthur than-the-other his coevals dearer held of-his the-secrets
cubiculi continue frequentabat. Erat autem regi filia
of-the-chamber continually frequented there-was moreover to-the-king a-daughter
Anna dicta incomparabilis pulcritudinis, que cum matre
Anna called of-incomparable beauty who with (her)-mother
regina in thalamo morabatur. Cum qua dum predictus
the-queen in the-chamber stayed with whom while the-aforesaid
adolescens sepe iuueniliter luderet et iocosa secretius uerba
youth often youthfully played and jesting more-secretly words

consereret, utrique alterutro capiuntur amore. Alterni tamen
joined each by-the-other are-captured with-love the-mutual yet
affectus diu ab invicem cum timore tum pudore dissimulati
affections long from each-other both by-fear and by-shame dissembled
sunt. Verum quia ad instar flamme amor quo magis
were but because in the-likeness of-flame love by-how-much more
tegitur, eo magis accenditur, indeque capit augmentum
it-is-covered by-that more is-kindled and-thence takes increase
unde minui festinatur, magnitudinem tandem amoris in
whence to-be-diminished it-is-hastened the-greatness at-last of-love in
se continere non ualentes, que mente conceperant mutuo
themselves to-contain not being-able what in-mind they-had-conceived mutually
patefaciunt. Sui igitur uoti compotes effecti assensum
disclose of-their therefore wish possessed made assent
uoluptati adhibent, statimque illa impregnata intumuit.
to-pleasure they-apply and-at-once she impregnated swelled
Pariendi uero appropinquante termino, egritudinem simulans
of-giving-birth but approaching the-term illness feigning
secreto cubat cubiculo, unam tantum pedissequam huius rei
in-a-secret lies chamber one only handmaid of-this thing
habens consciam. Tempus tandem quo fetum expelleret
having privy the-time at-last at-which the-offspring she-should-expel
aduenerat, paruulumque eleganti forma enixa est. Conduxerat
had-come and-a-little-one of-elegant form bore she-has she-had-hired
autem ditissimos e transmarinis finibus commercia sectantes
moreover very-rich-men from overseas lands trade following
pactaque cum eis sub iureiurando fuerat, ut statim ubi in
and-agreed with them under oath she-had that at-once when into
lucem prodiret, ne a quoquam comperiretur, secum suam in
light he-came-forth lest by anyone it-be-discovered with-them their into
patriam infantem abducerent ac usque adultam etatem
country the-infant they-should-carry-off and right-up-to adult age

diligenter educarent. Natum itaque infantulum, nemine
diligently bring-up born and-so the-little-infant with-no-one
sciente, negociatores suscipiunt, cum quo genitrix eis auri
knowing the-merchants receive with whom the-mother to-them of-gold
et argenti preciosarumque uestium innumerabilem copiam
and of-silver and-of-precious garments a-countless abundance
contulit. Tradidit quoque ingentis precii pallium insertis
conferred she-handed-over also of-huge price a-cloak with-inserted
gemmis auro undique intextum necnon et anulum lapide
gems with-gold everywhere interwoven and-also even a-ring with-a-stone
smaragdino insignitum, quem a rege custodiendum
emerald marked which from the-king to-be-kept
acceperat, quo ipse dumtaxat festiuis diebus uti solebat.
she-had-received which he only on-festive days to-use was-wont
Cartam eciam regis sigillo signatam addidit, cuius textus
a-charter also of-the-king with-the-seal sealed she-added whose text
eum certis insinuabat indiciis ex regis Norwegie nepote
him by-sure intimated signs from of-the-king of-Norway the-nephew
sororeque Arturi progenitum Waluuaniumque a genitrice
and-the-sister of-Arthur begotten and-Gawain by (his)-mother
nominatum et propter regis timorem ad extraneas
named and on-account-of of-the-king the-fear to foreign
fuisse destinatum prouincias. Hec ideo illa, scilicet pallium
to-have-been destined provinces she therefore those namely the-cloak
anulum et cartam, prouido usa consilio cum eo
the-ring and the-charter with-provident having-used counsel with him
prebere studuit, ut, si forte quandoque rediens a parentibus
to-provide she-was-eager that if perhaps sometime returning by (his)-parents
non agnitus refutaretur, signum certitudinis exhiberent et
not recognized he-be-rejected a-sign of-certainty they-might-show and
per eorum indicia ad parentum perueniret noticiam.
through their tokens to of-(his)-parents he-might-come the-notice

Negociatores igitur sue tuicioni commissum paruulum
the-merchants therefore to-their protection entrusted the-little-one
tollentes nauem con[s]cendunt, datisque uentis carbasis
taking the-ship board and-with-given to-the-winds sails
alta sulcantes equora viij tandem die Gallicanas
the-deep plowing seas on-the-eighth at-last day the-Gallic
allabuntur ad horas, nactique continentem duobus miliariis
glide to shores and-having-reached the-mainland two miles
a ciuitate Narbonensi appulsi sunt. Quo ubi applicuerunt
from the-city of-Narbonne landed they-have where when they-landed
sale reumateque maris tabentes, ad urbem se
by-the-salt and-damp of-the-sea wasting to the-city themselves
spaciatum, lintre in portu relicto, omnes properant,
to-walk with-the-boat in the-harbor left all hasten
unum tantummodo puerum qui suas res lactentemque in
one only boy who their things and-the-suckling in
cunis iacentem tueretur deserentes, remocius quippe ab
the-cradle lying should-guard leaving more-remotely indeed from
urbe sub prerupta rupe appulerant nullumque interim ratem
the-city under a-steep rock they-had-landed and-no-one meanwhile the-ship
aditurum credebant. Sed, illis egressis, forte quidam
about-to-approach they-believed but with-them gone-out by-chance a-certain
piscator e uicino pago, Viamundus uocabulo, rebus
fisherman from the-neighboring village Viamundus by-name in-things
quidem pauper sed genere et moribus honestus, ut moris
indeed poor but in-birth and manners honorable as of-custom
cotidie habebat, cum coniuge per litus gradiebatur, inuestigans
daily he-had with (his)-wife along the-shore walked searching
si piscem inuenire potuisset freti retractu in continenti
if a-fish to-find he-could of-the-sea by-the-withdrawal on the-mainland
destitutum, cuius sibi precio uictum adquireret. Hic
left whose for-himself by-the-price food he-might-acquire this-man

carinam appulsam intuitus, ceteris omissis, illuc
the-keel landed having-seen with-the-other-things neglected thither
confestim tetendit, ingressusque neminem excepto puero qui
at-once made-his-way and-having-entered no-one except the-boy who
ad eius tutelam relictus fuerat et illum quidem dormientem
for his guarding left had-been and him indeed sleeping
repperit. Videns autem paruulum prestanti forma nauemque
found seeing moreover the-little-one of-outstanding form and-the-ship
sine custode omnibus refertam diuiciis suamque considerans
without guard with-all filled riches and-his considering
paupertatem quam ibi, fortuna fauente, releuare poterat —
poverty which there with-fortune favoring to-relieve he-could
ut in prouerbio dicitur, oportunitas loci et temporis reddit
as in the-proverb is-said the-opportunity of-place and time makes
latronem — quicquid maioris estimacionis in auro et argento
a-thief whatever of-greater value in gold and silver
uariaque suppellectili sibi uidebatur diripuit. Infantem quoque
and-various household-goods to-him seemed he-seized the-infant also
et thecam ad capud eius stantem in qua pallium anulus
and the-case at the-head his standing in which the-cloak the-ring
et carta continebantur uxori tradens, opibus honusti
and the-charter were-contained to-(his)-wife handing with-riches laden
ad sua cum festinacione, nullo negocium aduertente,
to their-own with haste with-no-one the-business noticing
abscesserunt. Institores autem post paululum ad naualia regressi
went-away the-merchants moreover after a-little to the-dock returned
dampnum sibi illatum rebus sublatis offendunt. Cuius
the-loss on-them brought with-the-things taken-away find of-which
rei euentu inopino dolore perculsi maximoque merore
thing by-the-outcome unexpected with-grief struck and-with-the-greatest sorrow
consternati ad gemitus et fletus omnes conuersi sunt, diemque
dismayed to groans and weeping all turned were and-the-day

in lamentacionem continuauerunt et maxime ob infantis
in lamentation they-prolonged and especially for of-the-infant
surrepcionem quem sue fidei constabat creditum. Moxque ad
the-stealing who to-their faith it-was-agreed entrusted and-soon for
hoc idoneos electos per uicina lictora ruraque nuncios
this fit chosen through the-neighboring shores and-country messengers
mittunt, qui rem diligenter indagarent et qui sibi tantum
they-send who the-thing diligently should-track and who on-them so-great
intulissent discrimen inquirerent. Sed quoniam quod omnium
had-brought peril should-inquire but since what of-all
latet noticiam difficile deprehenditur, nichil certitudinis
escapes the-knowledge with-difficulty is-detected nothing of-certainty
anticipantes, ad nauem qui missi fuerant mesti remearunt.
getting to the-ship who sent had-been sad returned
Viamundus autem subtractam cum infantulo substanciam
Viamundus moreover the-taken with the-little-infant wealth
ad casam deferens occuluit, ipsumque loco filii, quia
to (his)-hut carrying hid and-him in-place of-a-son because
proprio carebat, adhibita diligencia enutriuit. Verebatur tamen
his-own he-lacked with-applied diligence brought-up he-feared yet
opulenciam qua pollebat in palam proferre — quia et
the-opulence in-which he-abounded in the-open to-bring-forth because both
egestas qua hactenus afficiebatur exstabat notissima et
the-poverty by-which hitherto he-was-afflicted stood most-known and
furti quod commiserat adhuc fiebat questio — ne opum
of-the-theft which he-had-committed still was-made inquiry lest of-riches
ostentacione perpetrati sceleris infamia notaretur. Septem
by-the-display of-the-perpetrated crime with-the-infamy he-be-marked of-seven
autem annorum transcurso spacio Romam pergere deliberauit,
moreover years with-passed space to-Rome to-go he-decided
et facti penitudine ductus et quod non dubitabat se
both of-the-deed by-repentance led and because not he-doubted himself

illo ut in extranea regione suis facultatibus licite posse uti.
there as in a-foreign region his means lawfully to-be-able to-use
Omnibus igitur uie necessariis paratis et compositis,
with-all therefore for-the-way necessities prepared and arranged
uxore filio adoptiuo familiaque comitantibus, cum uniuersa
with-(his)-wife son adopted and-household accompanying with all
substancia iter arripuit inque breui sane et prospere Romana
wealth the-way seized and-in brief indeed and prosperously the-Roman
menia attigit. Ingressus autem omni die urbem circumquaque
walls reached having-entered moreover every day the-city all-around
circumibat, cunctaque perscrutans, statum loci, mores
went-round and-all scrutinizing the-state of-the-place the-manners
ciuium et nomina senatorum ac principum callide
of-the-citizens and the-names of-the-senators and of-the-princes cunningly
inquirebat. Roma uero ea tempestate ui barbarorum
inquired Rome but at-that time by-the-force of-the-barbarians
capta et subacta fuerat et pene usque ad internicionem
taken and subdued had-been and almost all-the-way to destruction
desolata, muris dirutis, edificiis combustis, ciuibus captiuatis
desolated with-walls destroyed with-buildings burned with-citizens captured
et dispersis uariisque suppliciis interemptis. Sed nouus in
and dispersed and-by-various punishments killed but a-new in
imperio imperator successerat, qui ruine urbis condolens
the-empire emperor had-succeeded who for-the-ruin of-the-city grieving
diruta reedificabat, ciues dispersos co[n]gregabat, captos
the-destroyed rebuilt the-citizens dispersed gathered the-captured
redimebat, summopere dans operam eam ad pristine felicitatis
ransomed greatly giving effort it to of-former happiness
statum reducere. Quibus Viamundus agnitis et ut erat astuti
the-state to-bring-back with-which Viamundus learned and as he-was of-astute
ingenii, rem sibi intelligens ad uotum succedere,
wit the-thing for-himself understanding according-to wish to-succeed

nil moratus, se egregio cultu adornauit, seruos et quam
nothing having-delayed himself with-excellent dress adorned servants and very
plurima mancipia a uicinis oppidis magnosque apparatus
many slaves from neighboring towns and-great equipment
comparauit, seruorumque numerosa turba uallatus per
procured and-of-servants a-numerous crowd walled-around through
mediam urbem ad palacium tendit, omnibus spectaculo
the-middle of-the-city to the-palace makes-his-way to-all a-spectacle
factus cum ex splendidis ornamentis tum ex se stipancium
made both from the-splendid ornaments and from him of-the-thronging
multitudine, veniensque ad imperatorem honorifice suscipitur.
the-multitude and-coming to the-emperor honorably is-received
Cum quo demum colloquia conserens [narravit] se ex
with whom at-length conversations joining he-related himself from
nobilissima Romanorum oriundum familia Gallieque partibus
a-most-noble of-the-Romans sprung family and-of-Gaul in-the-parts
commoratum populi ducatum habuisse, sed, audita urbis
having-stayed of-a-people the-dukedom to-have-had but with-heard of-the-city
clade et infortunio, se conciuium uires adauctum
the-disaster and misfortune himself of-the-fellow-citizens the-strength to-increase
illo properasse, utque sibi cum suis habitandi in ea locum
thither to-have-hastened and-that to-him with his of-dwelling in it a-place
tribueret suppliciter flagitabat. Imperator autem, eum non
he-would-grant suppliantly he-demanded the-emperor moreover him of-no
parue generositatis cum ex ueneranda canicie cum uariarum
small nobility both from the-venerable gray-hair and of-various
decore rerum tum e satellitum numerositate estimans
by-the-beauty of-things and from of-the-attendants the-numerousness reckoning
et coniciens, quod ad se uenerit gracias agit, seque
and conjecturing that to himself he-had-come thanks gives and-himself
eum, si in urbe commoraretur, multiplici donaturum spondet
him if in the-city he-should-stay with-manifold about-to-present promises

honore. Deditque illi aulam marmoream mire structure
honor and-gave to-him a-hall marble of-wonderful structure
stupendisque comptam edificiis pre foribus sui palacii, que
and-with-astounding adorned buildings before the-doors of-his palace which
Scipionis Affricani testatur fuisse. Municipia quoque uineas
of-Scipio Africanus is-attested to-have-been towns also vineyards
et agriculturas extra urbem contulit suis seruituras expensis.
and farmlands outside the-city he-conferred to-his about-to-serve expenses

THE KNIGHT OF THE SURCOAT

Viamundus prospers at Rome and the boy grows strong and handsome. Dying, Viamundus confesses everything to the emperor and Pope Sulpicius, commends the boy, the nephew of King Arthur, to them, and shows the tokens. The Boy without Name, knighted at fifteen, wins the games and asks for the first single combat the emperor must fight; he wears a purple tunic over his armor and is called the Knight of the Surcoat. When Persians and Christians at Jerusalem agree to settle their war by duel, he claims the fight, and the emperor grants it.

Tante itaque fortune Viamundus ultra omnem estimacionem
of-so-great and-so fortune Viamundus beyond all expectation
nactus beneficia se tam lepide tamque decenter et
having-obtained the-benefits himself so elegantly and-so becomingly and
generose agebat, ut imperatorem senatum populumque in
generously conducted that the-emperor the-senate and-the-people into
sui admiracionem converteret omniumque se amatum
of-himself admiration he-turned and-of-all himself beloved
traheret affectus celebrisque sermo de sua largitate et
drew the-affections and-famous talk about his largess and
munificencia per totam urbem clam palamque ferreretur;
munificence through the-whole city secretly and-openly was-borne

senatorum quippe et nobilium Rome ad eum cotidie
of-the-senators indeed and of-the-nobles of-Rome to him daily
conuentus fiebat, nec non et ab aula imperiali pretex[t]ati
a-gathering was-made nor not also from the-hall imperial the-toga-clad
pueri militumque turba ob graciam paruuli confluebant,
boys and-of-knights a-crowd for the-sake of-the-little-one flocked
quos uariis deliciis oppipatis conuiuiis donisque honorabat
whom with-various delights with-sumptuous banquets and-with-gifts he-honored
largissimis. Crescente interea etate puero, crescebat et animi
most-ample with-growing meanwhile age in-the-boy grew both of-mind
uirtute et corporis habilitate, suique genitoris qui credebatur
in-valor and of-body in-aptness and-of-his father who was-believed
emulator existens, industrie facecie probitatique studebat.
a-rival being to-industry to-courtesy and-to-prowess he-applied-himself
Frequentabat et ipse palacium familiarisque cum subditis
frequented also he the-palace and-familiar with the-subjects
habebatur principi. Quedam enim in illo ingenite uigebant
was-held to-the-prince certain for in him inborn flourished
uirtutes quibus se uidencium animos ad se amandum
virtues by-which himself of-those-seeing the-minds to himself to-love
extorquebat et alliciebat. Erat siquidem procera decentique
he-wrung and enticed he-was indeed of-tall and-becoming
statura, lepido gestu, pulcra facie, ingentique preditus
stature of-elegant bearing beautiful in-face and-with-huge endowed
fortitudine. Jamque duodecimum eui annum attigerat, cum
strength and-now the-twelfth of-age year he-had-reached when
Viamundus graui tentus egritudine lecto decubuit. Qui,
Viamundus with-heavy held illness on-the-bed lay-down who
ingrauescente languore, dum sibi uite finem imminere
with-growing-heavier sickness when to-him of-life the-end to-impend
cerneret, per primores ciuitatis imperatorem papamque
he-saw through the-chief-men of-the-city the-emperor and-the-pope

Sulpicium, per id tempus apostolice sedi presidentem,
Sulpicius at that time over-the-apostolic see presiding
ut ad se uenire suaque colloquia dignarentur plurimum
that to him to-come and-his conversation they-would-deign greatly
exorabat. Illi autem tanti uiri preces, quem ob morum
he-begged they moreover of-so-great a-man the-prayers whom for of-manners
liberalitatem non parum dilexera[n]t, minime renuentes,
the-generosity not a-little they-had-loved not-at-all refusing
assumptis secum uiris excellencioribus ciuitatis, grauuido
with-taken with-them men the-more-excellent of-the-city with-full
affectu ad eum conuenere. Aduenientibus uero Viamundus
affection to him came with-them-coming but Viamundus
primum de impertitis sibi ab illis beneficiis debitas grates
first for the-imparted on-him by them benefits due thanks
exsoluit, deinde, eos secreto conuocans, uite prioris statum,
paid then them in-secret calling-together of-life former the-state
quo casu tantarum diuiciarum gloriam adeptus fuerit
by-what chance of-such-great riches the-glory obtained he-had
puerumque quem educabat reppererit, totiusque uite
and-the-boy whom he-was-bringing-up found and-of-the-whole life
ordinem seriatim exposuit. Subiunxitque: “Hoc estuanti”
the-order one-by-one set-forth and-added this with-seething
inquit “animo uestre celsitudini sepius intimare deliberaui sed
he-says mind to-your highness more-often to-intimate I-planned but
semper temporis oportunitatem opperiens usque ad presens
always of-time the-opportunity awaiting all-the-way to the-present
distuli. Nunc autem ultimo fato incumbente ea fateri
I-put-off now but with-the-last fate pressing these-things to-confess
compulsus, licet quod postulo homini seruilis condicionis a
compelled although what I-ask to-a-man of-servile condition by
tocius orbis dominis iuste negari possit, tamen amicicie
of-the-whole world the-lords justly to-be-denied could yet of-friendship

familiaritatisque memores quibus me dignati estis mee uos
and-familiarity mindful with-which me deigned you-have to-my you
peticioni non abnuere estimo. Est quidem quod uos petiturus
request not to-refuse I-reckon it-is indeed what you about-to-ask
acciui, hunc puerum quem loco filii enutriui
I-have-summoned this boy whom in-place of-a-son I-have-brought-up
et cum quo hec omnis mihi rerum copia contigit uestre
and with whom this all to-me of-things abundance has-befallen of-your
sullimitatis tuicioni committere, ut eum educantes ad
highness to-the-protection to-commit that him bringing-up to
militarem ordinem, dum etas affuerit, promoueatis. Nepotem
the-military order when age will-be-present you-may-promote the-nephew
quippe Arturi regis Britannie — iam enim, patre
indeed of-Arthur king of-Britain already for with-(his)-father
defuncto, [regnum] susceperat — de quo tante probitatis
dead the-kingdom he-had-taken-up about whom of-such prowess
fama ubique uolat, eum esse noueritis, quem a parentum
the-fame everywhere flies him to-be you-may-know whom from of-(his)-parents
nobilitate non degeneraturum non dubito. Rem tamen ab
the-nobility not about-to-degenerate not I-doubt the-thing yet by
omnibus et ab ipso laudo haberi secretam, nec etiam nomen
all and by himself I-commend to-be-held secret nor even the-name
ipsius, donec a suis cognoscatur parentibus, patefiat, quia
his until by his he-be-recognized parents let-it-be-disclosed because
et hoc carte monimenta que eius testantur prosapiam
also this of-the-charter the-records which his attest lineage
prohibent. Ubi autem in uirilem etatem proruperit,
forbid when moreover into manly age he-shall-have-burst-forth
cum uestris litteris et sue propaginis certis indiciis,
with your letters and of-his lineage with-sure tokens
que satis apud me habentur probabilia, oro remittatur."
which enough with me are-held probable I-pray let-him-be-sent-back

Puerumque aduocans, qui, quia quo nomine censeretur
and-the-boy summoning who because by-what name he-was-reckoned
nesciebatur, usque ad illud tempus Puer sine Nomine
was-not-known all-the-way to that time Boy without Name
uocatus fuerat, imperatoris amplexus uestigia, supplici
called had-been of-the-emperor having-embraced the-footsteps with-suppliant
prece summisque uotis eum commendauit. Loculum quoque
prayer and-highest vows him he-commended the-little-box also
quo testamenta a matre contradita continebantur iubens
in-which the-testaments from (his)-mother handed-over were-contained ordering
afferri imperatori ostendit. Quibus uisis, imperator, uiri
to-be-brought to-the-emperor he-showed with-which seen the-emperor of-the-man
liberalitatem circa puerum habitam multa laude efferens,
the-generosity toward the-boy held with-much praise extolling
puerum iniectis brachiis suscipit, se eius uoluntati
the-boy with-thrown-around arms receives himself his wish
per omnia satisfacturum spondens. Sicque Viamundus quod
through all-things about-to-satisfy promising and-so Viamundus what
maxime affectauerat pro uoto adeptus, imperatore
most he-had-longed-for according-to wish having-obtained with-the-emperor
assidente, letus defungitur, maximaque lamentacione
sitting-by glad dies and-with-the-greatest lamentation
cunctorum [in] monumentis nobilium, constructa desuper ab
of-all in the-tombs of-the-nobles with-built above by
imperatore miri operis piramide, sepelitur.
the-emperor of-wonderful work a-pyramid is-buried
Post Viamundi autem obitum Puer sine Nomine ad palacium
after of-Viamundus moreover the-death the-Boy without Name to the-palace
iussu principis ductus inter regales pueros annumeratur.
by-the-order of-the-prince led among the-royal boys is-numbered
Trium uero annorum emenso termino, xv scilicet
of-three but years with-passed term the-fifteenth namely

etatis anno, sua probitate exigente, armis ab imperatore
of-age in-the-year with-his prowess demanding with-arms by the-emperor
instruitur. Cum quo et uiginti alios iuuenes ob graciam
is-equipped with whom also twenty other youths for the-sake
ipsius milicia donauit. Indeque cum ceteris tironibus
his with-knighthood he-presented and-thence with the-other recruits
iuuentuque Romana ad circum quo cursus equorum fieri
and-the-youth Roman to the-circus where races of-horses to-be-made
solebant progressus, quanta se ea die uirtute egerit,
were-wont having-advanced with-how-great himself on-that day valor he-conducted
quam strenue gesserit, fauor omnium circo astancium
how vigorously he-acted the-favor of-all in-the-circus standing-by
eum prosecutus testimonio fuit. In illo siquidem spectaculo
him following for-testimony was in that indeed spectacle
nullus ei resistere, nullus eius uiribus equiparari ualuit, quin
no-one him to-resist no-one his to-strength to-be-equaled could but-that
quemcunque obuium haberet mutuo congressu prosterneret.
whomever meeting he-had in-mutual clash he-laid-low
Quapropter, equiriis celebratis, aurea quam rex
wherefore with-the-horse-races celebrated with-the-golden which the-king
uictori proposuerat insignitus corona, pompa cum laudibus
for-the-victor had-proposed marked crown with-pomp with praises
eum prosequente, in presencia[m] imperatoris adducitur. Quem
him following into the-presence of-the-emperor he-is-led whom
imperator de singulari probitate non mediocriter collaudans
the-emperor for singular prowess not moderately praising
cuiuscumque muneris a se uoluisse remuneracionem
of-whatever gift from himself to-have-wished the-reward
poscere concessit. Ille autem "nil aliud" ait "tuam mihi,
to-ask granted he moreover nothing else he-says your on-me
O imperator, munificenciam opto conferre, nisi ut primam
O emperor munificence I-wish to-confer except that the-first

congressionem si[n]gularis pugne que tibi contra tuorum
clash of-single combat which for-you against of-your
aliquem hostium sit agenda concedat." Annuit imperator
any of-enemies be to-be-waged it-grant assented the-emperor
eumque in primo equestrium constituit ordine. Prima uero
and-him in the-first of-horsemen placed rank on-the-first but
die qua ipse ad miliciam assumptus fuerat tunicam sibi
day on-which he to knighthood taken had-been a-tunic for-himself
parauerat purpuream, quam, ad pretaxatum equestre
he-had-prepared purple which to the-aforementioned equestrian
certamen processurus, armis superinducens, tunicam
contest about-to-proceed over-(his)-arms drawing-on the-tunic
armature nuncupauit. Dumque a militibus quereretur cur eam
of-armor he-named and-when by the-knights it-was-asked why it
super arma induisset — neque enim antea huiusmodi tunica
over (his)-arms he-had-put-on nor for before of-this-kind a-tunic
armis septus aliquis usus fuerat — respondit se tunicam
with-arms girt anyone used had he-answered himself the-tunic
armature ad hornatum adhibuisse. Ad quod responsum ei ab
of-armor for adornment to-have-applied at which answer for-him by
omni acclamatur excercitu: "nouus miles cum tunica armature!
all is-acclaimed the-army the-new knight with the-tunic of-armor
nouus miles cum tunica armature!" ac deinceps hoc illi
the-new knight with the-tunic of-armor and thenceforth this to-him
mansit uocabulum, "Miles cum tunica armature." Qui altiori
remained name the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor who higher
ab imperatore promotus honore semper ad altiora uirtutis
by the-emperor promoted honor always to higher-things of-valor
et probitatis tendebat, cui in omni congressu, in omni
and of-prowess made-his-way to-whom in every clash in every
certamine, celebre nomen singularisque fortitudo ascribebatur.
contest a-famous name and-singular strength was-ascribed

Dum hec Rome geruntur, bellum inter Persarum
while these-things at-Rome are-done war between of-the-Persians
regem Christianosque Ierosolimis commorantes oriri contigit.
the-king and-the-Christians at-Jerusalem dwelling to-arise it-happened
Ventumque erat ad diem prefinitum certamini et tam
and-come it-was to the-day predetermined for-the-contest and both
equestrium quam pedestrium ingentibus copiis conferte
of-horsemen and of-foot-soldiers with-huge forces dense
circumstantes acies sibi spectaculum incuciebant terroris,
standing-around lines to-themselves a-spectacle struck of-terror
distinctisque ordinibus gradatim ad prelium appropriabant.
and-with-distinguished ranks gradually to battle approached
Jamque tubis clangentibus, tensis neruis, telisque
and-now with-trumpets blaring with-stretched strings and-with-darts
erectis, primipilares dextras conserere festinabant, dum euo
raised the-chief-centurions right-hands to-join hastened when by-age
consilioque maturiores utriusque partis, considerantes tante
and-counsel the-riper of-each side considering of-so-great
multitudinis tantique roboris conflictum non sine maximo
a-multitude and-of-so-great strength the-clash not without the-greatest
posse fore discrimine, in medium procedentes, primum
to-be-able to-be peril into the-middle advancing the-first
refrenant impetum ac de pacis condicione locuturos ad
rein-in onset and about of-peace the-condition about-to-speak to
inuicem legatos dirigunt. Diutius autem inter eos locucione
each-other envoys send long moreover between them with-speech
habita, tandem in hoc uniuersi dedere consensum, ut
having-been-had at-last in this all gave consent that
hinc et inde unus ad duellum eligeretur et cui
on-this-side and on-that one for the-duel should-be-chosen and to-whom
cessisset uictoria cederet et rerum unde agebatur
should-have-yielded victory should-yield also of-things whence it-was-pleaded

dominium. Verumptamen Ierosol[om]itani, quia hoc sine
the-lordship nevertheless the-Jerusalemites because this without
assensu Cesaris, sub cuius degebant imperio, non audebant
the-assent of-Caesar under whose they-lived command not they-dared
concedere, sibi dari pecierunt inducias, donec ad
to-grant to-themselves to-be-given asked a-truce until to
Cesarem super hac re legacionem mitterent et eius
Caesar about this matter an-embassy they-should-send and his
uoluntatem agnoscerent; se uero ad hanc paccionem
will should-learn themselves but to this pact
pronos animo, si ab eo concederetur, iureiurando asserebant.
inclined in-mind if by him it-be-granted by-oath they-asserted
Igitur, concessis induciis, qui hac legacione fungerentur eligunt,
therefore with-granted truce who this embassy should-perform they-choose
electosque, postposita dilacione, mittunt, precipientes illis, ut,
and-the-chosen with-set-aside delay send instructing them that
si Cesarem quod postulabant minime renuere animaduerterent,
if Caesar what they-asked not-at-all to-refuse they-should-notice
etiam ad propositum certamen idoneum uirum ab eo
also for the-proposed contest a-fit man from him
flagitarent. Missi itaque iter maturantes ad imperatorem
they-should-demand sent and-so the-way hastening to the-emperor
ueniunt inductique [in] senatum uie causam disertissime
come and-led-in into the-senate of-the-way the-cause most-eloquently
perorauerunt. Imperator autem, super relatis inito consilio,
pleaded the-emperor moreover about the-related with-entered counsel
eorum peticioni concedendum deliberauit, sed quem cum
their to-the-request to-be-granted decided but whom with
eis dirigeret dubitabat. Dumque uariis sentenciis sermo
them he-should-send he-doubted and-while with-various opinions the-talk
intractaretur, res Militis cum tunica armature defertur ad
was-handled the-matter of-the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor is-carried to

aures. Qui, nil moratus, in conspectu imperatoris, sumpta
(his)-ears who nothing having-delayed into the-sight of-the-emperor with-taken
audacia, prorupit atque "O!" ait, "imperator, tue munificencie
boldness burst-forth and O he-says emperor of-your munificence
te opto memorem [esse] qua me ad tyrocinium delectum,
you I-wish mindful to-be by-which me to apprenticeship chosen
me petente, dignanter donasti, ut primum singulare
with-me asking deigningly you-granted that the-first single
certamen quod tibi tuos contra aduersarios ineundum foret
contest which for-you your against adversaries to-be-entered were
mihi annueres. Ecce non tantum tibi et Romano populo,
to-me you-would-assent behold not only on-you and on-the-Roman people
uerum etiam fidei Christiane a perfidis bellum indicitur.
but also on-the-faith Christian by the-faithless war is-declared
Oro tuam sullimitatem ut mihi quod concessit permittat,
I-pray your highness that to-me what it-granted it-permit
quatinus et tue sponsionis effectum assequar et Romani
so-that both of-your promise the-effect I-may-attain and of-the-Roman
populi dignitatem cultumque religionis ulciscar." Imperator
people the-dignity and-the-worship of-religion I-may-avenge the-emperor
autem, licet tam probum militem et sibi necessarium
moreover although so upright a-knight and to-himself necessary
a se dimittere et tanto destinare discrimini admodum
from himself to-send-away and to-so-great to-assign peril very
egre ferret, tamen quia sua hoc exigebat promissio et illo
hardly he-bore yet because his this demanded promise and than-him
ad tale negocium magis nesciebat idoneum — presertim cum
for such business more he-knew-not fit especially since
ex illius qui mittendus erat fortitudine suorum omnium
from his who to-be-sent was strength of-all his
uires uirtutemque pensandas seque dampnum et dedecus,
the-forces and-valor to-be-weighed and-himself the-loss and disgrace

si uinceretur, lucrum autem et gloriam, si uicisset,
if he-were-conquered the-gain but and glory if he-had-conquered
manere nouerat — ex senatusconsultu fieri adiudicauit.
to-await he-knew from the-decree-of-the-senate to-be-done he-adjudged

THE BARBAROUS ISLAND

Sailing with a centurion and a hundred horsemen, the Knight is driven by storms to an island of a savage people ruled by Milocrates, who holds the emperor's niece, taken from the king of Illyria. Hunting in the royal forest, the Knight kills its guard and thirteen of his men. With Odabel he goes as a spy into the king's city, killing a boar on the way, and overhears the king's council plan to attack the Romans by land and sea with his brother's help.

Armis itaque bene et decenter instructum et munitum
with-arms and-so well and becomingly equipped and fortified
eum imperator cum legatis dirigit, centum ei insuper cum
him the-emperor with the-envoys sends a-hundred to-him besides with
uno centurione adiunctis equitibus, ut et honorifice pergeret
one centurion with-joined horsemen that both honorably he-might-go
et siquid sibi per tanta terrarum marisue spacia aduersi
and if-anything to-him through so-great of-lands or-of-sea spaces adverse
contigisset eorum amminiculo euitaret. Nec mora, uiam
should-have-happened their by-the-support he-might-avoid nor delay the-way
ineunt et ad mare Adriaticum deuenientes naues conscendunt.
they-enter and to the-sea Adriatic coming the-ships they-board
Erant autem rates cum eis xvi, quarum alias negociantes
there-were moreover ships with them sixteen of-which some trading
alias ad loca sancta properantes ob piratarum seuiciam
others to the-places holy hastening for of-the-pirates the-savagery
qui per maris latitudinem uagabantur in eorum comitatu
who through of-the-sea the-breadth wandered into their company

coudunauerant. Hiis igitur coniunctis, portum deserentes in
had-joined with-these therefore joined the-harbor leaving into
altum deferuntur. Quo diebus xxv tumidis iactati fluctibus,
the-deep they-are-carried where for-days twenty-five by-swelling tossed waves
dum nec portum petere nec rectum possent cursum
while neither the-harbor to-seek nor a-straight they-could course
dirigere, undique procellis surgentibus, magnisque circumacti
to-direct everywhere with-storms rising and-by-great driven-around
anfractibus, ad quandam insulam gentis barbarice appulsi
windings to a-certain island of-a-people barbarous landed
sunt. Cuius incole tante feritatis existebant, ut nulli sexui,
they-were whose inhabitants of-such ferocity were that to-no sex
nulli parcerent etati, quin sontes et insontes ab extranea
to-no they-spared age but-that guilty and innocent from foreign
nacione uenientes pari pena multarent. Ideoque a nullo
nation coming with-equal penalty they-punished and-therefore by no-one
petebantur sectante commercia, sed ab omni gente cui
they-were-sought following trade but by every people to-whom
tante infamia nequicie innotuerat uitabantur manebantque
of-such the-infamy of-wickedness had-become-known they-were-shunned and-they-remained
in orbe quasi extra orbem positi, ab omnium consorcio
in the-world as-if outside the-world placed from of-all the-fellowship
segregati. Nam et omnium pecudum ac uolucrum carne
separated for both of-all cattle and of-birds on-the-flesh
uesci inmodiceque dicuntur, uolumptati subditi, ut nec
to-feed and-immoderately are-said to-pleasure subjected so-that neither
patres filios nec filii a quibus sint geniti prossus agnoscant.
fathers sons nor sons by whom they-were begotten at-all recognize
Trium cubitorum statura mensuram non excedit etasque ad
of-three cubits the-stature the-measure not exceeds and-age to
quinquagesimum annum protenditur. Raro aliquis infra x
the-fiftieth year is-extended rarely anyone below ten

uita diffungitur nec quinquagesimum superuiuens annum
from-life departs nor the-fiftieth surviving year
transgreditur. Cultu cibisque diffusi, laboribus assueti, diuiciis
passes in-dress and-food lavish to-labors accustomed in-riches
affluentes in propagacione sobolis noscuntur fecundi. Jam
abounding in the-propagation of-offspring are-known fertile already
uero fama per omnes paganorum regiones percrebuerat,
but the-fame through all of-the-pagans the-regions had-spread
militem ab imperatore missum ad initum uenire duellum cuius
a-knight by the-emperor sent to the-entered to-come duel whose
congressum nemo sufferre ualebat. Ideoque ad uniuersas sue
encounter no-one to-endure could and-therefore to all of-their
dicionis insulas [in] Egeo mari — quod transfretaturus erat
sway the-islands in the-Aegean sea which about-to-cross he-was
— adiacentes clanculo mandauerant, ut portus et littora
lying-near secretly they-had-sent that the-harbors and shores
iugi excubacione obseruarent, et, si forte appulisset,
with-continual watch they-should-guard and if perhaps he-had-landed
opprimerent, ne ad statutum diem uenire potuisset. Nec
they-should-overwhelm lest to the-appointed day to-come he-might-be-able nor
non et piratas diuersis in locis lata equoris statuerant
not also pirates various in places the-broad of-the-sea they-had-appointed
obsidere spacia, ut, si ab hostia obseruantibus minime
to-besiege spaces that if by the-harbor-mouths those-watching not-at-all
lesi euasissent, ab hiis qui per fretum usque discurrebant
harmed they-had-escaped by those who through the-strait continually ran-about
inopinate exciperentur. Regnabat autem ea tempestate
unexpectedly they-might-be-received reigned moreover at-that time
in illa insula quidam, dictus Milocrates, inimicus Romani
in that island a-certain-man called Milocrates hostile to-the-Roman
populi, qui, neptem imperatoris quam regi Illirico
people who the-niece of-the-emperor whom to-the-king Illyrian

dederat ui capiens et abducens, illam insulam potencia
he-had-given by-force capturing and carrying-off that island by-power
occupauerat. Huic quoque sicut et ceteris notificatis
had-seized to-him also as also to-the-others with-made-known
insidiis, ciuitates et oppida que uel pelago imminebant
the-ambushes the-cities and towns which either over-the-sea towered
seu penes quas aptos applicantibus portus fore compererat
or near which fit for-those-landing harbors to-be he-had-learned
militibus et custodibus munierat, ut et ille transeuntem
with-knights and guards he-had-fortified that both those the-one-crossing
infestarent et hee appellentes subito inuaderent. Littora autem
might-harass and these the-landing suddenly might-invade the-shores moreover
quibus applicuerant per girum erant circumdata nemoribus,
on-which they-had-landed in a-circle were surrounded by-groves
minus tamen opima agrestibus animalibus, unde ob eorum
less yet rich in-wild animals whence for their
raritatem et ab incolis extraneisque superuenientibus
rarity and from the-inhabitants and-strangers arriving
arcius seduliusque seruabantur, quorum esu, rege
more-strictly and-more-carefully were-guarded of-which the-eating with-the-king
excepto ac eius principibus, nulli fas erat perfrui.
excepted and his princes to-none lawful it-was to-enjoy
Hanc igitur ubi prefatus centurio cum sua classe est nactus
this therefore when the-aforesaid centurion with his fleet had reached
insulam, Miles cum tunica armature, paucis comitantibus,
island the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor with-few accompanying
puppim egressus siluas uenatum adiit. Jamque vi
the-ship having-left the-woods to-hunt approached and-now with-six
prostratis, discopulatis canibus, vii insequi ceruum ceperat,
laid-low with-unleashed dogs a-seventh to-follow stag he-had-begun
dum ecce canum latratus tubarumque strepitus in interiorem
when behold of-the-dogs the-barking and-of-the-trumpets the-din in the-inner

siluam positus custos percepit nemoris. Accitisque sociis
wood placed the-guard perceived of-the-grove and-with-summoned comrades
quorum tutele secum silua tuenda a rege commissa
whose to-the-protection with-him the-wood to-be-guarded by the-king entrusted
fuerat arma iubet capere. Nam xx milites, qui illam
had-been arms he-orders to-take for twenty knights who it
tuerentur, disponebantur, quorum absque licencia nulli tutus
should-guard were-arranged whose without leave to-no-one safe
in ea patebat ingressus. Arma iussi capiunt atque uenantibus
into it lay-open entrance arms the-ordered take and to-the-hunters
iam preda potitis occurrunt. Querunt cuius licencia regia
already of-the-prey possessed they-run-to-meet they-ask whose by-leave the-royal
depopulentur nemora, que nec etiam ingressu pacifico subire
they-lay-waste groves which not even with-entrance peaceful to-enter
cuiquam licebat. Jubentur arma deponere atque pro
for-anyone it-was-allowed they-are-ordered arms to-lay-down and for
temeritate patrata iudicium subituri regem adire. E
the-rashness perpetrated judgment about-to-undergo the-king to-approach from
contra Miles cum tunica armature respondit: “Cuius
opposite the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor answered by-whose-(leave)
huc aduenimus eiusque licencia nobis necessaria inuadimus,
here we-have-come and-his by-leave for-us necessary-things we-invade
nec arma nisi in uestris uisceribus recondita deponemus.”
nor arms except in your vitals buried we-shall-lay-down

Dixerat et ualido contorquens pila lacerto,
He-had-spoken and with-strong hurling the-javelins arm
in tumido rigidum congessit gutture ferrum,
in the-swollen rigid lodged throat the-iron
cuius dextra grauis compescuit ora minantis.
whose right-hand heavy checked the-mouth of-the-threatening-one

Custos autem nemoris saucius ingemuit, sed tamen ipso
the-guard moreover of-the-grove wounded groaned but yet by-the-very
dolore magis intumuit atque e plaga extractum toto
pain more swelled and from the-wound drawn-out with-whole
conamine missile in Militem cum tunica armature remisit
effort the-missile at the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor sent-back
quod ab eo errore delatum robori infixum est. Nec mora,
which from him by-error carried into-an-oak fixed was nor delay
hinc et inde concurrunt ceteri et nunc cominus,
on-this-side and on-that run-together the-others and now at-close-quarters
consertis dextris, sibi inuicem uulnera ingerunt, nunc
with-joined right-hands on-themselves mutually wounds they-inflict now
eminus telorum iactu confligunt. Ex parte quidem Militis
from-afar by-the-throw of-darts they-fight on the-side indeed of-the-Knight
cum tunica armature plures habebantur sed inermes, cum
with the-tunic of-armor more were-held but unarmed while
aduersariis omnium muninen armorum adesset. At Miles
with-the-adversaries of-all the-protection of-arms was-present but the-Knight
cum tunica armature, dum suos cedere uideret hostibus,
with the-tunic of-armor when his-men to-yield he-saw to-the-enemies
stricto gladio in eorum ducem irruens humo prostrauit,
with-drawn sword on their leader rushing to-the-ground laid-low
apprehensoque naso cassidis eum ad socios traxit
and-with-seized the-nose-piece of-the-helmet him to (his)-comrades dragged
ac uita cum armis destituit. Quibus ipse indutus, propriam
and of-life with (his)-arms deprived in-which he clothed his-own
hortatus turmam, inuasit hostilem, ceterisque fugatis
having-exhorted troop attacked the-hostile and-with-the-others put-to-flight
xiii solus peremit. Fugientes uero per siluarum abdita
thirteen alone he-killed the-fleeing but through of-the-woods the-hidden-places
turba insequitur militum, omnesque quos assequi possunt
the-crowd pursues of-knights and-all whom to-overtake they-can

ad Tartara dirigunt. Cui cedi unus superstes relinquitur,
to Tartarus send to-which slaughter one survivor is-left
ut tante cladis existat nuncius. Is inter densa fruticum
that of-so-great a-disaster he-may-be the-messenger he among the-thick of-the-bushes
se o[c]culens delituit, donec manus aduersaria discedens
himself hiding lay-hid until the-band adversary departing
se desisteret persequi. Qua recedente, ocius surrexit,
itself should-cease to-pursue with-which withdrawing swiftly he-rose
regem adiit atque ei que gesta fuerant retulit.
the-king approached and to-him what-things done had-been related
Morabatur autem tunc temporis rex Milocrates in finitima
was-staying moreover at-that of-time king Milocrates in a-neighboring
ciuitate, quam tribus milibus a mari amenissimo in
city which three miles from the-sea a-most-pleasant in
loco condiderat. Qui, hostium aduentu suorumque
place he-had-founded who of-the-enemies with-the-coming and-of-his
militum interitu congnito, missis continuo nunciis, tocius
of-knights the-death known with-sent at-once messengers of-the-whole
prouincie principes, cum quanta manu ualerent, quantocius
province the-princes with as-great a-band they-could as-quickly-as-possible
conuenire imperat. Illi autem, ut imperatum erat et loco
to-come-together commands they moreover as commanded it-was both in-place
et tempore, cum collecta multitudine aduenium. Aduenientes
and time with gathered multitude come coming
autem per uicinos pagos hospitabantur, quia predicta
moreover through the-neighboring villages were-lodged because the-aforesaid
eos ciuitas capere non poterat. Rex uero Milocrates cum
them city to-hold not could the-king but Milocrates with
eorum principibus quid agendum foret deliberabat.
their princes what to-be-done would-be deliberated

Interea Miles cum tunica armature, deuictis hostibus, ad
meanwhile the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor with-conquered enemies to
naues regreditur, cuius uictorie adeptis remuneratus spoliis
the-ships returns of-whose victory with-the-obtained rewarded spoils
omnis congratulatur exercitus. Die autem tercia inceptum
all congratulates the-army on-the-day moreover third the-begun
affectabatur iter aggredi, sed, flabris obstantibus, in
it-was-desired journey to-undertake but with-the-blasts opposing in
loco coacti sunt remorari. Centurio igitur nimis inde
the-place compelled they-were to-delay the-centurion therefore exceedingly thence
afflictus maiores milicie congregat atque ab eis de
afflicted the-greater of-the-army gathers and from them about
patrandis negociis consilium expetit. Affirmabat enim
to-be-accomplished affairs counsel seeks he-affirmed for
regem illius insule eiusque principes ob suorum perniciem
the-king of-that island and-his princes for of-his-men the-destruction
iam se contra moueri eosque in ulcionem peremptorum
already themselves against to-be-moved and-them in vengeance of-the-slain
se oppressum ire iam conspirasse, ni discessum
themselves to-overwhelm to-go already to-have-conspired unless (their)-departure
cicius maturassent. Se autem, sibi aura
more-quickly they-had-hastened themselves moreover for-themselves with-the-breeze
remittente, inde discendere non ualere, nec tutum fore illuc
slackening thence to-depart not to-be-able nor safe to-be there
dicebat manendum, dum nec ad multitudinis repulsionem
he-said to-be-remained while neither for of-the-multitude the-repulsion
hostium militum haberetur copia nec suis expensis tam
of-the-enemy of-knights was-held abundance nor for-their expenses so
longo in tempore necessaria suppeterent. “Oportet” inquit
long in time necessities would-suffice it-is-fitting he-said
“igitur quempiam nostrum uires et consilia inuestigatum
therefore someone of-us the-strength and counsels to-investigate

ire aduersariorum, ut. cognitis que penes eos factitantur,
to-go of-the-adversaries that with-known what-things among them are-done
que nobis agenda sunt utilius prouideamus." Dicta
what-things for-us to-be-done are more-usefully we-may-provide the-words
ducis placent atque qui hoc exerceant negocium duo de
of-the-leader please and who this should-carry-out business two from
omnibus eliguntur, quorum unus Miles cum tunica armature,
all are-chosen of-whom one the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
alter, Odabel dictus, centurionis exstabat consanguineus, qui
the-other Odabel called of-the-centurion stood kinsman who
et in dubiis prouidi et cauti et in aduersis probi et
both in doubtful-matters provident and cautious and in adversities upright and
strenui pre ceteris noscebantur. Hii armis septi iussum
vigorous beyond the-others were-known these with-arms girt the-ordered
iter arripiunt atque per nemus ad urbem tendunt. In
way seize and through the-grove to the-city make-their-way at
cuius silue aditu aper illis immanis occurrit, colla ad
of-this wood the-entrance a-boar to-them monstrous ran the-neck in
modum hastilium setis obsitus, aduncis dentibus rictus
the-manner of-spear-shafts with-bristles covered with-hooked teeth the-jaws
munitus, ab cuius ore fulmine euaporante, spumaque per
armed from whose mouth with-lightning steaming and-foam over
armos fluente, obliquo in illo impetu ferebatur. Miles
the-shoulders flowing oblique in that onset was-borne the-Knight
cum tunica armature autem, illo uiso, de sonipede
with the-tunic of-armor moreover with-him seen from the-steed
desiliit, ac splendidum dextra uibrans uenabulum,
leapt-down and the-splendid with-right-hand brandishing hunting-spear
antequam se copiam aggrediendi haberet, in illo pedes
before itself the-chance of-attacking it-should-have on it on-foot
irruit. Cuius fronti inter supercilia infixum spiculum,
he-rushed whose in-the-forehead between the-eyebrows fixed the-point

cetera percurrens, sibi per ilia fecit exitum. Nec
the-rest running-through for-itself through the-flanks made exit nor
tamen statim corruit, sed cum accepto uulnere furorem
yet at-once it-fell but with the-received wound fury
concepisse uidebatur, ut, tametsi deficiente sanguine
to-have-conceived it-seemed so-that although with-failing blood
uires plurimum defecissent, quantumuis dabatur, eum cum
the-strength very-much had-failed as-much-as was-given him with
dente impeteret. Op[p]osito uero egide dum ictum Miles
(its)-tusk it-attacked with-opposed but the-shield while the-blow the-Knight
cum tunica armature exciperet, euaginato gladio, capud in
with the-tunic of-armor received with-drawn sword the-head against
se furentis abscidit ac eum in suo cruore uolutantem
himself of-the-raging-one he-cut-off and it in its gore rolling
dimisit. Quem equo impositum ipsius armiger sui ex
left which on-a-horse placed his armor-bearer his from
parte ad centurionem detulit atque citato cursu rediens
side to the-centurion carried and with-quickened course returning
illum ad urbis ualuas mediante die anticipauit. Ciuitatem
him at of-the-city the-gates at-mid day reached-first the-city
autem introgressi palacium adire, mixtique cum aliis inter
moreover having-entered the-palace to-approach and-mixed with others among
regales quasi forent ex ipsis conuersabantur. Innumerosa
the-royal-men as-if they-were from them conversed the-innumerable
namque turba eos qui essent non deprehensi sinebat, dum
for crowd them who they-were not detected allowed while
etiam et hoc ad eorum accidisset tutelam, quod illius
also even this to their had-happened protection that of-that
patrie lingue periciam non ignorabant. Urbem itaque
country of-the-language the-skill not they-were-ignorant-of the-city and-so
pagosque quoquouersus perlustrantes uirtutem numerumque
and-the-villages on-every-side surveying the-strength and-number

milicie inuestigabant aut que presens aderat ceu quam fore
of-the-army they-investigated either what present was-there or which to-be
uenturam audierant; minime quippe adhuc omnis exercitus
about-to-come they-had-heard not-at-all indeed yet all the-army
conuenerat. Pridie namque rex Milocrates classem
had-come-together the-day-before for king Milocrates the-fleet
Romanorum quosdam exploratum miserat, qui repedantes
of-the-Romans certain to-spy-out had-sent who returning
oppido eum terruerant, se tantam astipulantes armatorum
greatly him had-terrified themselves so-great affirming of-armed-men
repperisse multitudinem, quantam inermium eius insula
to-have-found a-multitude as of-unarmed his island
nunquam continuisset. Exploratores siquidem a centurione
never would-have-contained the-spies indeed by the-centurion
capti fuerant, quos ille ibi mortem minans se talia
captured had-been whom he there death threatening themselves such-things
dicturos sacramento spondere coegerat. Insuper et eis, quo
about-to-say by-oath to-promise had-compelled besides also to-them that
eos sibi fideliores haberet, plurima dona largitus ad
them to-himself more-faithful he-might-have very-many gifts having-bestowed to
propria eos dimisit, unde rex Milocrates classem inuasum ire
their-own them sent-away whence king Milocrates the-fleet to-attack to-go
nisi cum forti manu uerebatur. Germanum autem suum,
except with a-strong band feared the-brother moreover his
Buzafarnan nomine, confinia regna regentem per legatos
Buzafarnan by-name the-neighboring realms ruling through envoys
acciuerat, ut sibi in tanta necessitate quanta et quam
he-had-summoned that to-him in so-great necessity as-great and as
cicius posset conferret presidia. Cuius eo aduentum
quickly-as he-could he-might-confer garrisons whose with-him coming
expectante, belli protelabantur negocia. Eo autem die quo
awaiting of-war were-protracted the-affairs on-that moreover day on-which

Miles cum tunica armature urbem aduenerat rex forte
the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor to-the-city had-come the-king by-chance
Milocrates optimatum conuentum coegerat, ab eis sciscitans
Milocrates of-the-nobles a-meeting had-gathered from them inquiring
quid in rebus instantibus factu opus foret. In quo ab
what in the-affairs pressing to-be-done need would-be in which by
omnibus statutum est, ut, eius fratre, rege Buzarfarnan,
all decided it-was that his with-the-brother the-king Buzafarnan
aduentante, exercitus duabus distingueretur in partibus, e
arriving the-army two be-divided in parts of
quibus una nauali, alia terrestri aduersarios aggrederetur
which one by-naval the-other by-land the-adversaries should-attack
prelio, ut nullus fuge locus pateret. Miles uero cum
battle that no of-flight place lie-open the-Knight but with
tunica armature, inter alios incognitus residens, singula que
the-tunic of-armor among others unknown sitting each-thing which
dicebantur intenta aure, percepta memori mente notabat.
was-said with-intent ear perceived with-mindful mind noted

The Knight slips into the chamber of the queen, the emperor's niece. Nabaor, a spy he once befriended, tells him the queen loves him by report and longs to be freed, and brings him to her. She begs his help; Nabaor advises that forty men be sent secretly through the woods, so that when the king marches out she may hand them the city to seize and fire. The queen gives the Knight the king's sword and golden arms, fated to bring down the king, and he returns to the centurion.

Jamque Phebus occiderat et rex Milocrates ad prandium
and-now Phoebus had-set and king Milocrates to dinner
festinabat. In cuius comitatu se agens Miles cum
hastened in whose retinue himself conducting the-Knight with
tunica armature, sociis se aforis opperientibus, regiam
the-tunic of-armor with-(his)-comrades him outside awaiting the-palace
ingreditur, ceterisque discumbentibus, cubiculum quo
enters and-with-the-others reclining the-chamber where
neptis imperatoris scilicet regina, quam rex Milocrates,
the-niece of-the-emperor namely the-queen whom king Milocrates
ut pretaxauimus, legitimo uiro abstulerat, cum suis
as we-touched-on-above from-(her)-lawful husband had-taken-away with her
dumtaxat residebat puellis, nullo subit sciente, tardior
only sat girls with-no-one he-enters knowing the-later
quippe ora uisus hebetauerat sed necquid tale posse
indeed hour the-sight had-dulled but nor-anything such to-be-able
contingere aliquis autumabat. Cepit autem quid ageret apud
to-happen anyone reckoned he-began moreover what he-should-do with
se deliberare, et quicquid sinistri sibi obuenire ualeret
himself to-deliberate and whatever of-sinister to-him to-befall could
sedulo mentis oculo prouidere. Si enim, ut proposuerat,
diligently of-the-mind with-the-eye to-foresee if for as he-had-proposed
in thalamo delitescens regi sopito necem inferret,
in the-chamber lying-hid on-the-king asleep death he-should-bring

uerebatur ne et ipse deprehensus similem penam lueret. Si
he-feared lest also he caught a-like penalty he-should-pay if
autem, nulla probitate patrata, repedasset, profecto pro inerte
but with-no prowess accomplished he-had-returned surely for sluggish
timidoque haberetur. Dum talia secum uolueret, quidam
and-timid he-would-be-held while such-things with-himself he-turned a-certain
miles, Nab[a]or nunccupatus, unus scilicet ex illis quos nuper
knight Nabaor named one namely of those whom lately
rex classem centurionis exploratum miserat, missus a rege
the-king the-fleet of-the-centurion to-spy-out had-sent sent by the-king
ad reginam aduenit. Intuebatur eum Miles cum tunica
to the-queen came looked-at him the-Knight with the-tunic
armature nec ab illo aduertebatur; mos quippe est quod
of-armor nor by him was-he-noticed the-custom indeed it-is that
in umbra constituti luci presentes clare aspiciant ipsique ab
in shade placed in-light present clearly look-at and-they by
illis incircumspecti maneant. Hunc igitur Miles cum tunica
them unseen remain this-one therefore the-Knight with the-tunic
armature, dum cum aliis exploratoribus a centurione captus
of-armor while with other spies by the-centurion captured
teneretur, firma iunxerat amicicia, anulumque ei cum
he-was-held with-firm had-joined friendship and-a-ring to-him with
purpurea clamide ob sui tradiderat memoriam. Eo
a-purple cloak for of-himself had-given remembrance with-him
igitur uiso, ex amicicia audaciam sumit, eumque ad se
therefore seen from friendship boldness he-takes and-him to himself
clanculo acciens amplectitur, causam aduentus insinuat,
secretly summoning embraces the-cause of-(his)-coming intimates
atque quedam quibus eius ergasse experiretur prelocutus,
and certain-things by-which his toward-himself he-might-test having-said-first
fauorem — ubi eum sibi remota fraude animo aduertit
the-favor when him to-him with-removed fraud in-mind he-noticed

fauere — ad ea que mente perceperat perpetranda
to-favor for those-things which in-mind he-had-perceived to-be-accomplished
sibi subsidio fore supplicatur. Nabaor autem admodum
to-him as-help to-be he-entreats Nabaor moreover greatly
ex eius presencia admiratur et, cur uenerit cognito, eius
at his presence marvels and why he-had-come known his
remunerandi munificenciam locum se inuenisse gaudebat.
of-rewarding munificence an-occasion himself to-have-found rejoiced
Secreciori itaque ei inducto thalamo, "O mi" inquit
into-a-more-secret and-so him led chamber O my he-says
"karissime! tuo posse maius est quod affectas nec tuis
dearest than-your power greater is what you-aim-at nor by-your
solis uiribus appetendum. Triginta namque forcium regis
alone strength to-be-sought thirty for of-the-brave of-the-king
accubitus peruigiles ambiunt, uti nec etiam eius familiaribus,
the-couch wakeful surround so-that not even his to-the-intimates
usque dum dies lucescat, ad eum fiat accessus. Preterea
all-the-way until the-day dawns to him be-made access besides
plerisque temporibus industria pocius quam uiribus scias
on-most occasions by-industry rather than by-strength you-may-know
utendum, quia etiam ex parte uirium industria multociens
to-be-used because even from part of-strength by-industry many-times
quod cupitur prospere efficitur, sine qua ad successum
what is-desired prosperously is-accomplished without which to the-success
negocii nunquam uiribus uenitur. Hac autem comite,
of-a-business never by-strength one-comes with-this moreover as-companion
propositum aggredere, me tamen te quo ordine agatur
the-purpose undertake with-me yet you in-what order it-be-done
docente. Regina tui nimio detinetur amore teque uel
teaching the-queen of-you by-excessive is-held love and-you either
alloqui seu per internuncios tua cognicione ardentissime
to-address or through intermediaries your acquaintance most-ardently

cupit potiri. A me enim ab exploratoris redeunte officio
desires to-gain from me for from of-spy returning the-office
cuuis forme statureque sis sepius est percunctata, quem
of-what form and-stature you-are more-often she-has inquired whom
utrisque incomparabilem esse respondens eius animum in
in-both incomparable to-be answering her mind into
tui accendi amorem, ut pocius de tui quam de
of-you to-be-kindled the-love so-that rather about your than about
regis occupetur salute. Quamquam nimirum ut huius regina
of-the-king she-be-occupied the-safety although no-doubt as of-this queen
patrie maximo a rege Milocrate honoris et glorie sullimetur
country greatest by king Milocrates of-honor and glory she-be-raised
fastigio, tamen, quia se a maritali thoro captam
to-the-summit yet because herself from the-marital bed captured
iure predonis menti non excidit, semper se captiuitatis
by-the-right of-a-robber from-mind not it-has-fallen always her of-captivity
remordet obprobrium, malletque alias cum paupere
gnaws the-reproach and-she-would-prefer elsewhere with a-poor-man
libera quam hinc omni rerum pompa suffulta degere
free than here with-every of-things pomp supported to-live
captiua. Audiens autem te ob ingenitam incomparabilemque
captive hearing moreover you for inborn and-incomparable
probitatem ab imperatore ad pactum destinatum conflictum
prowess by the-emperor to the-agreed destined conflict
huc appulisse, toto conamine nititur, omni studio
hither to-have-landed with-whole effort she-strives with-every zeal
molitur, ut tuum modo adipisci possit alloquium. Sperat
she-contrives that your but to-obtain she-may-be-able address she-hopes
namque, si tuam attingat noticiam, se tua uirtute
for if your she-may-attain acquaintance herself by-your valor
et fortitudine a captiuitatis iugo iiberandam et suo
and strength from of-captivity the-yoke to-be-freed and to-her

marito, cui ab imperatore dotata noscitur, restituendam.
husband to-whom by the-emperor dowered she-is-known to-be-restored
Sciasque procul dubio omni industria et ingenio illam
and-you-may-know without doubt with-all industry and wit that-she
operam adhibituram, omni ab illa sagacitate curandum,
effort about-to-apply all by her sagacity to-be-taken-care
ut tibi uires et ualorem augeat et aduersum
that for-you strength and worth she-may-increase and against
regem Milocraten preualere efficiat. Verumptamen, quia
king Milocrates to-prevail she-may-make nevertheless because
mens muliebris leuitatis nota arguitur et ad quoslibet
the-mind womanly of-lightness by-the-mark is-accused and to any
motus inconstancie cicius aura flectitur, prius callide
motions of-inconstancy more-quickly by-the-breeze is-bent first cunningly
temptandum est quorsum eius uergat affectus. Que, si
to-be-tested it-is whither her may-incline affection who if
te adesse comperisset, nec regis timor nec fame
you to-be-present had-learned neither of-the-king the-fear nor of-reputation
pudor eam arceret, quin tecum uerba consereret. Pergam
the-shame her would-restrain but-that with-you words she-would-join I-shall-go
igitur ad eam, regis ei mandata laturus, atque inter
therefore to her of-the-king to-her the-commands about-to-carry and among
cetera de te sollerte mencionem faciens, cui parti eius
other-things about you skillfully mention making to-which side her
innitatur inuestigabo uoluntas. Tu uero hic interim rei
inclines I-shall-investigate the-will you but here meanwhile of-the-thing
latenter euentum expecta."
secretly the-outcome await
Regina[m] itaque Nabaor adiit; inter quos, dum uaria
the-queen and-so Nabaor approached between whom while various
miscerentur colloquia, de Milite cum tunica armature
were-mingled conversations about the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor

tandem sermo habitus est. Quem dum Nabaor de miris ab
at-last talk held was whom while Nabaor about wonderful by
eo patratis operibus multa laude efferret: "O me felicem!"
him performed deeds with-much praise extolled O me happy
inquit regina "si apud tam probum uirum mee ualerem
says the-queen if with so upright a-man of-my I-could
miserie querelam deponere profecto! si non ob aliud,
of-misery the-complaint to-lay-down surely if not for another-thing
saltim ob imperatoris graciam, cuius neptis ego sum et cuius
at-least for of-the-emperor the-favor whose niece I am and whose
miles ipse est, me ab huius erriperet tirannide! Vellem
knight he is me from this he-would-snatch tyranny I-would-wish
igitur, si quempiam fidelem inuenirem, ad eum nuncium
therefore if someone faithful I-found to him a-messenger
mittere, si quomodo nos uisendi et colloquendi nobis detur
to-send if in-what-way us of-seeing and of-conversing to-us be-given
facultas." Erat autem Nabaor, cum quo illa loquebatur,
the-faculty was moreover Nabaor with whom she spoke
unus ex illis quos una secum rex Milocrates seruitutis
one of those whom together with-himself king Milocrates of-servitude
uinculo mancipauerat. Ideoque illi, ut suorum secretorum
to-the-chain had-delivered and-therefore to-him as of-her secrets
conscio, sue mentis tucius committebat archana. Cui
to-the-confidant of-her mind more-safely committed the-secrets to-whom
ille respondit: "Nil tuis, O regina, impedimento fore
he answered nothing to-your O queen as-a-hindrance to-be
uotis rearis, si tibi dumtaxat huiusmodi inest affectus,
wishes think if in-you only of-this-kind is affection
nec nunci[i] opus erit, tantum fraus desit, dictis
nor of-a-messenger need will-there-be only let-fraud be-lacking to-the-words
tantummodo concordet uoluntas, et quem adeo affectas
only let-agree the-will and whom so you-long-for

presto pro uoto aderit." Illa autem ad hec iurante,
ready according-to wish will-be-present with-her moreover at this swearing
id se uelle optabilius fieri quam audere profiteri, Nabaor
that herself to-wish more-desirably to-be-done than to-dare to-profess Nabaor
Militem cum tunica armature ante eam duxit et rem
the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor before her led and the-thing
ei pro qua uenerat pandit. Porro, ut superius ostensum
to-her for which he-had-come discloses further as above shown
est, ille, statura uirilis, decorus exstabat aspectu
it-has-been he in-stature manly comely stood in-appearance
quo se aspecciencium oculos in se pre decoris
by-which himself of-the-beholders the-eyes upon himself for of-comeliness
admiracione conuerteret. Quem uenientem regina salutans
admiration he-turned whom coming the-queen greeting
assidere fecit, diuque diligenter eum contemplata tandem
to-sit-by made and-long diligently him having-contemplated at-last
lacrimis erumpentibus imo ex pectore suspiria protulit
with-tears bursting-forth the-deepest from breast sighs uttered
et quibus grauaretur erumpnis aperuit, eum sibi adiciens
and with-what she-was-weighed hardships she-disclosed him to-her adding
tantorum malorum posse conferre, si uellet, remedium. Et
of-such-great evils to-be-able to-confer if he-wished the-remedy and
ille: "Si meum uelle posse comitaretur, nempe nullius in
he if my will power accompanied surely of-no in
agendo more fieret dilacio. Sed patet regem numero
acting of-delay would-be-made postponement but it-is-plain the-king in-number
et uirtute nobis prestare milicie et iccirco incertum est
and in-valor than-us to-excel of-army and therefore uncertain it-is
quis nos belli maneat exitus. Unde, si quid calles, quod
what us of-war awaits outcome whence if anything you-know which
tuis uotis succedere, quod optatum negocium prospero
to-your wishes to-succeed which the-desired business with-prosperous

possit fine terminare, innotesce nec me pigrum desidemue in
could end to-terminate make-known nor me slow or-sluggish in
exequendo aduertes." Ad que dum regina reticens pa[u]lulum
carrying-out will-you-notice to which while the-queen being-silent a-little
que diceret cogitaret, Nabaor ait: "Minime te latet, O
what she-should-say considered Nabaor says not-at-all you it-escapes O
regina, regem coadunare exercitum contra hos dimicaturum,
queen the-king to-be-uniting an-army against these about-to-fight
sub cuius frequencia maximam rebus agendis uideo adesse
under whose frequency the-greatest for-things to-be-done I-see to-be-present
oportunitatem. Poteris enim, si eius tanta cura teneris,
opportunity you-will-be-able for if of-him so-great with-care you-are-held
et hunc cum sociis ab instanti subtrahere periculo et
both him with (his)-comrades from the-pressing to-withdraw danger and
tuum affectum adoptatum effectum perducere; regis quippe
your affection to-the-desired effect to-bring of-the-king indeed
animus belli occupatus negociis minus de ceteris exstabit
the-mind of-war occupied with-the-affairs less about the-rest will-stand
solicitus. Manda igitur centurioni per hunc xl armis
anxious bid therefore the-centurion through this-one forty with-arms
instructos huc die postera clanculo per siluarum oppaca
equipped hither on-the-day following secretly through of-the-woods the-shades
delegare, ut sequente die, rege contra se ineunte
to-send that on-the-following day with-the-king against them entering
certamen, te eam tradente, illi ciuitatem occupent,
the-contest with-you it handing-over to-them the-city they-may-seize
que igne incensa regi suisque horrendum spectaculum,
which with-fire kindled to-the-king and-to-his a-dreadful spectacle
illis autem uictorie causam prebeat." Illa uero que dicta
to-them but of-victory the-cause may-provide she but what said
sunt eum multis precibus peragere rogitat. Ensem regis
were him with-many prayers to-carry-out asks the-sword of-the-king

preterea ac eius arma ei contulit aurea, de quibus
besides and his arms on-him she-conferred golden about which
fatatum erat quod ab eo deuictus rex regali spoliaretur
fated it-was that by him conquered the-king of-the-royal would-be-stripped
apice qui preter ipsum ea primitus induisset. Auri
summit who besides himself them first should-have-put-on of-gold
quoque et argenti magnique gemmarum precii copiosa
also and of-silver and-of-great of-gems price abundant
accumulauit munera insuper et amicicie coniunxit federa.
she-heaped gifts besides and of-friendship joined treaties
Quibus gestis, ad socios Miles cum tunica armature
with-which done to (his)-comrades the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
festinanter reuertitur, quos ab urbe educens diluculo ad
hastily returns whom from the-city leading-out at-dawn to
centurionem peruenit; cum, dona sibi collata ostendens,
the-centurion he-came with-(him) the-gifts to-him conferred showing
que gesserat, uiderat, audierat, intimauit.
what he-had-done seen heard he-made-known

Odabel leads forty men to a vineyard by the palace, where Nabaor lets them in to hide. When Milocrates marches out to battle, he finds his fated arms gone and sees the Knight wearing them; the men take and fire the city, the king turns back, and his army is routed and slaughtered. The Knight kills the king's nephew and then Milocrates himself. The Romans enter in triumph, the queen is sent back to her husband, and the island is laid under tribute; at sea the fleet meets Milocrates' brother Egesarius.

Centurio igitur ultra quam credi potest pro spe exhilaratus
the-centurion therefore beyond than to-be-believed it-can for hope gladdened
uictorie iussit milites qui ad reginam destinarentur eligi.
of-victory ordered the-knights who to the-queen should-be-sent to-be-chosen
Electis uero Odabel suum prefecit consanguineum, eumque
over-the-chosen but Odabel his he-set-over kinsman and-him
ut caute et prouide sibi commissos duceret hortatus
that cautiously and providently to-him the-entrusted he-should-lead having-exhorted
dimisit. Pergentes itaque ad uineam, que regie confinis
sent-off going and-so to the-vineyard which to-the-palace adjoining
erat, die secunda iam uesperascente, peruenere, in qua
was on-the-day second already growing-evening they-arrived in which
iussu regine a Nabaor intromissi nocte tota latuere.
by-the-order of-the-queen by Nabaor let-in the-night whole they-lay-hid
Mane autem illucescente, rex Milocrates contra
with-the-morning moreover dawning king Milocrates against
centurionem conflicturus cum exercitu ciuitatem egreditur,
the-centurion about-to-fight with the-army the-city goes-out
cuius ante maiorem partem, suo fratre duce, hostes
whose before the-greater part with-his brother as-leader the-enemies
autem tergo inuasuram classe permiserat, ut utrimque
moreover from-behind about-to-attack with-the-fleet he-had-sent that on-both-sides

bello circumdati cicius sibi cederent. At centurio,
by-war surrounded more-quickly to-him they-might-yield but the-centurion
percognito eorum consilio, naues in continente circum
with-thoroughly-known their plan the-ships on the-mainland around
castra locauerat, ut etiam, si opus esset, ad se
the-camp had-placed that also if need were to themselves
refugientibus forent munimini. Producit et ipse e
for-those-fleeing-back they-might-be for-a-defense leads-out also he from
castris miliciam, que parum ab ponto tuto in loco
the-camp the-army which a-little from the-sea safe in place
constituerat, militesque turmas in v partitur, quarum
he-had-stationed and-the-knights in-troops into five divides of-which
medie ipsemet preficitur. Gradiebaturque distincte ex
over-the-middle himself is-set and-advanced distinctly from
regis aduerso, quem xv milia armatorum stipabant acies.
of-the-king opposite whom fifteen thousand of-armed-men thronged the-lines
Sed quamuis numero roboreque precelleret bellatorum, spe
but although in-number and-strength he-excelled of-warriors in-hope
tamen minime pociebatur uictorie, armis scilicet ablatis in
yet not-at-all he-possessed victory with-the-arms namely taken-away in
quibus sui regnique constare tutelam nouerat. Que
which of-his-own and-of-the-kingdom to-consist the-protection he-knew which
dum iturus ad prelia requireret et nequaquam inuenisset,
while about-to-go to battle he-sought and by-no-means had-found
omnis boni successus sibi spes menti excidit, nec
all of-good of-success for-him the-hope from-(his)-mind fell nor
ea Militem cum tunica armature habere comperiit, donec
them the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor to-have learned until
ipsum illis indutum in campo pungnaturus aspexit. Ad
him in-them clothed in the-field about-to-fight he-saw at
quorum uisum nimis perteritus infremuit, quia hoc quod
whose sight exceedingly terrified he-roared because this which

postea euenit sibi nimis uere ratus expauescebat. Non
afterward happened for-himself too truly reckoned he-dreaded not
tamen ab incepto ualebat desistere, quia uel laudabiliter
yet from the-undertaking could to-desist because either praiseworthily
occumbere uel fortiter uincere sue uidebat glorie expedire.
to-fall or bravely to-conquer to-his he-saw glory to-be-expedient
Clangor igitur utrimque tubarum insonuit, quo et animis
the-blare therefore on-both-sides of-trumpets sounded by-which both to-the-minds
audacia et hostes aggrediendi signum solet contribui.
boldness and the-enemies of-attacking the-signal is-wont to-be-given
Manipularesque iam concurrere ceperant, dum ecce fumus
and-the-maniples already to-run-together had-begun when behold smoke
de ciuitate in sullime euaporans quid in ea ageretur
from the-city on high steaming-up what in it was-being-done
sui declarabat indicio. Ubi namque rex ad pungnam
of-itself declared by-the-sign when for the-king to the-fight
properans ab illa egressus est, confestim hii qui in insidiis
hastening from it gone-out had at-once those who in ambush
morabantur surgentes illam sue dicioni mancipauerant
stayed rising it to-their sway had-delivered
ac eius suburbana, igne inmisso, accenderant. Flamma
and its suburbs with-fire set kindled with-the-flame
autem altiora petente, remocius positis iam ciuibus
moreover higher-things seeking with-more-remotely placed already the-citizens
urbis patebat exit[i]um, ut etiam austro acte per
of-the-city lay-open the-destruction so-that even by-the-south-wind driven through
pugnancium ora uolitarent fauille. Cor itaque regis
of-the-fighters the-faces flew the-embers the-heart and-so of-the-king

pro imminenti expauit discidio, atque, certamine inchoato
for the-impending dreaded ruin and with-the-contest begun
postposito, succursum ire urbi festinabat.
set-aside to-succor to-go to-the-city hastened

Agmina turbari telisque manus uacuari,
The-columns to-be-disordered and-of-darts the-hands to-be-emptied
conspiceresque uage et consuluisse fuge.
and-you-would-see wandering and to-have-taken-counsel of-flight
Mille uias ineunt, non est tamen una duobus;
A-thousand ways they-enter not is yet one for-two
sic hostes fugiunt ceu canis ora pecus.
so the-enemies flee as of-the-dog the-face the-flock
Instat et insequitur contraria pars fugientes,
Presses and pursues the-opposing side the-fleeing
et quos assequitur clade dat esse pares.
and whom it-overtakes by-slaughter it-gives to-be equal
Cautibus obruitur pars, pars punita recumbit;
By-rocks is-overwhelmed a-part a-part punished lies-back
que neutrum patitur, uincula dira luit.
which neither suffers bonds dire pays

Miles autem cum tunica armature dissipari fugarique
the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor to-be-scattered and-put-to-flight
subito hostium cuneos conspiciens, conglobato milite,
suddenly of-the-enemies the-wedges seeing with-gathered soldiery
insequitur, maximaque in eis strage grassatur, quippe quos
pursues and-with-the-greatest on them slaughter rages indeed whom
non solum flamma urbis conflagrans edificia terruerat, uerum
not only the-flame of-the-city blazing buildings had-terrified but
etiam ipsa quam inierant fuga eos plurimum mente
also the-very which they-had-entered flight them very-much in-mind

manuque dissolutos reddiderat. Dispersi itaque per conuexa
and-hand loosened had-rendered scattered and-so through the-vaults
moncium, per deuia siluarum, ceu grex luporum impetitus
of-the-mountains through the-byways of-the-woods like a-herd of-wolves attacked
rabie, ad menia tendebant, sineque intermissione ab
by-madness to the-walls they-made-their-way and-without intermission by
insectancium punibantur gladiis. Milites quoque qui exteriorem
of-the-pursuers were-punished the-swords the-knights also who the-outer
urbis partem inflammauerant, fugientibus occurrentes, eos
of-the-city part had-set-ablaze the-fleeing meeting them
a meniis arcebant et ad campum retorquentes in
from the-walls kept-off and to the-field turning-back into
eorum quos fugiebant manus compellebant incidere. Fiebat
of-those whom they-fled the-hands compelled to-fall arose
utrimque horrenda cedes ipsaque sui impediebantur
on-both-sides dreadful slaughter and-by-their-own of-themselves they-were-hindered
numerositate, ut nec ad fugam nec ad sui defensionem
numerousness so-that neither for flight nor for of-themselves defense
habiles haberentur. Mouebantur et absque uindice, ut uulgus
fit they-were-held they-were-moved also without avenger as a-crowd
inerme, nullusque petenti dextram dare dignatus est.
unarmed and-no-one to-the-one-asking the-right-hand to-give deigned has
Tandem autem rex Milocrates, ubi se ab hostibus undique
at-last moreover king Milocrates when himself by the-enemies everywhere
circumueniri conspexit, sibi fore duxit infame, si, nullo
to-be-surrounded saw for-himself to-be he-thought infamous if with-no
claro p[er]petrato facinore, occumberet. Dispersos itaque adunit
famous accomplished deed he-should-fall the-scattered and-so he-unites
in cuneum, sibique insistentes uiriliter inuadens primo
into a-wedge and-on-himself those-pressing manfully attacking at-the-first
congressu aduersariorum refrenat impetum ac sibi compellit
clash of-the-adversaries he-reins-in the-onset and to-himself compels

cedere. Dextraque quam plures propria puniens, ceteros ad
to-yield and-with-right-hand very many his-own punishing the-others to
fugam uertebat, donec Miles cum tunica armature, suos ab
flight turned until the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor his by
illo commilitones male tractari aduertens, ei, admisso equo,
him comrades ill to-be-treated noticing to-him with-let-go horse
obuiam fertur. Venientem rex Milocrates audacter excipit,
to-meet is-borne the-coming-one king Milocrates boldly receives
inuicemque congressi uterque ab altero equo prosternitur.
and-mutually clashed each by the-other from-the-horse is-laid-low
Ac Miles cum tunica armature cicius erectus iam surgere
and the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor more-quickly raised already to-rise
conantem, stricto mucrone, in regem irruit letalique
him-trying with-drawn sword on the-king rushed and-with-a-deadly
affecisset uulnere, ni ictus ab obiecto cassaretur clipeo.
would-have-affected wound had-not the-blow by the-interposed were-canceled shield
Quem licet sit nulla secuta lesio magna, tamen hebetacio
which although has no followed injury great yet dullness
prouenit cerebro, ut iterum relapsus unius hore spacio
came to-(his)-brain so-that again having-fallen-back of-one hour for-the-space
sopito iaceret similis. Quem secundo mucrone uolenti
to-one-asleep he-lay like whom with-a-second sword to-him-wishing
impetere probus iuuenis regis ei nepos occurrit, ac
to-attack an-upright youth of-the-king to-him the-nephew runs-to-meet and
ore et manu minitans a leuo eques Militem cum
with-mouth and hand threatening from the-left a-horseman the-Knight with
tunica armature inuadit. Cuius incursus Miles cum tunica
the-tunic of-armor attacks whose onset the-Knight with the-tunic
armature pedes a se scuto protectus reppulit atque
of-armor on-foot from himself by-(his)-shield protected repelled and
sibi fortuna oblatum amento intorquens iaculum, non umbo,
to-him by-fortune offered with-the-thong whirling a-javelin not the-boss

non ferrea lorica obstitit, quin sub stomacho exceptum suis
not the-iron mail-coat resisted but-that under the-stomach received than-his
maiora minitantem uiribus cum selle carpella confoderet.
greater-things threatening strength with of-the-saddle the-pommel it-pierced
Illo denique prostrato, regem repetit, sed maiori quam
with-him at-last laid-low the-king he-seeks-again but with-greater than
existimauerat ab illo audacia exceptus est. Respiranti
he-had-reckoned by him boldness received he-was to-him-recovering-breath
namque pudor et ira uires ministrauerant, pristine dignitatis
for shame and anger strength had-supplied of-former dignity
et probitatis eius ante mentis oculos reducentes memoriam,
and prowess his before of-his-mind the-eyes bringing-back the-memory
eumque ut se de inimicis ultum iret instimulauerant,
and-him that himself on (his)-enemies to-avenge he-should-go had-goaded
se minime, ut quempiam plebeium, censentes penas
himself not-at-all as some plebeian judging penalties
soluendum, presertim dum sibi non ulla de sui
to-be-paid especially while for-himself not any of his-own
erepcione spes suppeteret [quam] operam dare ne suis
rescue hope was-at-hand than effort to-give lest to-his-men
de se leta hostibus proueniret uictoria. Aduenientem
over himself glad for-the-enemies should-come victory the-coming
igitur Militem cum tunica armature ipse prior impetit,
therefore the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor he first attacks
gladio eiusque qua galea inmunita erat fronti
with-the-sword and-his where by-the-helmet unprotected it-was on-the-forehead
uulnus inflixit, nique nasus qui a casside deorsum
a-wound inflicted and-unless the-nose-piece which from the-helmet downward
prominet fuisset presidio, una mortem intulisset
projects had-been for-protection at-once death he-would-have-brought
cum uulnere. Miles cum tunica armature autem sauciatus
with the-wound the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor moreover wounded

mente effrenatur, timensque ne profluente uisus hebetaretur
in-mind is-unbridled and-fearing lest by-the-flowing the-sight be-dulled
sanguine, sue ab illo penas exacturus iniurie, regem
blood of-his from him the-penalties about-to-exact of-injury the-king
aggreditur, ac ensem obliquo ceruici ictu inferens capud
attacks and the-sword with-an-oblique on-the-neck blow bringing the-head
cum dextro ei prescidit brachio. Quo occumbente,
with the-right from-him cut-off arm with-whom fallen
hii qui cum eo restiterant fuga labuntur, in qua sue
those who with him had-stood-firm in-flight slip-away in which of-their
sola spes constabat salutis. At centurio, multitudini parcere
alone the-hope consisted of-safety but the-centurion the-multitude to-spare
uolens, tuba ne fugientes persequerentur militibus
wishing by-the-trumpet lest the-fleeing they-should-pursue to-the-knights
significari imperat, sciens, duce subacto, qui suberant
to-be-signaled orders knowing with-the-leader subdued those-who were-under
sine prelio sibi cessuros. Exin, hostium collectis spoliis,
without battle to-him about-to-yield thereupon of-the-enemies with-collected spoils
cum triumphali pompa urbem ingrediuntur fornixque eis
with triumphal pomp the-city they-enter and-an-arch for-them
erigitur. Quibus regina, neptis imperatoris, occurrens eos
is-raised to-whom the-queen niece of-the-emperor running-to-meet them
in regiam ducit atque bello plurimum fatigatos omni
into the-palace leads and by-war very-much wearied with-all
refouet diligencia. Occisis sepulturam, sauciis curam
refreshes diligence for-the-slain burial for-the-wounded care
mandat adhiberi medele, omnibusque se munificentissimam
she-bids to-be-applied of-healing and-to-all herself most-munificent
exhibuit ac debitis omnes premiis remunerauit.
showed and with-due all rewards rewarded

Centurio autem apud hanc insulam xv perhendinans diebus
the-centurion moreover at this island fifteen staying days
patriam exercitui diripiendam permisit, principes et magistratus,
the-country to-the-army to-be-plundered allowed the-princes and magistrates
quod cum hoste Romani populi consensissent, serratis
because with the-enemy of-the-Roman people they-had-agreed with-toothed
carpentis transegit, populum graui condicione uectigalium
wagons he-ran-through the-people with-heavy condition of-tributes
multauit. Parteque milicie ibi ob tutandam insulam relicta,
he-punished and-with-part of-the-army there for protecting the-island left
reginaque, nepte imperatoris, cum uiris electis ad uirum
and-with-the-queen niece of-the-emperor with men chosen to (her)-husband
legitimum regem Illirie, a quo ui rapta fuerat, remissa,
lawful the-king of-Illyria by whom by-force seized she-had-been sent-back
ducentis secum illius prouincie assumptis militibus,
with-two-hundred with-himself of-that province taken knights
classem cum sociis refectam ascendit, legacionem quam
the-fleet with (his)-comrades refitted he-boarded the-embassy which
inceperat perfecturus. Cumque iam per undas equoreas iter
he-had-begun about-to-complete and-when already through the-waves of-the-sea the-way
confecisset diurnum, eccus regis Milocratis germanus, cuius
he-had-completed of-a-day behold of-king Milocrates the-brother whose
regnum obtinuerat, cum classe non minima occurrit. Missus
kingdom he-had-gained with a-fleet not least meets sent
quippe a rege Milocrate, ut prefatum est, antequam bellum
indeed by king Milocrates as said-before it-has-been before the-war
ageretur, oppres[s]um classem centurionis fuerat, ut utrimque
was-waged to-overwhelm the-fleet of-the-centurion he-had-been that on-both-sides
circumdatus et terra et mari sibi obstrueretur refugium.
surrounded both by-land and by-sea for-him might-be-blocked refuge
Sed ad stolum, ad stacionem uidelicet nauium centurionis
but to the-fleet to the-station namely of-the-ships of-the-centurion

ueniens nec naues nec eius repererat exercitum. Parum
coming neither the-ships nor his had-he-found army a-little
quippe remocius ab equore castra munierat, ea extrinsecus
indeed more-remotely from the-sea a-camp he-had-fortified them outside
quoquouersus prora ad sui statuentes munimen.
on-every-side with-prow for of-themselves setting defense
Existimans autem rex Egesarius — sic etenim dicebatur
reckoning moreover king Egesarius so for he-was-called
frater regis Milocratis — eos fugisse, uerso remige, in
the-brother of-king Milocrates them to-have-fled with-turned oar into
alto defertur equore, quo tumidis triduo iactatus fluctibus,
the-deep is-carried sea where by-swelling for-three-days tossed waves
dum hostia repetere disponeret, undique procellis
while the-harbor-mouths to-seek-again he-arranged everywhere with-storms
surgentibus, ad longius remotas prouincias itinere dierum v
rising to the-farther remote provinces in-a-journey of-days five
appulsus est. Set iam se aura leuius redibat agente
landed has but already itself with-the-breeze more-lightly he-returned driving
ac medio in pelago centurionis classi habetur obuius.
and the-middle in the-sea of-the-centurion to-the-fleet is-held meeting

The Knight recognizes the enemy fleet by the vanes on its masts. The centurion's ships, beaked and armored, are arrayed; the Knight sinks the enemy leader's galley but is surrounded, and the enemy hurl Greek fire into his ship. The author describes how such fire is made: of toads fed and gorged on milk, water snakes, the venom of a three-headed asp, the gall of a wolf, the ligurius stone, and much else.

Fortuitu autem ipse centurio in turre quam loco
by-chance moreover himself the-centurion in the-tower which in-place
propugnaculi in puppe erexerat, Milite cum tunica
of-a-bulwark on the-stern he-had-raised with-the-Knight with the-tunic
armature assidente, residebat, pelagi late uisu ambiens
of-armor sitting-by sat of-the-sea widely with-sight surveying
spacia. Et primitus quidem simulacra contemplatus est
the-spaces and first indeed the-images contemplated he-has
que ad galli aut ad alicuius rei speciem composita
which to of-a-cock or to some thing the-appearance made
malis imponuntur, ad experiendum uidelicet quo flabro
on-the-masts are-placed for testing namely by-what blast
agatur carina. Cuicumque namque parti mundi climatum
be-driven the-keel to-whatever for part of-the-world of-the-regions
flatus uergitur, semper ei aduersa fronte obsunt. Hec
the-blast is-turned always to-it with-opposed front they-are-opposed these
igitur malis inuexa, dum nunc ad alciora, nunc ad
therefore on-the-masts borne while now to higher-things now to
inferiora aura agente pellerentur uexilla, ceyces ratus,
lower-things with-the-breeze driving were-driven the-vanes kingfishers thinking
gubernatorem nauis aduocat atque "Heus!" inquit, "ut opinor,
the-helmsman of-the-ship he-calls and ho he-says as I-think
nobis tempestas ualida imminet. En namque, ut ille uolucres
for-us a-storm strong threatens lo for as those birds

pennis applaudentes orbiculatim per inania cursus dirigunt,
with-wings clapping in-a-circle through the-void (their)-courses direct
quasi futurorum prescie sua prelibant gaudia, nostra earum
as-if of-things-to-come foreknowing their they-foretaste joys our of-them
ingluuiei predam fore cadauera ferunt, quippe, imminente
for-the-gluttony as-prey to-be the-corpses they-say indeed with-impending
procella, aues huiusmodi tum gregatim tum separatim circa
storm birds of-this-kind both in-flocks and singly around
remigantes crebros girando exercere [solent] uolatus earumque
rowers frequent by-wheeling to-exercise are-wont flights and-their
gestus cladem portendere futuram." Miles aut[em] cum
gestures disaster to-portend future the-Knight but with
tunica armature tunc ei assistens et rem ut erat
the-tunic of-armor then to-him standing-by and the-thing as it-was
intelligens "Tua te" ait, "domine, fallit opinio. Aues namque
understanding your you he-says lord deceives opinion the-birds for
non sunt quas te credis cernere sed signa summitatibus
not they-are which you believe to-see but signs on-the-tops
malorum apposita. Sciasque procul dubio classem
of-the-masts placed and-you-may-know without doubt a-fleet
aduentare hostilem, iam dudum a rege tuis subiugato
to-be-approaching hostile already long-since by the-king by-your subjugated
uiribus nos persecutum missam. Forsitan quippe aliqua
strength us to-pursue sent perhaps indeed by-some
tempestate urgente externam coacti sunt petere regionem,
storm pressing a-foreign compelled they-were to-seek region
quod usque ad presens sibi more causa exstitit. Nunc
which all-the-way to the-present for-them of-delay the-cause stood now
uero, suis uotis aura fauente, redeunt. Militibus itaque
but to-their wishes with-the-breeze favoring they-return to-the-knights and-so
arma capere impera nec nos aduersarii inermes repperiant."
arms to-take order lest us the-adversaries unarmed should-find

Ad imperium igitur centurionis qui in illa naue habebantur
at the-command therefore of-the-centurion those-who in that ship were-held
armantur, ceterisque carinis — nam xxx erant, xv scilicet
are-armed and-to-the-other keels for thirty there-were fifteen namely
quas illo adduxit et totidem quas a subacta insula
which thither he-led and as-many which from the-subdued island
prioribus adiunxit — idem faciendi dant signa tibicines.
to-the-former he-joined of-the-same doing give signals the-pipers
Ordinantur que a fronte, que a dextra uel leua hostes
are-ordered which from the-front which from the-right or left the-enemies
inuadant, que etiam quasi insidiando circumueniant. Quinque
should-invade which also as-if by-ambushing should-surround five
autem quas rostratas habebat, in quarum prima ipse erat, in
moreover which beaked he-had in of-which the-first he-himself was in
fronte constituit, subito lintres aduenientes aggressuras hostiles.
front he-placed suddenly the-boats coming about-to-attack hostile
Hoc quidem nauium genere piratici maxime nauale exercentes
this indeed of-ships kind the-pirates especially naval waging
prelium utuntur, cuius uis tam immanis est, ut quamcumque
battle use whose force so monstrous is that whatever
ratem impeterit a summa usque ad inferiorem pro[s]cindat
ship it-has-attacked from the-highest all-the-way to the-lowest it-cleaves
tabulam. Iccirco uero rostrate dicuntur, quod omne
plank for-that-reason but beaked they-are-called because all
spacium inter proram et carinam eminens ferro tegitur,
the-space between the-prow and the-keel projecting with-iron is-covered
cristam aduncis premunitam ferreis habens in longitudine
a-crest with-hooked fortified with-iron having in length
prori, autem in uertice ferrea gerunt capita ad modum
the-prows moreover on the-top iron bear heads in the-manner
galli cristatis rostris munita. Eriguntur quoque propugnacula
of-a-cock with-crested beaks armed are-raised also bulwarks

quibus uiri imponuntur fortissimi, inpungnancium impetum
on-which men are-placed the-strongest of-the-attackers the-onset
a summo refrenaturi saxis et iaculis. Onerarie autem
from the-top about-to-rein-in with-stones and javelins the-cargo-ships moreover
puppes retro locantur, ut, si milite instructe cederent,
sterns behind are-placed that if with-soldiery the-equipped should-yield
saltim uel ipse manus diripiencium effugerent.
at-least even they the-hands of-the-plunderers might-escape
Omnibus itaque, ut expediebat, dispositis, iactatis anchoris,
with-all-things and-so as it-was-expedient arranged with-cast anchors
aduentum opperiebatur hostium. Jamque inimica classe
the-coming he-awaited of-the-enemies and-already with-the-hostile fleet
apparente, dictis Militis cum tunica armature uisus
appearing to-the-words of-the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor the-sight
fidem prebebat eumque insinuabat non falsum opinatum
faith provided and-him intimated not falsely thought
fuisse. Cateruatim et ipsi classem distinguunt nec minori
to-have in-companies also they the-fleet divide nor with-less
astucia singula tali discrimini necessaria preuident.
cunning each-thing for-such peril necessary they-foresee
Miles autem cum tunica armature, eos ad bella paratos
the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor them for wars ready
appropinquare intuens, chiulas confestim sublatis anchoris
to-approach seeing the-keels at-once with-raised anchors
solui, uentisque uela committens ipsas remis iubet
to-be-loosed and-to-the-winds the-sails committing them with-oars orders
impelli, atque, exercitu per transtra et tabulata disposito,
to-be-driven and with-the-army through the-thwarts and decks disposed
prior in liburnum quo dux hostium uehebatur irruit.
first upon the-galley in-which the-leader of-the-enemies was-carried rushed
Cuius prorum una cum carina confrigens impetu inmodicum
whose prow together with the-keel shattering with-onset immoderate

adusque malum ictum perduxit, quod, rostro impingente,
right-up-to the-mast the-blow carried which by-the-beak striking
fractum undas compulit oppetere uertice. Assunt et alie
broken the-waves compelled to-seek with-(its)-top are-present also other
rates Militi cum tunica armature presidio quassatamque
ships for-the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor as-help and-the-shattered
nauem circumdant, et, licet se strenue defensarent,
ship they-surround and although themselves strenuously they-defended
repungnantes opprimunt. E quibus quosdam inuoluunt
resisting they-overwhelm of whom some they-wrap
fluctibus, quosdam securibus obtruncant et gladiis. Reliquam
in-the-waves some with-axes they-cut-down and with-swords the-remaining
autem partem uinclis edomant, atque, uiriliter pungnante
moreover part with-bonds they-tame and manfully fighting
ne uiuus hostium manibus incideret perempto principe,
lest alive of-the-enemies into-the-hands he-should-fall with-slain the-prince
opes et exuuias diripiunt phaselumque pelago submergunt.
the-riches and spoils they-plunder and-the-galley in-the-sea sink
Post horum autem perniciem Miles cum tunica armature
after of-these moreover the-destruction the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
audacius in superstites progreditur. A quibus cum clamore
more-boldly against the-survivors advances by whom with shouting
coniunctis uiribus exceptus circumdatur atque a suis secretus
with-joined strength received he-is-surrounded and from his-men separated
quoquouersus ualde inpugnatur. Missilium iactu aera
on-every-side greatly is-attacked of-missiles by-the-throw the-air
obfuscari eorumque multitudine freti superficiem operiri
to-be-darkened and-of-them by-the-multitude of-the-strait the-surface to-be-covered
uideres. Hinc et inde ingens caucium moles uoluebatur,
you-would-see on-this-side and on-that a-huge of-stones mass was-rolled
quorum strepitus non minus horroris quam discriminis
whose din not less of-horror than of-peril

efficiebat. Omni telorum instant genere, ratem Militis cum
made with-every of-darts they-press kind the-ship of-the-Knight with
tunica armature uiolare nitentes, sed singule sibi tabule laminis
the-tunic of-armor to-violate striving but the-single to-it planks with-plates
incastrate ferreis nullius ictibus soluebantur, licetque tantis
mortised iron of-no-one by-the-blows were-loosened and-although by-so-great
hostium stiparetur cuneis, non tamen minora patrabat
of-enemies he-was-thronged wedges not yet lesser-things he-accomplished
quam paciebatur facinora. Cuius ubi hostes animaduertere
than he-suffered deeds whose when the-enemies noticed
pertinaciam eumque malle mori quam uinci nec uiribus
the-persistence and-him to-prefer to-die than to-be-conquered nor by-strength
eum posse submitti nec cedere tutum instanti, piram,
him to-be-able to-be-subdued nor to-yield safe to-one-pressing a-pyre
ignem uidelicet Grecum, eius in lintrem iaculati sunt.
fire namely Greek his into boat hurled have
Diuersis autem modis fit ignis huiusmodi; at cuius uis
in-various moreover ways is-made fire of-this-kind but of-which the-force
ad peragenda quibus adhibetur negocia maior pertinaciorque
for accomplishing for-which it-is-applied affairs greater and-more-persistent
existit hoc ordine conficitur. Hii quibus illum conficiendi
stands-out in-this order is-prepared those to-whom it of-preparing
pericia est uas primitus aptant eneum et quot uoluerint
skill is a-vessel first fit of-bronze and as-many-as they-wish
rubetas accipiunt atque in eo carne columbina et melle per iii
toads take and in it with-flesh of-dove and honey for three
menses alunt. Quo spacio completo, biduo uel triduo ipsos
months feed with-which space completed for-two-days or three-days them
inpastos relictos lacte proleque fete mammis alicuius
unfed left with-milk and-with-offspring with-young to-the-teats of-some
applicant bestie, cuius lac tam diu sugendo ebibunt donec
apply beast whose milk so long by-sucking they-drink-up until

ultro saturi decidant. Tumentes autem uenenifero
of-their-own-accord sated they-fall-off swelling moreover with-poison-bearing
liquore, rogo subposito, imponuntur uasculo. Quibus et
liquor with-a-pyre placed-under are-placed in-a-little-vessel to-which also
chelindri serpentes adhibentur aquatici quos denis ante diebus
water-snake serpents are-applied aquatic which for-ten before days
busto inclusos humanum pauerit cadauer. Est et aspis
in-a-tomb shut-in a-human has-fed corpse there-is also an-asp
uenenifera atque mortifera tria uno in gutture gerens capita,
poison-bearing and death-bearing three one in throat bearing heads
cuius nomen menti excidit, animal uenenosum quicquid
whose name from-mind has-fallen an-animal poisonous whatever
attigerit irremediabili peste corrumpens. Tellus namque eius ad
it-has-touched with-incurable plague corrupting the-earth for its at
tactum herba et segete, unda piscibus, arbores destituuntur
touch of-grass and of-crop the-water of-fishes the-trees are-deprived
fructibus, et unde magis mirandum est: si uel minutissima
of-fruits and what more to-be-wondered-at is if even the-tiniest
stilla arborem, cuiuslibet grossitudinis sit, infecerit, more
drop a-tree of-whatever thickness it-be has-infected in-the-manner
cancri corrodens, quo loco ce[ci]derit per medium
of-a-cancer gnawing in-what place it-has-fallen through the-middle
consumpto, humi sternit. Nullam huic cladi medelam
consumed on-the-ground lays-low no for-this disaster remedy
obesse posse compertum est, quin homines et pecudes, si
to-hinder to-be-able found it-is but-that men and cattle if
uel saltim cutis superficiem attigerit, in talia penetrans
even at-least of-the-skin the-surface it-has-touched into such-things penetrating
statim perimat. Vis cuius quanta sit e flamma eius ab
at-once it-destroys the-force of-which how-great be from the-flame of-it from
ore euaporante maxime potest perpendi, qua, dum ipse
the-mouth steaming most can to-be-weighed by-which while it

maiori estu uritur, sepius quam inhabitat silua inflammatur.
with-greater heat is-burned more-often which it-inhabits the-wood is-inflamed
E sanie autem eius ab triplici rictu profluente tres herbe
from the-gore moreover of-it from the-threefold jaw flowing three herbs
gignuntur, scilicet ex singulis singule. Quarum primam, siquis
are-begotten namely from single single of-which the-first if-anyone
cibo uel potu sumpserit, mente mutata, in rabiem vertitur,
in-food or drink has-taken with-mind changed into madness is-turned
secunda una cum gustu se necem infert gustanti, tercie
the-second together with tasting itself death brings to-the-taster of-the-third
uero succus se potatum aut unctum regio morbo inficit.
but the-juice itself drunk or anointed with-the-royal disease infects
Hec autem ubi adoleuerint gramina, infamis ipsa, si inuenerit,
these moreover when they-have-grown the-grasses infamous itself if it-has-found
depascitur belua. Capta quoque, antequam prefato adhibeatur
grazes the-beast captured also before to-the-aforesaid it-be-applied
negocio, illarum per septimanam inpinguatur pabulo. Fel
business of-these for a-week is-fattened with-fodder the-gall
quoque et testiculi lupi non desunt ambigui, qui
also and the-testicles of-the-wolf not are-lacking of-the-ambiguous which
uento et aura progenitus quicquid attigerit tacte rei
from-wind and breeze begotten whatever it-has-touched of-the-touched thing
in se figuram accipit. Calculus autem ligurius orbe in
in itself the-shape receives the-stone moreover ligurius on-the-world in
extremo repertus non minimum inter cetera locum optinet,
the-farthest found not the-least among the-others place holds
eadem qua et ipse uirtute preditus, e cuius concreta
with-the-same with-which also he with-power endowed from whose congealed
urina peruenire creditur. Lincis namque nil obstat obtutibus,
urine to-come it-is-believed of-the-lynx for nothing hinders the-gazes
ut etiam cis consistens materiam quid citra agatur
so-that even on-this-side standing matter what beyond is-done

certo contempletur lumine. Capud etiam cor et iecur
with-sure he-may-contemplate eye the-head also the-heart and the-liver
cornicis nouena metite secula horum uires
of-the-crow nine of-(the-crow)-having-measured ages of-these the-strength
adauctum adiciuntur. Sulphur autem pix et resina, oleum
to-increase are-added sulfur moreover pitch and resin oil
cartarum et bitumen minime adimuntur predictis, que
of-papyrus and bitumen not-at-all are-taken-away from-the-aforesaid which
quem adhibite flamme cito feruorem corripiunt sero deponunt.
which applied to-flame quickly the-heat seize late lay-down

THE RECIPE; THE DUEL WITH GORMUND BEGINS

The recipe goes on: the blood of a red-haired youth and of a dragon, boiled in a bronze tripod seven days, the fire drawn off into bronze bellows; it burns even in water. With his ship ablaze the Knight leaps aboard an enemy ship, saves his comrades, and takes thirty galleys. At Jerusalem the Christians prepare, and the Knight meets the giant Gormund in single combat; they fight from dawn to dusk without advantage.

Hec igitur ubi collecta fuerint, quo retuli ordine,
these-things therefore when collected they-have-been in-what I-related order
cacabo ex ere includuntur purissimo locataque usque ad
in-a-pot of bronze they-are-shut most-pure and-placed all-the-way to
os uasis ruffi hominis draconisque superfunduntur
the-mouth of-the-vessel of-a-red-haired man and-of-a-dragon are-poured-over
cruore. Sanguini quippe ruffi ignea natura inesse
with-the-gore to-the-blood indeed of-the-red-haired a-fiery nature to-be-in
creditur, quod et color pili et que maxime in
is-believed which also the-color of-the-hair and which most in
huiusmodi uigere solet uiuacitas patenter ostendit ingenii.
of-this-kind to-flourish is-wont the-liveliness plainly shows of-wit

Iuuentus autem cui barba et cesaries ruffa fuerit,
the-youth moreover for-whom the-beard and hair red has-been
eiusdem coloris impetigines faciem asperserint, pulcro
of-the-same color blotches the-face have-sprinkled into-a-beautiful
inducitur thalamo omniumque apparatu dapium unius
is-led chamber and-of-all with-the-apparatus of-dishes of-one
mensis delicate impinguatur spacio. Singulis quoque diebus,
month delicately is-fattened in-the-space on-single also days
foco ante eum accenso, adauctum sa[n]guinem uino
with-the-fire before him kindled to-increase the-blood with-wine
inebriatur sed sedule a femineis seruatur amplexibus.
he-is-made-drunk but diligently from womanly is-kept embraces
Mense uero expleto, in medio domus hinc et
with-the-month but completed in the-middle of-the-house on-this-side and
inde ad eius longitudinem igniti sternuntur carbones, inter
on-that along its length burning are-strewn coals among
quos ipse cibo potuque inpurgitatus, depositis indumentis,
which he with-food and-drink stuffed with-laid-aside garments
exponitur ac more ueruum utroque in latere ad ignem
is-exposed and in-the-manner of-spits each in side at the-fire
uersatur. Sufficienter autem calefactus, iamque uenis
is-turned sufficiently moreover heated and-already with-the-veins
toto turgentibus corpore, fleobotomatur, scilicet utriusque
in-whole swelling body he-is-bled namely of-each
brachii fibris ex transuerso incisis. Interim uero dum
arm with-the-fibers from across cut meanwhile but while
sanguinem minuit, ad refocillandam mentem offas in uino
the-blood he-diminishes for refreshing the-mind morsels in wine
accipit, ne, illa debilitata uel in extasi rapta, liquor
he-receives lest with-that weakened or into a-trance snatched the-liquor
concre[sc]atur optatus. Tam diu autem sanguis effluere sinitur,
be-congealed desired so long moreover the-blood to-flow-out is-allowed

donec eius defeccio mortem inducens animam corpore eiciat.
until its failing death bringing the-soul from-the-body expels
Et primum quidem cruore draconis admixto per se calefit
and first indeed with-the-gore of-the-dragon mixed by itself is-heated
diutissime, dein ceteris superfusus omnia simul confundit.
very-long then on-the-others poured-over all-things together it-mingles
Si autem queritur quomodo draco prendatur, uiri eliguntur
if moreover it-is-asked how the-dragon is-caught men are-chosen
fortissimi qui prius eius qua latitat scrutentur cauernam,
the-strongest who first its where it-lurks search-out the-cavern
inuentaque, per girum eius aditus soporifera gramina
and-with-it-found through the-circuit its entrance sleep-bearing grasses
uariis sternunt aromatibus tincta. Quorum terre hiatum
with-various they-strew spices dyed of-which of-the-earth the-gap
exiens dum draco fragranciam sentit, ea auide consumens,
going-out when the-dragon the-fragrance perceives them greedily consuming
statim sopore opprimitur ac ab insidiantibus tuto in loco
at-once by-sleep is-overwhelmed and by those-lying-in-ambush safe in place
non eminus abditis circumuentus obtruncatur. A quibus eius
not far-off hidden surrounded is-cut-down by whom its
sa[n]guis una cum gemma draconcia asportatur, quam eius
blood together with the-gem dragon-stone is-carried-off which its
eliso excuciunt cerebro, et hinc multimodis adhibenda
crushed they-shake-out from-the-brain and hence in-manifold to-be-applied
[est] negociis.
it-is affairs
Vas autem in quo hec confidencia sunt tripos est, cuius
the-vessel moreover in which these-things put-together are a-tripod is whose
ansata summitas artis preartatur faucibus, cooperculum
handled top with-narrow is-narrowed jaws a-lid
ex ere habens. Quo, dum clauditur, ita sibi utrumque
of bronze having by-which while it-is-closed so to-itself each

incastratur, ut nec uel modicus uapor inde euaporet fumi.
is-mortised that not even a-moderate vapor thence may-steam of-smoke
Omnibus uero illi inpositis, ignis confestim supponitur, atque,
with-all-things but in-it placed fire at-once is-placed-under and
vii continuis diebus totidemque noctibus pice naptaque
for-seven continuous days and-as-many nights with-pitch and-naphtha
flamme iniectis, ut magis ferueat, ebullitur. Fit quoque et
to-the-flame thrown-in that more it-may-boil it-is-boiled is-made also also
uirga aerea, cuius curuata summitas ad modum clepsedre
a-rod bronze whose curved top in the-manner of-a-water-stopper
coaptatur, qua paruum foramen quod in uasis cooperculi
is-fitted with-which the-small hole which in of-the-vessel of-the-lid
patet uertice vi prioribus obturatur diebus. Septima
lies-open on-the-top for-six former is-plugged days on-the-seventh
autem die flamma in cacabo accensa, inmanis strepitus, ac
moreover day with-the-flame in the-pot kindled a-monstrous din as
si terre motus fieret, intro auditur, aut si eminus positus
if of-the-earth a-quake were-made within is-heard or if from-afar placed
feruentis pelagi aure murmura percipias. Succense autem
of-the-boiling sea with-ear the-murmurs you-would-perceive of-the-kindled moreover
flamme ubi notum minister signum perceperit, clepsedram
flame when the-known the-attendant sign has-perceived the-stopper
exterius peracer[r]imo perfundit aceto, cuius soliditatem
on-the-outside with-very-sharp drenches vinegar whose solidity
penetrans iam nitentis erumpere flamme restringit impetum.
penetrating already of-the-striving to-burst-out flame it-restrains the-onset
Folles autem quante suffecerint quibus ignis abdatur
bellows moreover as-many-as will-suffice in-which the-fire may-be-bidden
parantur aenee, quarum incastrature ita sibi anfracte
are-prepared bronze whose joints so to-themselves bent
compaginantur, ut serius hee flamma quam que e ligno
are-fitted that later these by-the-flame than those-which from wood

et corio fiunt uenti penetrentur afflatu. Sed et adeo
and leather are-made of-the-wind be-penetrated by-the-blast but also so
exstant tractabiles ut magis e corio quam aere composita
they-stand-out pliable that rather from leather than bronze made
crederes. Flamma itaque iniecto aceto a suo feruore
you-would-believe the-flame and-so with-thrown-in vinegar from its heat
cohibita, clepsedra eximitur atque ductilis calamus in folle
restrained the-stopper is-taken-out and the-pliable reed in the-bellows
preminens foramini uasis apponitur. Cuius attractu aure
projecting to-the-hole of-the-vessel is-applied whose by-the-drawing of-the-air
ignis a cacabo exhauritur. Statim, ne exeat os calami,
the-fire from the-pot is-drained at-once lest it-go-out the-mouth of-the-reed
clepsedra obturatur. Sic et in ceteris ignis seruandus
with-the-stopper is-plugged so also into the-others the-fire to-be-kept
recipitur. Pars uero parua in cacabo relinquitur cui cotidie
is-received a-part but small in the-pot is-left for-which daily
fomes qua nutriatur adhibenda. Nec non et folium in
tinder by-which it-be-nourished to-be-applied nor not also of-the-bellows in
medio ad modum fenestrule parua habentur foramina, per
the-middle in the-manner of-a-little-window small are-had holes through
que ne extinguatur flamma alitur. Hoc ordine ignis Grecus
which lest be-extinguished the-flame is-fed in-this order fire Greek
paratur. Quem quid ualere si queris, nulla est tam fortis
is-prepared which what to-avail if you-ask no is so strong
machina, nulla tam magna carina, ad quas, si iaculetur, quin
an-engine no so great a-keel at which if it-be-hurled but-that
latus utrumque omnia consumens obstancia penetret. Nec
side each all-things consuming the-opposing it-may-penetrate nor
ullo modo ualet extingui, donec materia quam consumat
in-any way can-it to-be-extinguished until the-matter which it-may-consume
defecerit. Quodque magis obstupendum est, etiam inter
has-failed and-what more to-be-astounded-at is even among

undas ardet, et si igni admisceatur communi, se semper
the-waves it-burns and if with-fire it-be-mixed common itself always
uno in globo continens, eundem uelut ligna depopulabitur.
one in ball containing the-same like wood it-will-lay-waste
Igitur, ut superius dictum est, ubi hostes Militem
therefore as above said it-has-been when the-enemies the-Knight
cum tunica armature armis inuincibilem experti sunt, unus
with the-tunic of-armor in-arms invincible tested they-have one
eorum follem qua infaustus ignis seruabatur arripuit,
of-them the-bellows in-which the-ill-omened fire was-kept seized
atque, calamo dempta clepsedra, eius unam e tabulis
and from-the-reed with-removed stopper of-it one of the-boards
leua deprimens, alteramque dextra eleuans, eas ab
with-(his)-left pressing-down and-the-other with-(his)-right raising them from
inuicem compressit conamine ignemque eiaculans centurianam
each-other he-pressed with-effort and-the-fire hurling-forth of-the-centurion
eo ratem, iiii remigantibus ustis, per medium penetrat.
there ship with-four rowers burned through the-middle penetrates
Nec mora, tota flamma corripitur, unde non paruus ei
nor delay the-whole by-flame is-seized whence not small it
insidentibus metus incutitur; interius quippe flamma, exterius
to-those-sitting-in fear is-struck within indeed by-flame without
septi hostibus, quid agerent ignorabant, nec se
hemmed by-enemies what they-should-do they-knew-not nor themselves
defensandi nec ulciscendi dabatur copia. Si fuge uellent
of-defending nor of-avenging was-given the-means if of-flight they-wished
consulere, nec undis nec aduersariis se tutum erat
to-take-thought neither to-the-waves nor to-the-adversaries themselves safe it-was
committere. In naui autem remanentibus mors nihilominus
to-commit in the-ship moreover for-those-remaining death nonetheless
intentabatur. Miles autem cum tunica armature, considerans
was-threatened the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor considering

rem, nisi quantocius succurreretur, sibi ad irremediabile
the-thing unless as-quickly-as-possible it-were-helped for-himself to incurable
periculum uergere omniaque uirtutis uiriumque pensari
peril to-incline and-all-things of-valor and-of-strength to-be-weighed
examine, resu[m]pto uigore, uni sibi insistencium naui
by-the-test with-resumed vigor upon-one to-him of-those-pressing ship
armatus insilit, et quosdam obtrunccans, quosdam inuoluens
armed leaps and some cutting-down some rolling
fluctibus, socios triplici ereptos infortunio, scilicet
in-the-waves (his)-comrades from-threefold snatched misfortune namely
flammarum globis, undarum naufragio, hostiumque
of-flames from-the-balls of-the-waves from-the-shipwreck and-of-the-enemies
furori, illi transponit. Accriorique ira succensus, coadunata
from-the-fury to-that transfers and-by-sharper anger kindled with-united
classe, protinus se ultum properat, denisque submersis
fleet forthwith himself to-avenge hastens and-with-ten sunk
myoparonas xxxta hostium eneruata uirtute abducit.
galleys thirty of-the-enemies with-unnerved valor leads-away
Nauali tandem non sine maximo discrimine confecto
with-the-naval at-last not without the-greatest peril completed
prelio, quod reliquum erat itineris prospere peragunt,
battle what remaining was of-the-journey prosperously they-complete
Ierosolimam tempore statuto incolumes perueniunt. Qui,
to-Jerusalem at-the-time appointed unharmed they-arrive who
incredibili cunctorum fauore suscepti, defatigata membra tum
with-incredible of-all favor received (their)-wearied limbs both
terre marisque operoso itinere cum multiplici periculorum
of-land and-of-sea by-toilsome journey and by-manifold of-dangers
et preliorum discrimine quiete et ocio delicacius et
and of-battles peril with-rest and leisure more-delicately and
indulgencius recrearunt. Ad quos interim ualida bellatorum
more-indulgently refreshed to whom meanwhile strong of-warriors

coadunantur agmina et a finitimis extraneisque principibus
are-united columns and from neighboring and-foreign princes
militum destinatur copia. Jubent et ipsi per omnem
of-knights is-sent abundance they-order also themselves through all
regionem milites eligi, urbes et oppida locis opportunis,
the-region knights to-be-chosen cities and towns in-places fitting
firmis muris altisque turribus circumdari, uiris fortissimis,
with-strong walls and-high towers to-be-surrounded with-men the-strongest
omni telorum apparatu, re frumentaria pabuloque
with-all of-darts apparatus with-the-thing grain and-fodder
sufficienti in expedicionem pugne muniri. Fiebatque cotidie
sufficient for the-expedition of-battle to-be-fortified and-was-made daily
per diuersas sanctorum memorias communis ab uniuersis ad
through various of-the-saints memorials common by all to
deum sedule oracio, oracionique ieiuniorum elemosinarumque
God diligently prayer and-to-prayer of-fasts and-of-alms
continuabat deuocio, ut sibi famulantibus optatum conferret
continued devotion that him to-those-serving the-desired he-might-confer
triumphum et aduersarios maneret excidium.
triumph and the-adversaries might-await destruction
Prefixus interea dies duelli illuxerat, armatorumque
appointed meanwhile the-day of-the-duel had-dawned and-of-armed-men
Christianorum uidelicet et paganorum utrimque innumerabilis
of-Christians namely and of-pagans on-both-sides a-countless
exercitus consertis cuneis, duo, ut pactum fuerat, armis
army with-joined wedges two as agreed it-had-been with-arms
septi agoniste certaturi in medio prodeunt. Hinc Miles
girt champions about-to-contend into the-middle come-forth here the-Knight
cum tunica armature, cuius animi audacia, uirtus prolata,
with the-tunic of-armor whose of-mind the-boldness the-valor displayed
probitas assueta, uincendi consuetudo et iustior causa
the-probity accustomed of-conquering the-custom and the-juster cause

socios spe exhilarabat triumphi. Alius autem, partis
(his)-comrades with-hope gladdened of-triumph the-other moreover of-the-side
aduerse, Gormundi uocabolo, procera membra, inmanis
adverse Gormund by-the-name tall limbs monstrous
statura, truculenta facies, bellorum frequencia, singularis
stature truculent face of-wars frequency singular
omnium estimata fortitudo, armorum horror et strepitus
of-all reckoned strength of-arms the-horror and din
sibi cessurum spondere uidebantur tropheum. Pedites
to-himself about-to-yield to-promise seemed the-trophy on-foot
uero uterque processerunt, quia ob eius inmoderatam
but each came-forth because for his immoderate
altitudinem nullus equus Gormundum admittere sessorem
height no horse Gormund to-admit as-rider
ualebat. Obiectis igitur clipeis collatisque dextris,
could with-thrown-before therefore shields and-with-joined right-hands
audaciter adinuicem congrediuntur, et quantum uis suppetit
boldly with-each-other they-clash and as-much-as force is-at-hand
quantasque ira uires administrat alter alterum stricto
and-as-much-as anger strength supplies one the-other with-drawn
mucrone impetit. Mille ictus ingeminant, milleque
sword attacks a-thousand blows they-redouble and-in-a-thousand
modis mutue cedi mutuisque insistunt uulneribus. Feriunt
ways to-mutual slaughter and-to-mutual they-press wounds they-strike
et feriuntur, pellunt et propelluntur, rotaque fortune
and are-struck they-drive and are-driven and-the-wheel of-fortune
uario casu inter eos uersatur. Nil quid uirtutis et
with-varied chance between them is-turned nothing what of-valor and
fortitudinis sit prossus relinquitur, cunctorumque obtutus
of-strength there-be at-all is-left and-of-all the-gazes
in eos infiguntur. Quis promcior ad feriendum, fortiorue ad
on them are-fixed who readier for striking or-stronger for

paciendum ignoratur, inter quos tam crebri ictus tamque
enduring is-unknown between whom so frequent blows and-so
graues sine temporis intercapedine diuidebantur colaphi,
heavy without of-time interval were-divided cuffs
ut quis daret uel acciperet difficile posset aduerti. Uter
that who gave or received with-difficulty could to-be-noticed which
uiribus pocior haberetur nescires, dum, quo magis
in-strength stronger was-held you-would-not-know while by-how-much more
pungne insisterent, eo ualencioribus animis ad certamen
on-the-fight they-pressed by-so-much with-stronger minds for the-contest
inhiarent. Modo lepidis cauillacionibus suos ictus interserunt,
they-gaped now with-elegant jests their blows they-intersperse
modo cinedis salibus suorum uicissim mentes exasperant,
now with-lewd witticisms of-their in-turn the-minds they-exasperate
modo anheli se retrahunt, modo aura concepta
now panting themselves they-draw-back now with-the-breath taken
recreati acriores concurrunt. Recreatisque uiribus, feruenciori
refreshed fiercer they-run-together and-with-refreshed strength with-more-fervent
impetu copulantur, et quasi ab eis nichil antea actum
onset they-are-joined and as-if by them nothing before done
sit effere, mentes efferacius debachantur. Videres eos sic
there-be the-savage minds more-savagely they-rage you-would-see them so
conf[l]ictando aduersum se consistere quemadmodum duos
by-clashing against each-other to-stand as two
apros ferocissimos in singulari certamine, qui nunc adunco
boars most-fierce in single contest which now with-hooked
dente se obliquo ictu impetunt, nunc latera collidunt,
tusk each-other with-oblique blow attack now flanks they-dash
nunc pedes pedibus p[r]oterunt, quorum rictus interim modo
now feet with-feet they-trample whose jaws meanwhile now
fumida spuma oblinit, modo ignis erumpens ignescit. Altero
smoking foam smears now fire bursting-out glows with-the-one

siquidem uirilius instante, hic cedens longius propellitur;
indeed more-manfully pressing this-one yielding farther is-driven
russus, isto preualente, ille retrogradi cogitur. Hic
again with-that-one prevailing the-other to-go-backward is-compelled this-one
quasi insidiando uulnus inferre molitur. Ille, si quid ensis
as-if by-ambushing a-wound to-bring strives that-one if anything of-the-sword
pateat acumini, sedule rimatur, sed alter conamen alterius
lie-open to-the-point diligently searches but the-other the-effort of-the-other
haud impari calliditate deludit et cassat. Armorum quoque
with-not unequal cunning mocks and cancels of-the-arms also
fragor longius perstrepit, eorumque soliditas mucronum aciem
the-crash far resounds and-their solidity of-the-swords the-edge
hebetat et retundit. Ex quorum etiam collisione flamma
dulls and blunts from whose also collision flame
crebrius prosiluit et ob inmoderatum laborem salsus per
more-frequently leapt-forth and for the-immoderate labor salty through
omnes artus a uertice usque ad plantas sudor decurrit.
all limbs from the-crown all-the-way to the-soles sweat ran-down
Incertumque erat cui uictoria cederet, dum utrorumque
and-uncertain it-was to-whom victory would-yield while of-both
uires quisque equales pensaret. Mira igitur uirtute
the-strength each-one equal weighed with-wonderful therefore valor
miraque probitate ea die ab utroque pungnatum est,
and-wonderful prowess on-that day by each fought it-was
certamineque ab hora diei prima usque ad occiduum
and-with-the-contest from the-hour of-the-day first all-the-way to sunset
protracto, nil actum est quo uel alter preferreretur
protracted nothing done was whereby either the-one be-preferred
alteri aut palma ascriberetur alicui. Vesperascente itaque
to-the-other or the-palm be-ascribed to-anyone with-evening-falling and-so

uulnerum penitus expertes segregantur, iterum in crastinum
of-wounds wholly free they-are-separated again on the-morrow
pungnaturi, iterumque luctamen ex integro iniciaturi.
about-to-fight and-again the-struggle from new about-to-begin

THE DEATH OF GORMUND

On the second day the Knight breaks four of Gormund's teeth, the giant smashes his shield, and the Knight's sword breaks on Gormund's shield, which shatters, but sunset parts them. On the third day, after a quarrel over arms, they fight again; Gormund tires and is driven out of the ring, rallies at his people's cries, and is at last cloven to the breast. The pagans, bound by the law of the combat, cannot avenge him.

Aurora uero oriente, bifaria acie galeate phalanges conueniunt
with-dawn but rising in-twofold line the-helmeted phalanxes come-together
suosque luctatores in harenam producunt. Concurritur,
and-their wrestlers into the-arena lead-out it-is-run-together
conclamatur, in alterius necem quisque grassatur. Iteratur
it-is-shouted for of-the-other the-death each rages is-repeated
pungna maiori certamine, quia, quo magis uirtutem
the-fight with-greater contest because by-how-much more the-valor
fuerat alter expertus alterius, eo se contra caucius
had the-one tested of-the-other by-so-much himself against more-cautiously
agebat et forcius, pudebatque se uel ad modicum
he-conducted and more-strongly and-it-shamed himself even to a-little
sibi alterutro cedere quos equi roboris omnium
to-themselves to-each-other to-yield who of-equal strength of-all
arbitrio constabat comprobatos fuisse. Quorum si ea
by-the-judgment it-was-agreed proved to-have-been whose if on-that
die conflictum te contigisset aspicere, eos hesterna iurares
day the-conflict you it-had-happened to-see them yesterday you-would-swear

lusisse maximaque admiracione obstupesceres quomodo
to-have-played and-with-the-greatest wonder you-would-be-astounded how
ad tam crebros ictus, ad tam graues colaphos, uel mucronum
at so frequent blows at so heavy cuffs either of-the-swords
acumen sine obtusione durare uel armorum soliditas
the-edge without blunting to-last or of-the-arms the-solidity
inuiolata manere aut certe ipsi infessi insauciique tam diu
inviolate to-remain or surely they unwearied and-unwounded so long
quiuissent subsistere. Eo quippe uigore eoque ualore
could-have to-stand-firm with-that indeed vigor and-with-that force
gladii galeis infligebantur, clipeis contundebantur, ut
the-swords on-the-helmets were-inflicted on-the-shields were-beaten that
ex scintillis prorumpentibus aera choruscarent sibique
from the-sparks bursting-forth the-airs flashed and-against-itself
collisum chalybs chalybem repelleret dissilentemque in eum
dashed steel steel repelled and-leaping-apart on him
a quo uibrabatur retorqueret. Crebris afflatibus aera
by whom it-was-brandished twisted-back with-frequent blasts the-airs
uexant, pila pilis et ictus ictibus obicientes. Unanimiter
they-vex javelins to-javelins and blows to-blows opposing unanimously
insistunt, pugnam acerrimam ingerunt ardorempue pugnandi
they-press a-fight most-fierce they-bring and-the-ardor of-fighting
prelia protracta conferunt. Pectora pectoribus protendunt
the-battles protracted they-join breasts to-breasts they-stretch
omnique nisu inuadere et resistere nituntur. Audaciam
and-with-every effort to-attack and to-resist they-strive the-boldness
unius animositas alterius prouocat et pertinacia illius
of-the-one the-spiritedness of-the-other provokes and the-persistence of-that-one
huius animi tenorem strenuiorem reddebat. Alternis
of-this-one of-the-mind the-tenor more-vigorous rendered with-alternate
uiribus alterna uirtus fomenta prebebat et utriusque uigor
strength the-alternate valor fuel provided and of-each the-vigor

se metitus ex altero proficiebat. Plurimum autem diei
itself measured from the-other advanced the-greatest moreover of-the-day
pari fortuna inter eos expensum est, donec Miles cum
with-equal fortune between them spent was until the-Knight with
tunica armature, quiddam callide machinatus, dum se
the-tunic of-armor something cunningly having-contrived while himself
Gormundum super leuum genu fingeret uelle percutere
Gormund on the-left knee he-feigned to-wish to-strike
et Gormundus eo loco eream peltam opponeret ipse,
and Gormund in-that place the-bronze target opposed he
dextra ad dextram altius conuersa, ei ore in
with-the-right to the-right higher turned to-him the-mouth in
medio, quod nudum patebat, ensis cuspidem inopinate
the-middle which naked lay-open of-the-sword the-point unexpectedly
ingessit, iiiior que prioribus extusis dentibus, ei leuam
thrust with-four and front knocked-out teeth to-him the-left
confregit maxillam. Leue tamen uulnus erat et quod
broke jaw light yet the-wound was and which
pocius ad irritamentum furoris quam ad doloris stimulos
rather to the-provocation of-fury than to of-pain the-goads
illatum uideretur, ut sauci uires [quam] incolumis
brought seemed so-that of-the-wounded the-strength than of-the-unharmed
ampliori insania feruescerent. Gormundus itaque, furore cum
with-greater madness boiled Gormund and-so with-fury with
inflixo concepto uulnere et more se dementis agens,
the-inflicted conceived wound and in-the-manner himself of-a-madman acting
nil exclamat ulterius: uiribus parcendum est. Ut fera
nothing he-cries further for-strength to-be-spared is like a-wild
igitur bellua in Militem cum tunica armature insurgit,
therefore beast upon the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor rises
brachioque in sullimi erecto, tanta fortitudine scuto
and-with-(his)-arm on high raised with-such strength on-the-shield

macheram inpressit, ut ordo gemmarum insertus frustratim
the-sword pressed that the-row of-gems inserted in-pieces
conquassatus diffluerent, umbonem auelleret summitatemque
shattered flowed-apart the-boss tore-away and-the-top
clipei, usque ad sanguinis effusionemque eius fronti
of-the-shield all-the-way to of-blood and-the-shedding his on-the-forehead
illideret. Seuior et Miles cum tunica armature eum excipit
dashed fiercer also the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor him receives
seuiciaque dupplicata seuius res agitur iamque negocium
and-with-ferocity doubled more-fiercely the-thing is-done and-now the-business
ad discrimen uergitur. Miles autem cum tunica armature,
to peril inclines the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor
nactus locum, in inmunitum hostis latus stricto
having-gained an-opening on the-unprotected of-the-enemy side with-drawn
mucrone irruit. Sed Gormundo ictum callente et euitante,
sword rushed but with-Gormund the-blow knowing and avoiding
dum eius conatus cassatur, ensis ab obiecto egide exceptus
while his attempt is-canceled the-sword by the-opposed shield received
scapulo tenus abrumpitur. Nec eris soliditas duriciaue
the-handle as-far-as is-broken-off nor of-the-bronze the-solidity or-hardness
ictus inmensitatem ferre potuit, quin erea parma
of-the-blow the-immensity bear could but-that the-bronze shield
Gormundi contrita per mediumque sub umbone confracta
of-Gormund crushed through and-the-middle under the-boss broken
minutas dissiliret in partes. Uniuersi ex hoc confestim
tiny leaped-apart into parts of-the-whole from this at-once
exercitus clamor inmensus exoritur, hinc merencium, illinc
army a-shout immense arises here of-the-mourning there
insultancium. Maius quippe discriminis Militi cum tunica
of-the-exulting greater indeed of-peril on-the-Knight with the-tunic
armature incumbebat, cui uel quo se defensaret
of-armor pressed to-whom either with-what himself he-might-defend

aut a se hostem abigeret, ense colliso, nil
or from himself the-enemy drive-off with-the-sword dashed nothing
prossus aderat. Gormundo autem licet clipeum obuenisset
at-all was-present to-Gormund moreover although the-shield it-had-happened
comminui, mucro tamen integer habebatur, cuius rigida
to-be-smashed the-sword yet whole was-held whose rigid
ancipitique acie aduersarii sui tempora sine intermissione
and-double edge of-the-adversary his the-temples without intermission
contundebat. Miles uero cum tunica armature aduersus eius
beat the-Knight but with the-tunic of-armor against his
impetus clipeum quoquouersus callide protendebat, sed nisi
onsets the-shield on-every-side cunningly stretched-out but unless
cicius Phebus occidens finem bello posuisset, maxima procul
sooner Phoebus setting an-end to-the-war had-put the-greatest without
dubio dispendia incurrisset. Meta etenim assignata fuerat,
doubt losses he-would-have-incurred a-mark for assigned had-been
quam mox ubi occidentis solis umbra attigisset, omni
which soon when of-the-setting sun the-shadow had-reached with-every
occasione dilacioneque postposita, eos segregari debere
occasion and-delay set-aside them to-be-separated to-be-bound
ratum manebat. Umbra igitur metam attingente, inuitis
settled remained the-shadow therefore the-mark reaching with-unwilling
paganis et se uix a sedicione continentibus, dirimuntur,
pagans and themselves hardly from sedition restraining they-are-parted
quodque duelli restabat diem in posterum protelatur.
and-what of-the-duel remained the-day into the-next is-postponed
Noctis opaca solare iubar fugauerat, et, conglomeratis e
of-night the-darkness the-solar beam had-put-to-flight and with-gathered from
diuerso agminibus, campigeni se stagnati renouatis armis
opposite columns the-champions themselves steeled with-renewed arms
truculenti ingerunt. Perosum quippe et pene exiciale litigium
truculent bring hateful indeed and almost deadly a-quarrel

inter utrumque exercitum exorsum fuerat, utrum Militi
between each army begun had-been whether to-the-Knight
cum tunica armature gladius, Gormundo clipeus, aut utrique
with the-tunic of-armor a-sword to-Gormund a-shield or to-both
uel neutri seu certe uni et non alteri concederetur. Super
or to-neither or surely to-one and not to-the-other should-be-granted about
qua re dissensione diu habita magnisque altercacionibus
which thing with-dissension long held and-with-great altercations
uentilata, omnium in hoc tandem conuenit assensus, equum
aired of-all in this at-last came-together the-assent fair
fore, ambobus annui, quia nec iste sine ense se
to-be to-both to-be-assented because neither this-one without a-sword himself
defendere nec ille, eliso clipeo, ab hostili erupcione
to-defend nor that-one with-dashed shield from hostile eruption
se ualebat protegere. Ordinatis igitur, ut caraxatum est,
himself could to-protect with-arranged therefore as described it-is
utrimque nodis peditum et turmis equitum, ceterorumque
on-both-sides with-knots of-foot-soldiers and with-troops of-horsemen and-of-the-other
armatorum conferta multitudine, duelligeri loricis
armed-men with-the-dense multitude the-duelists with-mail-coats
crispantes, galeis cristati, uisu horrendi, stadium petunt,
gleaming with-helmets crested in-aspect dreadful the-course seek
aleam belli ineunt, sese ad pungnam lacessunt manuque
the-die of-war enter themselves to battle challenge and-with-hand
preualida inuadunt et assiliunt. Nec mora, tonitrus belli
very-strong attack and leap-at nor delay the-thunder of-war
intonuit, offensio armorum perstrepuit, sonitus ictuum efferbuit
thundered the-clash of-arms resounded the-sound of-blows boiled
et ignita collisio terribiliter excanduit. Preduro ludo res
and the-fiery collision terribly glowed in-very-hard play the-thing
agitur, dumque sagacius pungnant, obstinacius perseuerant,
is-done and-while more-shrewdly they-fight more-obstinately they-persevere

tinnitu horribili aer resultat et resonat, aereque
with-a-ringing horrible the-air rebounds and resounds and-with-the-air
percusso montium concaua stridorem multiplicant. Horrenda
struck of-the-mountains the-hollows the-screech multiply dreadful
belli facies, nulla quies fessis [nulla] respiracio dabatur
of-war the-face no rest to-the-weary no breathing was-given
anhelis. Omnimodis insistunt, omnimodis operam adhibent,
to-the-panting in-every-way they-press in-every-way effort they-apply
ut eorum alter aut succumbat aut uictoria pociatur. Nec
that of-them one either succumb or victory gain nor
estuantis solis feruor impediuit nec iugis labor uel decertacio
of-the-blazing sun the-heat hindered nor continual labor or contest
obfuit, quin semper procaciores insisterent seque mutuo
harmed but-that always bolder they-pressed and-each-other mutually
semper inexsuperabiliores offenderent. Atque sub armis
always more-insuperable found and under arms
facientes audacia animabantur annimositateque recreabantur.
doing by-boldness were-animated and-by-spiritedness were-refreshed
Horum si spectaculo assisteres, Laphitarum pungna tibi
of-these if at-the-spectacle you-had-stood-by of-the-Lapiths the-fight to-you
in mente[m] occurreret, qui quociens ictus ingeminabant,
into mind would-occur who as-often-as blows they-redoubled
tociens Ciclopum incudes malleis contundi crederes.
so-often of-the-Cyclopes the-anvils with-hammers to-be-beaten you-would-believe
Cumque plurimum diei transisset, cepit Gormundus
and-when the-greatest-part of-the-day had-passed began Gormund
tum estu tum hostis assidua uexacione estuari
both from-the-heat and of-the-enemy by-constant harassment to-be-in-a-sweat
aggrauataque est pungna in eum uehementer totumque
and-weighed-down was the-fight upon him vehemently and-the-whole
honus prelii ei incubuit. Animo igitur dilitescebat ac
burden of-the-battle on-him pressed in-mind therefore he-lay-hid and

segnius et inualidius agebat sensimque se subtrahens
more-sluggishly and more-weakly acted and-gradually himself withdrawing
inpugnanti cedebat nec ea qua ante uirtute uel se
to-the-attacker yielded nor with-that which before valor either himself
tuebatur aut hostem aggrediebatur. Quod Miles cum tunica
he-protected or the-enemy attacked which the-Knight with the-tunic
armature aduertens instancius instabat anxiumque spiritum
of-armor noticing more-urgently pressed and-the-anxious spirit
illius anxiorem reddebat. Nec destitit, donec extra circuli
his more-anxious rendered nor ceased until outside of-the-circle
quo cingebantur limitem eum propelleret. Hic tumultus et
by-which they-were-girt the-limit him he-drove here tumult and
gemitus, ululatus et pla[n]ctus incredule gentis ad sidera
groaning howling and lamentation of-the-unbelieving people to the-stars
tollitur cateruatimque mesti ad eum proclamabant: "Gormunde,
is-raised and-in-crowds sad to him they-cried-out Gormund
regredere! Gormunde, regredere! quid agis? quo refugis,
go-back Gormund go-back what are-you-doing whither do-you-flee
miles egregie? Fugare, non fugere, tibi hactenus moris
knight excellent to-put-to-flight not to-flee to-you hitherto of-custom
exstitit! Regredere, proh dolor! regredere! ne in ultimo dedecus
has-been go-back ah grief go-back lest at the-last disgrace
omnia ante bene gesta facinora obnubilet. Fuge hic locus
all before well done deeds may-cloud for-flight here the-place
non est! uinci aut uincere hic necessarium est!" Ad
not is to-be-conquered or to-conquer here necessary it-is at
quorum uoces Gormundus, pudore consternatus paulumque
whose voices Gormund with-shame dismayed and-a-little
respirans et animatus, forcius gressum fixit, infestantem
breathing and animated more-strongly (his)-step fixed the-pressing
aduersarium uiriliter abegit. Vibransque gladium eiusmodi
adversary manfully drove-off and-brandishing (his)-sword of-this-kind

ictum intulit quo complicatis membris eum succumbere ac
a-blow brought by-which with-folded limbs him to-succumb and
mole ictus genuflexo terram compelleret petere, verum
with-the-mass of-the-blow with-bent-knee the-earth he-compelled to-seek but
thorax inpenetrabilis mansit. Tunc Miles cum tunica
the-breastplate impenetrable remained then the-Knight with the-tunic
armature, mente nimium efferatus, concitus se erexit, totus
of-armor in-mind exceedingly made-fierce roused himself raised wholly
infremuit, sese in armis collegit, dextram excussit ac
roared himself in arms gathered (his)-right-hand shook and
“Hic ictus” exclamat “nostrum ludum dirimet!” Summitatique
this blow he-cries our play will-break-off and-on-the-top
eius cassidis ancipitem romphee aciem imprimens, iam
his of-the-helmet the-double of-the-sword edge pressing with-already
armis calefactis et ob hoc non resistentibus, usque ad
the-arms heated and for this not resisting all-the-way to
imum pectus, omnia comminuens confringens et penetrans,
the-lowest breast all-things crushing breaking and penetrating
ictum conduxit, non optabile stomacho antidotum. Ac ensem
the-blow he-led not a-desirable for-the-stomach antidote and the-sword
uulneri eximens, duas sectum in partes capud abscidit,
from-the-wound drawing two cut into parts the-head he-cut-off
cerebroque effluente, uictor pede eminus a se
and-with-the-brain flowing-out the-victor with-(his)-foot from-afar from himself
pepulit. Quo superato et crudeliter trucidato, pagani cum
drove with-whom overcome and cruelly slaughtered the-pagans with
interminabili merore ultimum super eo questum et luctum
endless grief the-last over him complaint and mourning
continuarunt, iamque armis correptis ob eius ulcionem in
prolonged and-already with-arms seized for his vengeance upon

Militem cum tunica armature irruissent, nisi sanctis inter
the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor would-have-rushed unless by-holy among
se uetarentur legibus.
themselves they-were-forbidden laws

TO BRITAIN; ARTHUR UNHORSED

The pagans submit to Rome and the Knight returns in triumph. Restless in peace, he begs leave to go, and the emperor sends him to Arthur with the casket of tokens and a letter. On a stormy night near Caerleon, Queen Guinevere foretells to Arthur that a knight stronger than he is coming; Arthur and Kay ride out, and at a flooded stream the Knight unhorses them both and takes their horses. Arthur returns soaked and pretends he was quieting a brawl, but the queen says her messenger will tell the truth tomorrow.

Per se igitur, suo propungnatore neci dedito,
through themselves therefore with-their champion to-death given
iuxta condictas condiciones federis Romane se
according-to the-agreed conditions of-the-treaty to-the-Roman themselves
dicioni dedere, paceque firmata et obsidibus datis,
sway they-surrendered and-with-peace confirmed and with-hostages given
multa quoque uectigalium imposita, ad propria confusi
many also of-tributes imposed to their-own confounded
remearunt. Miles uero cum tunica armature splendide et
returned the-Knight but with the-tunic of-armor splendidly and
uictoriosissime adeptus tropheum multisque ab obtimatibus
most-victoriously having-obtained the-trophy and-with-many by the-nobles
Ierosolimitanis honoratus muneribus Romam mature rediit
of-Jerusalem honored gifts to-Rome early returned
triumphalique pompa ab imperatore et senatu susceptus est.
and-with-triumphal pomp by the-emperor and senate received he-was

Quem imperator in numero familiarium suorum decernens,
whom the-emperor into the-number of-intimates his decreeing
quoad primum locum repperisset, eum summo sullimare
as-soon-as the-first place he-had-found him with-highest to-raise
honore meritaque destinauit dignitate donare.
honor and-with-merited decided dignity to-present
Hiis ita gestis nulloque contra Romanum imperium
these-things so done and-with-no-one against the-Roman empire
arma presumente mouere, Miles cum tunica armature,
arms presuming to-move the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
pacem fastiditus miliciamque qua sua uirtus et probitas
peace disdaining and-knighthood in-which his valor and probity
exerceretur semper affectans, studiose querere cepit quenam
might-be-exercised always desiring zealously to-seek began what
regio belli tumultibus turbaretur. Cui dum famosum
region of-war by-the-tumults was-disturbed to-whom when the-famous
nomen Arturi sui auunculi regis Britannie nec tamen sibi
name of-Arthur his uncle king of-Britain nor yet to-him
noti eiusque insignia rerum gesta, que iam toto orbe
known and-his notable of-things deeds which already in-the-whole world
diuulgabantur, relata fuissent, paruipendens uniuersa que sibi
were-spread-abroad related had-been little-weighing all-things which to-him
ab imperatore * * * * sepe sepiusque suppliciter flagitauit. Ac
*by the-emperor * * * * often and-more-often suppliantly he-demanded and*
imperator, quamquam eum ad condignum promouere apicem
the-emperor although him to a-worthy to-promote summit
iam proposuerat tantique uiri discessus sibi dampno
already had-proposed and-of-so-great a-man the-departure to-him a-loss
fore non dubitaret, ut tamen a quibus originem duceret
to-be not he-doubted that yet from whom (his)-origin he-drew
scire ualeret, nec non et per eum se regnum
to-know he-might-be-able nor not also through him himself the-kingdom

Britannie, quod a Romanis diu discederat, adepturum
of-Britain which from the-Romans long had-departed about-to-obtain
confidens, annuit quod petiuit. Opulenta igitur preclara et
trusting assented what he-asked rich therefore splendid and
preciosa ei donaria largitus est thecamque qua ipsius
precious on-him gifts bestowed has and-the-case in-which of-his
generis continebantur indicia regi Arturo perferenda tradidit,
race were-contained the-tokens to-king Arthur to-be-carried handed-over
adiunctis suis apicibus quibus testabatur omnia que carte
with-added his letters in-which he-attested all-things which of-the-charter
monimenta dicebant rata et firma constare. Vetuitque ne
the-records said settled and firm to-stand and-he-forbade lest
loculum inspiceret, antequam ad regem Arturum uenisset.
the-little-box he-should-inspect before to king Arthur he-had-come
Mandauit etiam primatibus Gallie per quos transsiturus
he-bade also the-primates of-Gaul through whom about-to-pass
erat, ut eum honorifice susciperent, seruirent, necessaria ei
he-was that him honorably they-should-receive should-serve necessaries to-him
ministrarent et per fines suos usque occeanum saluum
should-supply and through the-borders their all-the-way to-the-ocean safe
deducerent. Sicque, uale dicto, discessit, rege relicto.
should-escort and-so with-farewell said he-departed with-the-king left
Miles itaque cum tunica armature, omnibus eius discessum
the-Knight and-so with the-tunic of-armor with-all his departure
grauiter ferentibus, propositum iter arripuit, Al[p]es transsiit,
heavily bearing the-proposed way seized the-Alps crossed
Galliasque transgressus Britanniam incolumis attigit. Cui
and-the-Gauls having-crossed Britain unharmed reached to-whom
quo eo tempore rex Arturus degeret percuntanti responsum
where at-that time king Arthur lived asking answered
est, eum apud Carlegion urbem in Demecia perhendinare,
it-was him at Caerleon the-city in Demetia to-stay

quam pre ceteris ciuitatibus frequentare consueuerat, illa
which beyond the-other cities to-frequent he-had-been-accustomed it
quippe nemoribus consita, feris fecunda, opibus opulenta,
indeed with-groves planted with-beasts fertile in-riches rich
pratorum uiriditate amena et irrigacione fluminum Osce
of-the-meadows with-greenness pleasant and with-the-irrigation of-rivers of-the-Usk
scilicet et Sabrine decora gratissimum penes se habitandi
namely and of-the-Severn comely a-most-pleasing with himself of-dwelling
locum prebe[b]at. Illic metropolis habebatur Demecie, illic
place afforded there the-metropolis was-held of-Demetia there
legiones Romanorum hiemare solebant, illic rex Arturus
the-legions of-the-Romans to-winter were-wont there king Arthur
festa celebrabat solempnia, diademate insigniebatur, uniuerse
the-feasts celebrated solemn with-the-diadem was-marked all
primorum Britannie ad eum conuentus coadunabantur. Quo
of-the-chief-men of-Britain to him gatherings were-united where
Arturum manere Miles cum tunica armature cognito illo
Arthur to-remain the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor with-it-learned thither
uiam direxit; illo, nec die nec nocte labori indulgens,
the-way directed thither neither by-day nor by-night to-labor indulging
properare animo intendit. Dum autem quadam nocte in
to-hasten in-mind he-intended while moreover on-a-certain night on
cuius sequenti die ad urbem Legionum peruenturus erat
whose following day to the-city of-the-Legions about-to-arrive he-was
pergeret, inopina et inmanis procella uisque uentorum
he-went an-unexpected and monstrous storm and-the-force of-the-winds
cum pluuia apud Usce oppidum, quod ab urbe vi miliariis
with rain at Usk the-town which from the-city six miles
distabat, ei ingruit, cuius nimietate omnes ipsius socii
was-distant on-him burst whose by-the-excess all his companions
aut deuiarent aut eum prosequi nequirent.
either strayed or him to-follow could-not

Eadem autem nocte rex Arturus cum sua coniuge
on-the-same moreover night king Arthur with his wife
regina Gwendoloena thoro recubans, quia ob noctis
the-queen Guinevere on-the-couch reclining because for of-the-night
diuturnitatem sibi sompnus erat fastidio, de multis
the-length to-them sleep was a-disgust about many-things
adinuicem sermocinabantur. Erat quidem Gwendoloena regina
with-each-other they-talked was indeed Guinevere the-queen
cunctarum feminarum pulcher[r]ima sed ueneficiis imbuta,
of-all women the-most-beautiful but in-sorceries steeped
ut multociens ex suis sortilegiis communicaretur futura.
so-that many-times from her lots was-communicated the-future
Inter ceteras igitur cum rege confabulaciones "Domine,"
among the-other therefore with the-king conversations lord
ait "tu te de tua probitate nimium gloriaris et extollis
she-says you yourself about your prowess too-much glory and extol
neminemque tibi uiribus parem existimas?" Arturus "Ita est"
and-no-one to-you in-strength equal reckon Arthur so it-is
ait; "nonne et tui animus idem de me sentit?" Regina:
he-says surely also of-you the-mind the-same about me feels the-queen
"Nempe hac ipsa noctis hora quidam miles e Roma ueniens
surely at-this very of-the-night hour a-certain knight from Rome coming
per Usce municipium huc cursum tendit, quem uirtute
through Usk the-town hither (his)-course directs whom in-valor
et fortitudine tibi eminere ne dubites. Sonipedi residet
and strength than-you to-excel do-not doubt a-steed he-sits
cui uigore, ualore decoreue alter equiparari non poterit.
to-which in-vigor worth or-comeliness another to-be-equaled not will-be-able
Arma ei sunt impenetrabilia nec est qui ad ferientis
the-arms to-him are impenetrable nor there-is anyone-who to of-the-striker
dextram subsistat. Et, ne me friuola arbitreris asserere,
the-right-hand may-stand and lest me frivolous-things you-think to-assert

signum rei habeto, quod anulum aureum et iii myriadas
a-sign of-the-thing have that a-ring golden and three myriads
cum equis duobus eum mihi summo mane missurum tibi
with horses two him to-me at-earliest morning about-to-send to-you
prenuncio." Arturus autem, eam se nunquam in huiusmodi
I-foretell Arthur moreover her himself never in of-this-kind
presagiis fefellisse recogitans, rem probare, ea tamen
presages to-have-deceived recalling the-thing to-prove she yet
ignorante, statuit. Consuetudinis enim habebat, quod, statim
not-knowing decided of-custom for he-had that at-once
ubi aliquem strenuum uirum aduenire audisset, se illi
when some vigorous man to-come he-had-heard himself to-him
obuium daret, ut mutuus congressus ualidiorem ostenderet.
to-meet he-gave that the-mutual encounter the-stronger might-show
Paulo ergo post regina sopita, surrexit, cornipedem
a-little therefore after with-the-queen asleep he-rose the-horse
armatus ascendit, abiit, Kaium tantummodo suum dapiferum
armed mounted went-away Kay only his steward
uie habens comitem. Occurrit Militi cum tunica armature
of-the-way having as-companion he-meets the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
ad quendam riuulum pluuialibus undis inundatum subsistenti.
at a-certain stream with-rain waves flooded halting
Iuxta quem uadi querens transitum moram parum uerberat;
beside which of-a-ford seeking the-crossing delay a-little he-beats
tetra quippe noctis deceptus caligine profundi fluminis
by-the-black indeed of-the-night deceived darkness of-a-deep river
alueum autumarat. Quem Arturus ex armorum splendore
the-bed he-had-reckoned whom Arthur from of-the-arms the-splendor
animaduertens; "Cuias es," exclamat "qui hanc noctis
noticing of-what-country are-you he-cries who this of-night
silencio ober[r]as patriam? Exulne es, predo an
in-the-silence wander-through country whether-an-exile are-you a-robber or

insidiator?" Cui Miles cum tunica armature: "Erro quidem
a-lurker to-whom the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor I-stray indeed
ut uiarum inscius sed nec exulis me fuga agitat nec
as of-the-roads ignorant but neither of-an-exile me flight drives nor
predonis rapina instigat nec fraus insidiantis occultat."
of-a-robber plunder goads nor the-fraud of-a-lurker hides
Arturus: "Loquacitate niteris; nosco uersuciam tuam; e tribus
Arthur with-talkativeness you-strive I-know cunning your of three
que predixi te unum calleo. Ni igitur quantocius,
which I-said-before you one I-know unless therefore as-quickly-as-possible
depositis armis, te mihi ultro tradideris,
with-laid-aside arms yourself to-me of-your-own-accord you-shall-have-surrendered
me tue absque mora nequicie uindicem sencies". Et ille:
me of-your without delay wickedness the-avenger you-will-feel and he
"Vecordis et timidi animi est, qui ante bellum fugam inierit
of-a-mad and timid mind he-is who before war flight has-entered
aut qui priusquam necessitas exegerit se aduersario
or who before necessity has-demanded himself to-an-adversary
submiserit. Si autem meorum armorum adeo teneris cupidus,
has-submitted if but of-my arms so you-are-held desirous
eorum obtestor uirtutem, te ipsa duris comparaturum
of-them I-adjure the-valor you them with-hard about-to-buy
colaphis". Hoc autem modo uerbis inter eos ad minas
cuffs in-this moreover way with-words between them to threats
et contumelias prorumpentibus, Arturus furore exasperatus,
and insults bursting-forth Arthur by-fury exasperated
quasi riuum iam transiturus et in eum irruiturus, equum
as-if the-stream already about-to-cross and on him about-to-rush (his)-horse
calcaribus ad cursum coegit. Cui Miles cum tunica
with-spurs to running compelled to-whom the-Knight with the-tunic
armature obuius factus protensa ac demissa lancea in ipso
of-armor to-meet made with-stretched and lowered lance in the-very

transsitu eum impulit et mediis undis, uersis uestigiis,
crossing him thrust and into-the-middle waves with-turned footsteps
deiecit sonipedemque ad se cursu delatum per lora
threw and-the-steed to himself in-(its)-course carried by the-reins
corripuit. Successit Kaius dapifer uindicaturus dominum
seized succeeded Kay the-steward about-to-avenge lord
suum, et, admisso equo, cum Milite cum tunica armature
his and with-let-go horse with the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
congreditur, sed eodem pacto et ipse super Arturum in una
clashes but in-the-same manner also he upon Arthur in one
congerie primo ictu prosternitur. Equum autem eius Miles
heap at-the-first blow is-laid-low the-horse moreover his the-Knight
cum tunica armature, inuexa haste cuspide, ad se
with the-tunic of-armor with-the-carried of-the-spear point to himself
detraxit; ipsos uero incolumes noctis seruauit obscuritas.
drew-off them but unharmed of-the-night kept the-darkness
Quique equites illuc uenerant domum pedites cum non
and-who horsemen thither had-come home on-foot with not
paruo dedecore redierunt. Arturus uero cubile repetiit. Quem
small disgrace they-returned Arthur but the-bed sought-again whom
regina Gwendoloena frigore rigidum et totum tum imbre
the-queen Guinevere with-cold stiff and whole both by-rain
tum riui undis madefactum quo tam diu moratus
and of-the-stream by-the-waves soaked where so long having-stayed
complutusque fuisset interrogat. Arturus: “Afforis in curia
and-rained-on he-had-been asks Arthur outside in the-court
tumultum ac si certancium percepi, ad quos egressus
a-tumult as if of-contenders I-perceived to whom having-gone-out
in eos pacando moram feci nimboque ingruente me
on them by-pacifying delay I-made and-with-the-storm bursting me

contigit complui". Regina: "Sit ut dicis; verum quo abieris
it-happened to-be-rained-on the-queen be-it as you-say but whither you-went
quidue actum sit meus in crastinum nuncius propalabit".
or-what done be my on the-morrow messenger will-divulge

ARTHUR LEARNS THE TRUTH; THE CASTLE OF MAIDENS

The Knight sends the horses and a ring to the queen, as she had foretold, to Arthur's shame. At court Arthur reads the emperor's letter, has Lot and Anna confirm that the Knight is their son, but hides the truth and scorns him; the Knight vows to do alone what Arthur's army cannot. A pagan king besieging the Castle of Maidens carries off its lady, and Arthur, pursuing him, falls into the enemy's prepared rear guard.

Miles autem cum tunica armature, fluuiolum minime
the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor the-little-river not-at-all
transgressus nec cum quibus habuisset conflictum conscius,
having-crossed nor with whom he-had-had conflict aware
ad quendam uicinum pagum diuertit ibique hospitatus est.
to a-certain neighboring village turned-aside and-there lodged he-was
Summo uero diluculo ad Urbem Legionum tetendit. A
at-the-earliest but dawn to the-City of-the-Legions made-his-way from
qua duobus miliariis quendam nactus puerum cui
which two miles a-certain having-come-upon boy to-whom
famularetur interrogat. Cui puer "Regine" ait "exsto
he-served he-asks to-whom the-boy of-the-queen he-says I-stand
nuncius, cuius archana proferre mandata mih incumbit
the-messenger whose secret to-bring-forth commands on-me lies
officium". Et ille "Faciesne" ait "quod tibi iniunxero"?
the-office and he will-you-do he-says what on-you I-shall-have-enjoined
Puer: "Presto sum quod placuerit". Miles cum tunica
the-boy ready I-am what will-have-pleased the-Knight with the-tunic

armature “Hos” ait “duos sume sonipedes et eos mei ex
of-armor these he-says two take steeds and them of-me from
parte deduc regine utque mee probitatis insigne gratanter
part lead to-the-queen and-that of-my prowess the-mark gladly
accipiat in pignore rogita amicicie”. Anulum etiam aureum
she-accept in pledge ask of-friendship the-ring also golden
cum iii aureis eidem deferendum proferens suum nomen
with three gold-coins to-the-same to-be-carried bringing-forth his name
edidit seque e uestigio eum prosecuturum intimauit.
he-uttered and-himself from the-track him about-to-follow intimated
Nuncius autem que sibi iniuncta sunt exequitur.
the-messenger moreover what-things to-him enjoined were carries-out
Aureos accepit cornipedesque secum abduxit.
the-gold-coins he-took and-the-horses with-himself led-away
Gwendoloena autem regina, ut futuri prescia, in arcis
Guinevere moreover the-queen as of-the-future foreknowing on of-the-citadel
prerupto stabat culmine, uiam prospectans que ad Usce
the-steep stood top the-road looking-out-on which to Usk
ducebat oppidum. Que duos equos cum suis adducentem
led the-town who two horses with their leading
phaleris suum eminus contemplata redire nuncium rem
trappings her from-afar having-contemplated to-return messenger the-thing
intellexit, ilico descendit ac ei iam regiam ingredienti
understood at-once she-descended and him already the-palace entering
obuiauit. Puer uero negocium lepide peragit, mandato pandit,
met the-boy but the-business elegantly performs the-command discloses
transmissa tradit, Militemque cum tunica armature iam
the-sent-things hands-over and-the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor already
affore predicit. Ad cuius nomen regina subridens dona
to-be-at-hand foretells at whose name the-queen smiling the-gifts
suscipit, gracias agit et equos thalamo inductos ante
receives thanks gives and the-horses into-the-chamber led before

lecticam regis Arturi adhuc quiescentis, utpote qui noctem
the-bed of-king Arthur still resting as-being one-who the-night
totam insompnem laborando duxerat, statuit, sompnoque
whole sleepless by-laboring had-spent she-set and-from-sleep
excito, "Domine," ait, "ne me commenti nota arguas,
roused lord she-says lest me of-invention with-the-mark you-accuse
ecce anulus et aurei quos hodie mihi transmittendos
behold the-ring and the-gold-coins which today to-me to-be-sent
nocte promisi. Insuper et hos duos dextrarios mihi
at-night I-promised besides also these two warhorses to-me
destinauit, quos, eorum sessoribus illo fluuiolo obrutis,
he-has-sent which their with-riders in-that little-river overwhelmed
hac nocte predictus miles se conquisisse mandauit." Rex
this night the-aforesaid knight himself to-have-won sent-word the-king
autem Arturus suos equos recognoscens pudore consternitur,
moreover Arthur his horses recognizing with-shame is-dismayed
id uidens propalatum quod haberi autumabat secretam.
it seeing divulged which to-be-held he-reckoned secret
Egressus est deinde Arturus ad nobilium colloquium, quos ad
went-out has then Arthur to of-the-nobles the-conference whom to
conuentum pro causis instantibus accitos ea die adesse
the-assembly for causes pressing summoned on-that day to-be-present
iusserat. Cum quibus dum ante aulam sub umbra fraxini
he-had-ordered with whom while before the-hall under the-shade of-an-ash
resedisset, ecce Miles cum tunica armature equitans ualuas
he-had-sat behold the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor riding the-gates
ingreditur, cominusque in ipsius regis Arturi procedens
enters and-near into of-the-very king of-Arthur advancing
aspectum eum cum considenti regina miliciaque salutat.
sight him with the-sitting-with queen and-army greets
Arturus uero non ignarus quis esset ei trucem uultum
Arthur but not ignorant who he-was to-him a-grim face

pretendebat indignanciusque respondebat. Interrogat tamen
showed and-more-indignantly answered he-asks yet
unde ortus, quo tenderet, quidne illis regionibus quereret.
whence sprung whither he-made-his-way and-what in-those regions he-sought
Ille autem se Romanum esse militem, et, quia eum ut
he moreover himself Roman to-be a-knight and because him as
Marte pressum audierat indigere milicia, sibi laturum
by-war pressed he-had-heard to-need soldiery to-him about-to-bring
aduenisse presidia simulque imperialia detulisse
to-have-come garrisons and-at-the-same-time imperial to-have-brought
mandata. Thecam igitur signatam protulit apicesque
commands the-case therefore sealed he-brought-forth and-the-letters
regi porrexit. Arturus autem, litteris acceptis, seorsum
to-the-king held-out Arthur moreover with-the-letters received apart
a turba secessit recitarique iussit. Quarum testimoniis
from the-crowd withdrew and-to-be-read ordered of-which with-the-testimonies
cum carte monimentis perceptis indiciorum, quoque pallio
with of-the-charter the-records perceived of-the-tokens also the-cloak
scilicet et anulo signis prolatis, ualde obstupefactus est,
namely and the-ring with-the-signs brought-forth greatly astounded he-was
quod omni desiderio uerum affectabat existere. Hoc ex
because with-all desire true he-longed to-be this from
ingenti leticia — eum uidelicet suum esse nepotem —
huge gladness him namely his to-be nephew
nequiuit credere. Huiusque rei mansit incredulus, donec, eius
he-could-not to-believe and-of-this thing he-remained incredulous until his
utroque conuocato parente, Loth rege Norguuegie Annaque
with-each summoned parent Lot king of-Norway and-Anna
regina, qui forte cum aliis ducibus iussi aduenerant,
the-queen who by-chance with other leaders ordered had-come
rei fidem diligenter ab eis discuteret et indagaret.
of-the-thing the-faith diligently from them he-should-examine and investigate

Quibus id uerum fatentibus, eumque suum filium, indiciis
with-whom that true confessing and-him their son with-the-tokens
cognitis, adhibito sacramento asserentibus, Arturus incredibili
recognized with-applied oath asserting Arthur with-incredible
exhilaratur gaudio, uirum tam multimodis imperatoris fultum
is-gladdened joy a-man so manifold of-the-emperor supported
preconiis tantarumque probitatum prelatum titulis sibi
by-proclamations and-of-so-great prowesses preferred by-titles to-himself
ex insperato tanta propinquitate coniunctum [esse]. Ex
from unhoped-for by-such kinship joined to-be on
industria tamen nil ei inde propalandum censuit usquequo
purpose yet nothing to-him thence to-be-divulged he-judged until
aliquid preclari penes se patrasset facinoris.
something of-splendid with himself he-should-have-accomplished deed
Ad conuentum ergo reuersus eumque ante omnes conuocans
to the-assembly therefore returned and-him before all calling
"Tuo" ait, "amice, in presenti presidio non egeo, in quo
your he-says friend at present help not I-need in which
probitas an inercia magis uigeat prossus ignoro. Magna mihi
probity or sloth more flourishes at-all I-am-ignorant great to-me
sat militum exstat copia incomparabilis probitatis, robore
enough of-knights stands abundance of-incomparable prowess with-strength
et uirtute predita, inertemque et timidum probis et
and valor endowed and-a-sluggish-man and timid on-the-upright and
bellicosis ingerere eorum est animos a solita audacia et
warlike to-thrust their is minds from accustomed boldness and
probitate uelle eneruare. Tui similium etiam absque stipendiis
prowess to-wish to-unnerve of-your likes also without wages
mihi permaximus sponte militat numerus, inter quos mea
for-me a-very-great of-their-own-accord serves number among whom my
excellencia, nisi prius merueris, te [non ascribendum]
excellency unless first you-shall-have-deserved you not to-be-ascribed

nec etiam censendum existimat." Ad hec Miles cum tunica
nor even to-be-reckoned thinks at this the-Knight with the-tunic
armature eius dictis exasperatus respondit: "Grauem repulsam
of-armor his by-words exasperated answered a-heavy repulse
et inopinatam iniuriam tibi famulari cupientem me a te
and unexpected injury you to-serve desiring me from you
contigit incurrere, qui quondam quandoque nec multis
it-has-happened to-incur who once sometimes neither by-many
exoratus precibus nec magnis conductus opibus te dicioribus
entreated prayers nor by-great hired riches than-you richer-men
dignabar obsequendo assistere. Nec me non reperturum dubito
I-deigned by-serving to-attend nor me not about-to-find I-doubt
cui seruiam, dum etiam, si tantum animum intendero,
whom I-may-serve when even if so-much mind I-shall-have-applied
imparem leuiter inueniam. Verum, quia me huc adduxit
an-unequal-one easily I-shall-find but because me hither has-brought
affectus experiunde milicie et si hinc discessero timiditati
the-desire of-testing knighthood and if hence I-shall-have-departed to-timidity
ascribetur et inercie, tali condicione me tue milicie
it-will-be-ascribed and sloth on-such condition me of-your army
dignum censeas numero, si illud in quo tuus totus defecerit
worthy judge of-the-number if that in which your whole has-failed
exercitus solus peregero." Arturus "Meum" ait
army alone I-shall-have-accomplished Arthur my he-says
"contestor imperium, si compleueris quod pacisceris, te
I-call-to-witness empire if you-shall-have-completed what you-bargain you
non solum eis ascribam uerum omnium amori preponam."
not only to-them I-shall-ascribe but of-all to-the-love I-shall-prefer
Regi itaque ac ipsius uniuersis optimatibus sentencia
to-the-king and-so and his to-all nobles the-opinion
placuit eumque prelibata condicione penes se retinuit.
pleased and-him on-the-aforesaid condition with himself retained

Non dies bis seni transierant et causa huiusmodi in
not days twice six had-passed and a-cause of-this-kind on
expedicionem Arturum proficisci compulit. In aquilonari parte
an-expedition Arthur to-set-out compelled in the-northern part
Britannie erat quoddam castellum, Puellarum nunccupatum,
of-Britain was a-certain castle of-the-Maidens named
cui tam decore quam generositate preclara et famosa
over-which as for-beauty as for-nobility splendid and famous
iure dominii presidebat puella amicicie nexibus Arturo
by-right of-lordship presided a-girl by-the-bonds of-friendship to-Arthur
admodum copulata. Huius prestanti forma et pulcritudinis
greatly joined of-her by-the-outstanding form and of-beauty
magnitudine quidam rex paganus captus et ab ea despectus
by-the-greatness a-certain king pagan captured and by her despised
ipsam in predicto oppido obsidebat, iamque compositis
her in the-aforesaid town besieged and-already with-arranged
machinis, comportatis et erectis aggeribus, quasi eam
engines with-brought and raised ramparts as-if her
expugnaturus et obtenturus imminebat. Cuius dum iuges
about-to-storm and about-to-hold he-threatened whose while continual
incursus et cotidianos assultus illa perferre nequiuisset, misso
incursions and daily assaults she to-endure could-not with-sent
nuncio, sibi suppecias Arturum aduocat, sese turri
messenger for-herself as-help Arthur summons herself in-the-tower
inclusam, exteriori uallo occupato, haud mora hostibus
shut with-the-outer wall seized without delay to-the-enemies
dedendam asserens, nisi cicius presidia conferat. Arturus
to-be-surrendered asserting unless sooner garrisons he-bring Arthur
autem eius discrimini oppido metuens uirtutem milicie
moreover her for-the-peril greatly fearing the-strength of-(his)-army
confestim co[n]gregat instruit et ordinat, perfeccioneque
at-once gathers equips and orders and-with-the-completion

parata, licet maxima constrictus formidine, quo accitus
prepared although by-the-greatest constrained fear whither summoned
fuerat iter arripuit. Multociens enim cum eodem rege
he-had-been the-way seized many-times for with the-same king
commiserat et congressus fuerat, sed semper repulsum et
he-had-joined-battle and clashed had but always repulsed and
deuictum eum constabat. Illi uero obsidionem petenti alius
conquered him it-was-agreed to-him but the-siege seeking another
prepeti cursu occurrit nuncius, qui cum cesarie [super] genas
with-swift course meets messenger who with (his)-hair over (his)-cheeks
dilaniatas municipium quidem expugnatum, illam autem
torn the-town indeed stormed her moreover
captam intimat et abductam mandantemque sibi, ut quo
captured intimates and carried-off and-bidding him that with-what
amore eam dilexisset in prosperis tunc ostenderet in aduersis.
love her he-had-loved in prosperity then he-should-show in adversity
Manubiis igitur honustos Arturus aduersarios insequitur,
with-booty therefore laden Arthur the-adversaries pursues
extrema eorum agmina, que inprouisa autumabat, furibundus
the-hindmost their columns which unprovided he-reckoned raging
aggreditur, sed malo ab illis omine exceptus est; de
attacks but with-evil by them omen received he-was about
eius quippe aduentu predocti armati et ordinate incesserant,
his indeed coming forewarned armed and in-order had-marched
ualidiores ad munimen tocius exercitus posteriori in turma
the-stronger for the-defense of-the-whole army rear in troop
locauerant, qui subito impetu non facile perturbari poterant.
they-had-placed who by-sudden onset not easily to-be-disturbed could

Arthur is routed and flees. The Knight, who has watched from a steep place apart, mocks Arthur and each fleeing knight and is taunted in return for hiding in the wood; he charges into the pagan army, kills its king, carries off the lady, hides her in a defile, and slaughters his pursuers. Returning with the king's head, he asks whether Arthur will still have him as his knight. Arthur embraces him and asks his name and lineage, and when the Knight calls himself a Roman senator's son, born in Gaul, tells him he is deceived and has the emperor's letters read before his parents, Lot and Anna, and the court: he is Arthur's nephew, henceforth to be called Gawain. The court shouts the name, and the author bids whoever would know Gawain's later feats ask one who knows, by prayer or price, since a history is harder to write in a composed style than to tell in common speech.

Ad tumultum igitur extremi agminis priores reuertuntur
at the-tumult therefore of-the-hindmost column the-first return
phalanges Arturumque ex omni circumdantes latere
phalanxes and-Arthur from every surrounding side
comprimunt impellunt et affligunt. Hic pugna acerrima
they-press drive and afflict here a-fight most-fierce
commissa stragesque cruenta utrimque illata est
joined and-a-slaughter bloody on-both-sides brought was
ac Arturus medio hostium conspectus gremio
and Arthur in-the-middle of-the-enemies seen in-the-bosom
ualde conterebatur anxiebatur et fatiscebatur, nique
greatly was-crushed was-distressed and was-wearied and-unless
uiam gladiis aperiens fugam cicius maturasset, cum
a-way with-swords opening flight sooner he-had-hastened with
omni cesus pessumdaretur exercitu. Fuge itaque
all slain he-would-have-been-ruined army to-flight and-so
salutem commisit, sanius ducens saluus fugiendo
(his)-safety he-committed more-sensibly judging safe by-fleeing

euadere quam ultro se ingerendo periculum
to-escape than of-his-own-accord himself by-thrusting danger
incurrere.
to-incur
Belli autem exordio Miles cum tunica armature
of-the-war moreover at-the-beginning the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor
remoto et prerupto loco secesserat, quis prelii exitus
to-a-remote and steep place had-withdrawn what of-the-battle outcome
commilitones maneret contemplaturus. Quos ubi fuga lapsos
(his)-comrades would-await about-to-contemplate whom when in-flight slipped
comperit, Arturo cum prioribus fugienti obuiauit, atque
he-learned Arthur with the-first fleeing he-met and
ei subridendo insultans "Numquid" ait "O rex, ceruos
him smilingly insulting surely he-says O king stags
an lepores agitis, qui sic passim dispersi per
or hares are-you-driving who so here-and-there scattered through
auia tenditis?" Cui Arturus indignatus respondit:
pathless-places make-your-way to-whom Arthur indignant answered
"Hic tuam satis probitatem expertam habeo, qui, aliis
here your enough prowess tested I-have who with-the-others
pugnam adeuntibus, te nemoris abdidisti latebris."
the-fight approaching yourself of-the-grove hid in-the-hiding-places
Nec plura locutus aduersariis instantibus pertranssiit.
nor more having-spoken with-the-adversaries pressing passed-through
Miles autem cum tunica armature, in eius singulos
the-Knight moreover with the-tunic of-armor at his each
militum sibi obuiancium lepide et ridiculose cauillatus,
of-the-knights him meeting elegantly and laughably having-jested
insequentibus hostibus occurrens eorum se cateruis
the-pursuing enemies meeting their himself into-the-companies
seuiens ingessit. Quorum confertos et constipatos cuneos
raging thrust whose dense and packed wedges

ad instar hyberne procelle per medium penetrans
in the-likeness of-a-winter storm through the-middle penetrating
neminem quidem lesit, nisi quem sibi fortuna resistentem
no-one indeed he-harmed except whom to-him fortune resisting
obtulit. Ut autem regalem aciem intuitus est, calcaribus
offered when moreover the-royal line beheld he-has with-the-spurs
illico subductis cornipedem admisit, et, lancea uibrata,
at-once struck-under the-horse let-go and the-lance brandished
splendidum ferrum sub cauo pectore inopinus regi
the-splendid iron under the-hollow breast unexpectedly into-the-king
intorsit. Quo moribundo corruente, puellam per lora
he-hurled with-whom dying falling the-girl by the-reins
corripit ac uia qua uenerat cicius regredi
he-seizes and by-the-way by-which he-had-come more-quickly to-return
cepit.
began
Agmina autem que regem circumsteterant, suum dominum
the-columns moreover which the-king had-stood-around their lord
sui medio peremptum, confusa discedentem cum clamore
of-them in-the-middle slain confused the-one-departing with shouting
persecuntur strictisque gladiis impetunt et inuadunt. Ipse
pursue and-with-drawn swords attack and invade he
in omnes et omnes in eum irruunt. Eminus alii in
against all and all against him rush from-afar some at
eum tela iaculantur, ceteri ancipiti mucronum acie eum
him darts hurl the-others with-the-double of-swords edge him
sine intermissione contundunt, ut, sicut pluuie inundacio,
without intermission beat that as of-rain the-flood
sic ictuum in eum conflueret multitudo. Ille autem hos
so of-blows on him flowed-together the-multitude he moreover these
super illos obtruncatos deserens suum semper iter agebat.
over those cut-down leaving his always way made

Sed multum impediebatur, quod non tantummodo se
but much he-was-hindered because not only himself
sed etiam illam oportebat defendere. Non longe autem
but also her it-behooved to-defend not far moreover
perampla et profunda distabat fouea, duarum prouinciarum
a-very-ample and deep was-distant pit of-two provinces
terminos dirimens. Ideoque limes et diuisio illarum
the-bounds separating and-therefore the-boundary and division of-those
dicebatur finium, cuius angustus aditus et transitus non
it-was-called territories whose narrow approach and passage not
nisi unius admittebat ingressum. Ad hanc igitur Miles
except of-one admitted entrance to this therefore the-Knight
cum tunica armature accelerans et deueniens puellam intra
with the-tunic of-armor hastening and arriving the-girl within
fosse municionem tuto inmisit, precipiens se donec
of-the-ditch the-fortification safely sent ordering herself until
rediret in remota ibidem operiri. Iterum aduersariorum
he-returned in the-remote-part there to-await again of-the-adversaries
se usque insequencium inmergens cuneis repellebat
himself right-on pursuing plunging into-the-wedges he-repelled
fugabat dispergebat, ac more leonis catulis amissis
put-to-flight scattered and in-the-manner of-a-lion with-cubs lost
infremens in eos crudeli strage seuiebat. Nullus eius
roaring on them with-cruel slaughter he-raged no-one his
impetum pertulit nec aliquis quem grauis moles eius
onset bore nor anyone whom the-heavy mass of-his
dextre attigisset indempnis abiuit. Quocumque se
right-hand had-touched unharmed went-away wherever himself
conuertebat, ac si a facie tempestatis, ab eo dilabebantur,
he-turned as if from the-face of-a-storm from him they-slipped-away
quos iugiter ad exicium agens sine pietate trucidabat.
whom continually to destruction driving without pity he-slaughtered

Nec destitit, donec omnes in fugam conuersos, omnes
nor he-ceased until all into flight turned all
perniciei traderet, dum pars eorum se ex preruptis
to-destruction he-handed-over while part of-them themselves from steep
rupibus precipites darent, pars obstantibus fluctibus se
rocks headlong gave part in-the-opposing waves themselves
sponte inuoluerent et ipse superstites cede
of-their-own-accord rolled and he the-survivors with-slaughter
dilaniaret.
tore-apart
Miles igitur cum tunica armature, absque sui detrimento
the-Knight therefore with the-tunic of-armor without of-himself loss
habita uictoria, capud regis diademate insignitum abscidit,
with-won victory the-head of-the-king with-the-diadem marked cut-off
ipsius uexillo infixit ac in sullime erigens ad regem
his on-the-banner fixed and on high raising to the-king
Arturum cum sua puella prope remeauit. Ouansque aulam
Arthur with his girl near returned and-exulting the-hall
ingressus qua rex Arturus super belli infortunio tristis
entering where king Arthur over of-the-war the-misfortune sad
et merens residebat "Quonam sunt" exclamat "O rex, tui
and mourning sat where are he-cries O king your
famosi athlete, de quibus te adeo iactabas neminem
famous athletes about whom yourself so you-boasted none
eorum parem uirtuti? Ecce capud uiri quem cum
of-them equal to-valor behold the-head of-the-man whom with
omni suorum copia militum solus uici et prostraui,
all of-his abundance of-knights alone I-conquered and laid-low
a quo tot tuorum pugillum milia tociens proh!
by whom so-many of-your fighters thousands so-often ah
pudet fugari et eneruari. Tuumne adhuc me
it-shames to-be-put-to-flight and to-be-unnerved your still me

militem dignaris?" Recognoscens autem Arturus regis
as-knight do-you-deign recognizing moreover Arthur of-the-king
capud sibi pre omnibus odiosi sibique dilectam ab
the-head to-him beyond all hateful and-to-him dear from
inimicorum manibus ereptam, letatus eius in amplexus
of-the-enemies the-hands snatched rejoicing his into embraces
irruit, atque "Reuera dignandus et optandus es miles"
rushed and truly worthy and desirable you-are a-knight
respondit "precipuisque donandus honoribus. Verum quia
he-answered and-with-special to-be-presented honors but because
adhuc pene incertum habemus quis nobis aduenerís,
still almost uncertain we-hold who to-us you-have-come
enucleacius, rogo, insinua que tibi natalis tellus, a
more-plainly I-ask intimate what to-you native land from
quibus originem trahas, et quo censearis nomine."
whom origin you-draw and by-what you-are-reckoned name
Et ille: "Rei quidem habet ueritas, me Gallicanis in
and he of-the-thing indeed holds the-truth me Gallic in
partibus Romano senatore progenitum, Rome educatum,
parts by-a-Roman senator begotten at-Rome brought-up
Miles cum tunica armature sortitum uocabulum."
the-Knight with the-tunic of-armor having-obtained as-name
Arturus: "Plane falleris, fideque caret tua estimacio
Arthur plainly you-are-deceived and-truth lacks your estimation
et te hac opinione prossus deceptum noueris." Miles:
and you in-this opinion altogether deceived you-may-know the-Knight
"Quid ergo?" Arturus: "Ostendam," inquit, "tibi tue
what then Arthur I-shall-show he-says to-you of-your
propaginis seriem, cuius rei cognicio tui laboris erit
lineage the-series of-which thing the-knowledge of-your labor will-be
remuneracio."
the-reward

Utroque igitur ipsius parente presente, Loth scilicet rege
with-each therefore his parent present Lot namely the-king
et Anna regina Norwegie, sibi ab imperatore directas
and Anna the-queen of-Norway to-him from the-emperor sent
litteras iubet afferri allatasque in aure multitudinis
the-letters he-orders to-be-brought and-the-brought in the-ear of-the-multitude
uulgi et nobilium recitari. Quibus intelligentibus
of-the-common-people and of-the-nobles to-be-read with-which understanding
uniuersis perlectis, cum ingenti stupore incredibilis omnium
all read-through with huge astonishment incredible of-all
mentibus innascitur leticia talique sobole beatos clamitabant
in-the-minds is-born gladness and-in-such offspring blessed they-cried
parentes. Tunc rex Arturus eum hylari uultu intuens
the-parents then king Arthur him with-cheerful face looking-at
"Meum te" ait, "karissime, nepotem, huius mee sororis
my you he-says dearest nephew of-this my sister
filium, cognoscito, quem talem edidisse non infamie sed
the-son know whom such to-have-borne not to-infamy but
maximo ascribendum est fortune beneficio." Subiunxitque: "In
to-greatest to-be-ascribed it-is of-fortune the-benefit and-he-added in
puerili quidem etate Puer sine Nomine, a tirocinio autem
boyish indeed age the-Boy without Name from first-service moreover
usque ad presens Miles es uocatus cum tunica
all-the-way to the-present the-Knight you-have-been called with the-tunic
armature, iam a modo Waluuanius proprio censeberis
of-armor now from now Gawain by-your-own you-will-be-reckoned
notamine." Hec Arturo dicente, terque quaterque ab
name these-things Arthur saying three-times and-four-times by
omni cetu "Waluuanius, nepos regis Arturi!" ingeminatum
all the-assembly Gawain nephew of-king Arthur redoubled
et inculcatum est. A patre igitur filio, ab auo
and drummed-in was by the-father therefore the-son by the-grandfather

nepote agnito, magnitudo gaudii dupplicatur, cum pro
the-grandson recognized the-greatness of-joy is-doubled both for
amissi recuperatore pignoris, tum pro ipsius incomparabili
of-the-lost the-recoverer pledge and for his incomparable
uirtute et fortitudine. Cetera que uirtutum Waluuanii
valor and strength the-other which of-the-feats of-Gawain
secuntur insignia qui scire desiderat a sciente prece uel
follow distinctions who to-know desires from one-knowing by-prayer or
precio exigat, sciens quod sicut discriminosius est bellum
by-price let-him-demand knowing that as more-perilous it-is war
inire quam bellum referre sic operosius sit composito
to-enter than war to-relate so more-laborious it-is in-composed
eloquencie stilo historiam exarare quam uulgari propalare
of-eloquence style a-history to-write-out than in-common to-divulge
sermone.
speech

De lupo

Arthur and Gorlagon

At a Pentecost feast Arthur kisses the queen, who tells him he has never understood a woman's mind. He vows not to eat until he learns it, and rides with Kay and Gawain to King Gargol, who confesses he does not know and sends him to his brother Torleil, who sends him to their eldest brother Gorlagon. The first two persuade him to dismount and sit at table; Gorlagon cannot even get him off his horse, and, letting his companions eat, begins a tale.

Apud Urbem Legionum celebre festum diei Pentecostes
at the-City of-the-Legions the-famous feast of-the-day of-Pentecost
rex Arturus agebat, ad quod totius sue dicionis magnates
king Arthur kept to which of-the-whole of-his sway the-magnates
et nobiles inuitabat, peractisque de more solemnijs,
and nobles he-invited and-with-completed according-to custom the-solemnities
ad instructum cum omnibus pertinentibus conuiuium. Quibus
to the-prepared with all appurtenances banquet with-whom
copia affluente dapum summa cum leticia prandentibus,
with-abundance flowing of-dishes the-highest with gladness dining
Arturus, in nimiam effusus leticiam, reginam sibi
Arthur into excessive poured gladness the-queen beside-him
considentem iniectis brachijs amplexatus est, amplexusque
sitting with-thrown arms embraced has and-having-embraced
cunctis intuentibus strictissime osculatus est. Ad hec autem
with-all looking-on most-tightly kissed has at this moreover
illa obstupefacta simulque rubore suffusa, ipsum respexit,
she astounded and-at-the-same-time with-blush suffused him looked-at
et cur se loco et hora insolita osculatus fuisset quesiuit.
and why her in-place and hour unaccustomed kissed he-had asked
Arturus. Quia nichil mihi in diuicijs gratius, nil in delicijs
Arthur because nothing to-me in riches more-pleasing nothing in delights

te constat suauius. Regina. Si quam asseris me adeo diligas,
than-you it-is-agreed sweeter the-queen if as you-assert me so you-love
mentem et voluntatem meam te scire patenter existimas.
mind and will my you to-know plainly you-reckon
Arturus. Tuam mentem erga me beneuolam habere non
Arthur your mind toward me well-disposed to-have not
dubito, tuamque voluntatem mihi prorsus patere certus
I-doubt and-your will to-me altogether to-lie-open sure
existo. Regina. Arture, falleris sine dubio; quippe
I-stand the-queen Arthur you-are-deceived without doubt indeed
agnoscas te nunquam uel ingenium mentemue femine
you-may-recognize you never either the-wit or-the-mind of-a-woman
comperisse. Arturus. Omnia celi obtestor numina, si me
to-have-learned Arthur all of-heaven I-adjure the-powers if from-me
actenus latuere, dabo operam, nec labori indulgens
hitherto they-have-lain-hid I-shall-give effort nor to-labor indulging
nunquam cibo fruar donec ea me nosse contingat.
never food I-shall-enjoy until them me to-know it-happen
Finito itaque conuiuio, Caium dapiferum suum Arturus
with-finished and-so the-banquet Kay steward his Arthur
aduocat atque "Kai," ait, "tu et Walwainus nepos meus
summons and Kay he-says you and Gawain nephew my
ascendite et ad negotium quo propero me[c]um venite.
mount and to the-business to-which I-hasten with-me come
Ceteri omnes remaneant, meos conuiuas mei loco
the-others all let-remain my guests my in-the-place
usquedum rediero letificate." Nec mora, iussi equos
until I-shall-have-returned gladden nor delay bidden the-horses
ascendunt et ad regem quendam sapientissimum in confinio
mount and to a-king certain most-wise in the-neighborhood
regnantem, Gargol dictum, cum Arturo ipsi duo tantummodo
reigning Gargol called with Arthur they two only

properantes, die tercia in quandam vallem lassi deuenerunt,
hastening on-the-day third into a-certain valley weary came
— postquam enim a domo discesserant nec cibum nec
after for from home they-had-departed neither food nor
sompnum ceperant, sed noctes diebus continuantes semper
sleep they-had-taken but nights to-days joining always
equitauerant. E regione autem aduersa ipsius vallis mons
they-had-ridden from region moreover opposite of-that valley a-mountain
arduus extabat, ameno nemore constitutus, in cuius recessu
steep stood-out with-pleasant grove set in whose recess
fortissimum ex politis lapidibus eminebat castellum. Quod
a-very-strong of polished stones towered castle which
ubi Arturus eminus intuitus est, Caium cursim precedere
when Arthur from-afar beheld has Kay at-a-run to-go-ahead
imperat et cuius esset illud opidum renunciare festinet.
orders and whose was that town to-report he-should-hasten
Citato igitur sonipede, Caius accelerauit, intrauit, et iam
with-urged therefore steed Kay hastened entered and already
vallum exterius subeunti in redeundo Arturo occurrens, regis
the-rampart outside going-under in returning Arthur meeting of-king
Gorgol ad quem tendebant municipium fore renunciauit.
Gorgol to whom they-made-their-way the-town to-be reported
Fortuitu autem rex Gorgol tunc mense pransurus consederat;
by-chance moreover king Gorgol then at-table about-to-dine had-sat-down
ante quem Arturus equo vectus ingressus eum lepide
before whom Arthur on-horse borne having-entered him elegantly
cum conuiuantibus salutabat. Cui rex Gorgol “Quis es,”
with the-feasters greeted to-whom king Gorgol who are-you
ait, “et unde, et que causa te tam precipitem nostro
he-says and whence and what cause you so headlong to-our
ingessit conspectui?” Arturus. “Arturus sum” respondit, “rex
has-thrust sight Arthur Arthur I-am he-answered king

Britannie; artem et ingenium mentemque femineam a te
of-Britain the-art and wit and-mind womanly from you
discere desidero, quem in rebus huiusmodi peritum sepissime
to-learn I-desire whom in things of-this-kind skilled most-often
expertus sum."
found I-have
Gorgol. Arture, magnum est quod queris, et perpauci sunt
Gorgol Arthur great it-is what you-seek and very-few are
qui illud nouerunt; sed crede nunc consilio meo, descende et
who it have-known but believe now counsel my dismount and
comede et hodie quiesce, quia itinere et labore te vexatum
eat and today rest because by-journey and labor you harassed
video, et cras quod inde sciero indicabo tibi.
I-see and tomorrow what thence I-shall-have-known I-shall-point-out to-you
Negauit Arturus, se nunquam comessurum constip[u]lans
denied Arthur himself never about-to-eat vowing
nisi prius quod querebat didicisset. Tandem tum rege
unless first what he-sought he-had-learned at-last both with-the-king
et conuiuantibus socijsque instantibus annuit et descendit
and with-the-feasters and-companions pressing he-assented and dismounted
sedeque locata ante regem discubuit. Primo autem diluculo
and-with-a-seat placed before the-king reclined at-the-first moreover dawn
Arturus, pacti non immemor, regem Gargol adijt atque
Arthur of-the-pact not unmindful king Gargol approached and
"O mi rex," ait, "insinua quod te mihi hodie dicturum
O my king he-says intimate what you to-me today about-to-say
heri spopondisti." Gorgol. Arture, stulticiam ventilas;
yesterday you-promised Gorgol Arthur foolishness you-air
sapientem te actenus reputabam. Ars ingenium et mens
wise you hitherto I-reckoned the-art the-wit and the-mind
femine nullius unquam patuere noticie, nec ego te scio
of-a-woman of-no-one ever have-lain-open to-the-knowledge nor I you know

quidquam docere. Sed est mihi frater, rex Torleil dictus,
anything to-teach but there-is to-me a-brother king Torleil called
vicinitate regni coniunctus, me senior et sapientior,
by-neighborhood of-kingdom joined than-me older and wiser
quem latere profecto non autumo, si aliquis huius rei
whom to-be-hidden surely not I-reckon if anyone of-this thing
peritus habetur, quam adeo scire affectas; hunc pete et ut
skilled is-held which so to-know you-aim-at him seek and that
tibi indicet quod inde nouerit mea ex parte edicito.
to-you he-may-point-out what thence he-knows my from part declare
Regi igitur Gorgal valedicto, Arturus discessit, iter
to-king therefore Gorgal with-farewell-said Arthur departed the-way
arripuit, et quatriduano confecto itinere ad regem Torbeil
seized and with-a-four-day completed journey to king Torbeil
peruenit, ipsumque casu prandentem inuenit. A quo
arrived and-him by-chance dining found by whom
resalutatus et quis esset inquisitus, se Arturum regem
greeted-back and who he-was asked himself Arthur king
Britannie esse respondit, et ad eum a fratre suo rege
of-Britain to-be answered and to him from brother his king
Gorgal missum venisse, ut illud sibi panderet cuius
Gorgal sent to-have-come that that to-him he-might-disclose of-which
ignorantia se illum adire compulerat.
ignorance himself him to-approach had-compelled
Torleil. Quid est illud? Arturus. Artem ingenium et mentem
Torleil what is that Arthur the-art the-wit and the-mind
femine indagare mentem adhibui, sed neminem qui ea
of-a-woman to-track (my)-mind I-have-applied but no-one who them
mihi doceat inuenire potui. Tu igitur ad quem missus venio
to-me might-teach to-find I-could you therefore to whom sent I-come
hijs me instrue, nec a me si tibi nota sint velis
in-these me instruct nor from me if to-you known they-be may-you-wish

conculcare. Torleil. Arture, magnum est quod queris, et pauci
to-trample Torleil Arthur great it-is what you-seek and few
sunt qui illud agnoscunt. Unde, quia super hijs tempus nunc
are who it know whence because over these the-time now
non est disserere, descende et comede, et hodie quiesce,
not is to-discuss dismount and eat and today rest
et cras quod inde sciero indicabo tibi. Arturus
and tomorrow what thence I-shall-have-known I-shall-point-out to-you Arthur
ait: "Satis potero comedere. Per fidem meam, nunquam
says enough I-shall-be-able to-eat by faith my never
comedam donec quod quero didiscero." Insistente tum
I-shall-eat until what I-seek I-shall-have-learned pressing then
huic rege et etiam omni discumbentium multitudine, vix
him the-king and also the-whole of-the-reclining multitude scarcely
ut descenderet tandem concessit, et ex aduerso regi
that he-should-dismount at-last he-granted and from opposite to-the-king
mense consedit. Mane autem facto ad regem Torliel venit
at-table sat-down with-morning moreover made to king Torliel he-came
et ut sibi quod promiserat indicaret rogare incepit.
and that to-him what he-had-promised he-should-point-out to-ask began
Gorliel autem se penitus nescire confessus est, et ipse
Gorliel moreover himself altogether not-to-know confessed has and he
Arturum ad tercium fratrem evo maiorem regem Gorlagon
Arthur to the-third brother in-age older king Gorlagon
dirigit, procul dubio ei affirmans ipsum eorum que
directs without doubt to-him affirming him of-the-things which
querebat pollere scientia, si aliquem ea scire constabat.
he-sought to-excel in-knowledge if anyone them to-know it-was-agreed
Arturus autem nil moratus quo destinatus fuerat
Arthur moreover nothing having-delayed whither destined he-had-been
accelerauit, et post biduum urbem qua rex Gorlagon
hastened and after two-days the-city in-which king Gorlagon

morabatur attigit, quem sibi, ut ceteros, casus prandentem
stayed reached whom to-him like the-others chance dining
obtulit. Salutatisque sibi inuicem, Arturus quis esset
offered and-with-greeted each-other mutually Arthur who he-was
causamque aduentus insinuat, et ut se ea pro
and-the-cause of-(his)-coming intimates and that him those-things for
quibus venerat doceret rogitando, cui a rege Gorlagon
which he-had-come he-should-teach asking to-whom by king Gorlagon
responsum est: magnum esse negocium quod querebat;
answered it-was great to-be the-business which he-sought
descenderet et comederet, et sibi in crastinum inquisita
he-should-dismount and should-eat and to-him on the-morrow the-inquired-things
indicaret. Arturus autem se illud facturum omnino
he-would-point-out Arthur moreover himself that about-to-do altogether
negauit; iterumque ut descenderet rogatus, iure iurando
denied and-again that he-should-dismount asked by-oath sworn
se nullius precibus ad hoc flectendum affirmauit, donec
himself of-no-one by-the-prayers for this to-be-bent affirmed until
que querebat didicisset. Videns autem rex Gorlagon eum sibi
what he-sought he-had-learned seeing moreover king Gorlagon him to-him
ut saltem descenderet nullo modo adquiescere, “Arture,” ait,
that at-least he-dismount in-no way to-acquiesce Arthur he-says
“quando sic animo perstitisti te nunquam cibum sumpturum
since thus in-mind you-have-persisted you never food about-to-take
nisi ea cognoueris que inquiris, licet sit magnus
unless those-things you-shall-have-learned which you-inquire although there-be great
labor narrandi et parua utilitas, tamen cuiusdam rei
labor of-telling and small usefulness yet of-a-certain thing
euentum tibi referam, quo artem et ingenium mentemque
the-outcome to-you I-shall-relate by-which the-art and wit and-mind
femine experiri poteris. Verumptamen dico tibi, Arture,
of-a-woman to-test you-will-be-able nevertheless I-say to-you Arthur

descende et comede, quia magnum est quod queris et pauci
dismount and eat because great it-is what you-seek and few
sunt qui illud agnoscunt, et cum tibi retulero parum
are who it know and when to-you I-shall-have-related little
inde doctior habeberis." Arturus. Narra ut proposuisti, et
thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur tell as you-proposed and
de meo esu ne quidquam loquaris. Gorlagon. Vel socios
about my eating not anything say Gorlagon at-least comrades
tuos sine ut descendant et comedant. Arturus. Faciant.
your allow that they-dismount and eat Arthur let-them-do-so
Quibus discumbentibus, "Arture," ait rex Gorlagon, "quia
with-whom reclining Arthur says king Gorlagon because
huius negocij adeo teneris auidus, aurem igitur adhibe, et
of-this business so you-are-held greedy the-ear therefore apply and
que tibi dixero mente retine."
what to-you I-shall-have-said in-mind retain

THE ROD AND THE WOLF

A king had in his garden a rod which, struck on a man's head, would turn him into a wolf. His wife, who loved a pagan youth, forced the secret from him and turned him into a wolf with a man's mind, and married the youth. The wolf took a mate, killed the queen's two children and her two brothers, and saw his mate and cubs caught and hanged; driven from kingdom to kingdom, he overheard that the gentle king of a third would hunt him.

"Quidam rex mihi bene cognitus extitit, nobilis lepidus
a-certain king to-me well known was noble elegant
opulentus, iusticia et veritate famosissimus. Hic sibi
rich for-justice and truth most-famous this-one for-himself
amenum et incomparabilem ortum parauerat, in quo omnia
a-pleasant and incomparable garden had-prepared in which all

genera arborum, pomorum, fructuum, et specierum aromatum
kinds of-trees of-apples of-fruits and of-kinds of-spices
conseri et plantari fecerat; cuius inter cetera virgulta
to-be-sown and to-be-planted he-had-made whose among the-other shrubs
virga pulcra et ad mensuram ipsius regis stature in altum
a-rod beautiful and to the-measure of-the-very king of-stature in height
habebatur porrecta, que eadem nocte et hora qua ipse
was-held stretched which on-the-same night and hour on-which he
natus fuerat e terra prorumpens crescere ceperat. De hac
born had-been from the-earth bursting-forth to-grow had-begun about this
autem virga fatatum erat, quod quicunque eam ab[s]cidisset,
moreover rod fated it-was that whoever it had-cut-off
et graciliori parte ipsius virge sibi caput percutiens diceret
and with-the-slenderer part of-that rod his head striking should-say
'Sis lupus, et habeas sensum lupi!' statim lupus fieret
be a-wolf and have the-sense of-a-wolf at-once a-wolf he-would-become
et sensum lupi haberet. Ob quod magna cura magnaque
and the-sense of-a-wolf would-have for which with-great care and-great
diligentia ipsam obseruabat, de qua statum sue salutis pendere
diligence it he-watched on which the-state of-his safety to-hang
non dubitabat; ipsumque ortum forti et prorupto muro
not he-doubted and-that garden with-a-strong and steep wall
circumdans nullum preter eiusdem orti custodem, et hunc
surrounding no-one except of-the-same garden the-keeper and him
sibi familiarissimum, in eo admitti sinebat, moreque
to-him most-familiar into it to-be-admitted he-allowed and-as-custom
cotidie habebat illam virgam ter uel quater adire, nec
daily he-had that rod three-times or four-times to-visit nor
ante cibum capere, licet usque ad vesperam ieiunasset,
before food to-take although all-the-way to evening he-had-fasted
donec eam viseret. Unde sibi soli huius rei patebat noticia.
until it he-visited whence to-him alone of-this thing lay-open the-knowledge

"Huic autem regi erat uxor valde decora, sed quia pulcra
to-this moreover king was a-wife very comely but because a-beautiful-woman
vix inuenitur casta, ipsa suo decore nimis est sibi effecta
scarcely is-found chaste she by-her comeliness too was to-herself made
perniciosa. Diligebat enim quendam iuuenem, filium cuiusdam
pernicious she-loved for a-certain youth the-son of-a-certain
regis pagani, cuius amorem amori sui domini preferens,
king pagan whose love to-the-love of-her lord preferring
operam et studium dederat ut suum coniugem alicui
effort and zeal she-had-given that her husband to-some
discrimini traderet quo iuuenis posset licite cupitis
peril she-might-hand-over whereby the-youth could lawfully the-desired
potiri amplexibus. Que regem prefatum pomerij ortum
to-gain embraces she the-king aforesaid of-the-orchard the-garden
die totiens ingredi aduertens, causamque scire cupiens,
in-a-day so-often to-enter noticing and-the-cause to-know desiring
illum quidem sepius inde percuntari proposuit, sed nunquam
him indeed more-often thence to-question proposed but never
ausa fuit. Tandem vero die quadam dum rex venatu
dared had at-last but on-day a-certain when the-king from-hunting
serius redisset, et solito virgultum solus intrasset,
later had-returned and in-the-accustomed-way the-shrubbery alone had-entered
ipsa adhuc ieiuna non amplius hoc sibi celari ferens,
she still fasting not further this from-her to-be-hidden bearing
ut moris est femine omnia noscere velle, ipsum regressum
as the-custom is of-a-woman all-things to-know to-wish him returned
et iam discumbentem fraudulenta subridendo interrogat cur
and already reclining fraudulently smiling asks why
totiens cotidie etiam tunc usque ad uesperam ieiunus ortum
so-often daily even then all-the-way to evening fasting the-garden
adisset. Cui cum rex responderet, hoc ad se minime
he-had-visited to-whom when the-king answered this to her not-at-all

pertinere inquirere, nec ipsum sibi illud propalare debere, illa
to-pertain to-inquire nor him to-her that to-divulge to-be-bound she
in furorem conuersa et inconueniens suspicata scilicet illum in
into fury turned and an-unseemly-thing suspecting namely him in
orto rem solitam habere cum adultera, 'Omnia' exclamat
the-garden thing the-accustomed to-have with an-adulteress all she-cries
'celi obtestor numina me nunquam amodo commesturam,
of-heaven I-adjure the-powers me never henceforth about-to-eat
donec mihi causam indicabis,' confestimque surgens a
until to-me the-cause you-shall-point-out and-at-once rising from
mensa thalamum callida adijt simulata egritudine. Lecto
the-table the-chamber cunning approached with-feigned illness on-the-bed
per triduum nihil omnino cibi sumens decubuit.
for three-days nothing at-all of-food taking she-lay
"Tercia autem die videns rex mentis ipsius obstinaciam,
on-the-third moreover day seeing the-king of-mind her the-obstinacy
timens ne huius rei causa mortis discrimen incurreret,
fearing lest of-this thing for-the-sake of-death the-peril she-incur
dulci eam precari et ortari cepit affamine ut surgeret et
with-sweet her to-entreat and to-exhort he-began address that she-should-rise and
comederet, dicens rem esse secretam quam nulli unquam
should-eat saying the-thing to-be secret which to-no-one ever
ausus confiteri fuisset. E contra illa, 'Nil te a tua coniuge
dared to-confess he-had from opposite she nothing you from your wife
decet habere secretum. Nouerisque pro certo me malle mori
befits to-have secret and-you-may-know for certain me to-prefer to-die
quam uiuere, dum me a te tam parum amari perpendo,'
than to-live while me by you so little to-be-loved I-weigh
nulloque modo ut se reficeret persuad[er]i poterat. Tunc
and-in-no way that herself she-should-refresh to-be-persuaded could then
nimis leuis et inconstans nimiumque muliebri amori deditus
too light and inconstant and-too to-womanly love given

et expositus negocium ut erat ei exposuit, fidei sacramento
and exposed the-business as it-was to-her he-set-forth of-faith with-the-oath
ab ea accepto, se nulli aliquando hoc produturam
from her received herself to-no-one at-any-time this about-to-betray
ipsamque virgam ut propriam conseruaturam salutem. Illa
and-that-very rod as her-own about-to-keep safety she
autem, quod omnibus votis optauerat ab eo exacto, fidem
moreover what with-all wishes she-had-desired from him exacted faith
ei cepit et maiorem amorem spondere, que iam fraudem
to-him began and greater love to-promise who already a-fraud
in mente conceperat qua scelus quod diu deliberauerat ad
in mind had-conceived by-which the-crime which long she-had-deliberated to
effectum perduceret. Sequenti namque die, rege venandi
effect she-might-bring on-the-following for day with-the-king for-the-sake
gratia siluas adeunte, illa, securim statim arripiens, ortum
of-hunting the-woods approaching she an-axe at-once seizing the-garden
subijt, virgam solo tenus abscidit, abscissam secum
entered the-rod to-the-ground as-far-as cut-off the-cut-off with-herself
abstulit. Atque ubi regem redire comperit, ipsam virgam sub
took-away and when the-king to-return she-learned that-very rod under
sua manica, que longa et diffusa pendebat, occulens, in eius
her sleeve which long and wide hung hiding into his
obuiam usque ad limen hostij processit, eumque quasi
meeting all-the-way to the-threshold of-the-door advanced and-him as-if
osculatura iniectis brachijs amplexa, subito virgam e manica
about-to-kiss with-thrown arms embracing suddenly the-rod from (her)-sleeve
exeruit, semel et iterum ei caput percelluit, 'Sis lupus, sis
drew-out once and again his head struck be a-wolf be
lupus' vociferans; 'habeasque sensum lupi' volens adicere,
a-wolf crying and-have the-sense of-a-wolf wishing to-add
'sensum hominis' adiunxit 'habeas.' Nec mora; fit ut ipsa
the-sense of-a-man added have nor delay it-happens as she

dixerat, canibusque ab ea incitatis eum insequentibus ad siluas
had-said and-with-dogs by her urged him pursuing to the-woods
concitus fugit, sed humanus sensus ei ex integro remansit.
roused he-fled but human sense to-him from whole remained
"Arture, ecce artem et ingenium mentemque mulieris partim
Arthur behold the-art and wit and-mind of-a-woman in-part
didicisti. Descende nunc et comede, et postea quod
you-have-learned dismount now and eat and afterward what
reliquum est tibi latentius referam. Magnum est enim quod
remaining is to-you more-secretly I-shall-relate great it-is for what
queris et pauci sunt qui illud agnoscunt, et cum inde tibi
you-seek and few are who it know and when thence to-you
retulero parum inde doctior habeberis." Arturus. Res
I-shall-have-related little thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur the-thing
multum bene vadit multumque mihi placet. Prosequere,
much well goes and-much to-me pleases continue
prosequere quod incepisti. Gorlagon. Que secuntur audire
continue what you-have-begun Gorlagon what follows to-hear
places. Sedulus esto, prosequar.
you-please attentive be I-shall-continue
Regina igitur, viro legitimo fugato, iuuenem
the-queen therefore with-(her)-husband lawful put-to-flight the-youth
predictum absque mora accerciuit, regni gubernacula ei
aforesaid without delay summoned of-the-kingdom the-helms to-him
tradidit, uxorque eius effecta est. Lupus uero interiores siluas
handed-over and-wife his made was the-wolf but the-inner woods
ad quas fugerat per biennium frequentans se lupe
to which he-had-fled for two-years frequenting himself to-a-she-wolf
agresti coniunxit, duosque ex illa catulos progenuit. Qui,
wild joined and-two from her cubs begot who
non immemor nequicie sibi a sua coniuge illate, ut ille
not unmindful of-the-wickedness on-him by his wife brought as he

cui humanus inerat animus, anxie cogitabat si aliquo
in-whom a-human was-in mind anxiously thought whether in-some
modo se de ea ulcisci valeat. Iuxta illam siluam autem
way himself on her to-avenge he-might-be-able beside that wood moreover
quoddam castellum extabat, apud quod regina una cum
a-certain castle stood at which the-queen together with
rege maxime perhendinare solebat. Humanus itaque ille lupus,
the-king most to-stay was-wont the-human and-so that wolf
sibi oportunitatem preuidens, quodam vespertino tempore
for-himself an-opportunity foreseeing at-a-certain evening time
lupam cum catulis suis secum assumpsit, in opidum
the-she-wolf with cubs his with-himself took into the-town
inopinatus irruit, duosque paruulos, quos prefatus iuuenis de
unexpected rushed and-two little-ones whom the-aforesaid youth from
sua coniuge genuerat, forte sub turri ludentes sine custode
his wife had-begotten by-chance under the-tower playing without guard
reperiens, inuadit inuasosque crudeliter discerpens interimit.
finding attacks and-the-attacked cruelly tearing-apart kills
Quod quidem circumstantes sero aduertentes eos cum ululatu
which indeed the-bystanders late noticing them with howling
insequuntur. Sed, facinore patrato, fugam accelerantes salui
pursue but with-the-crime committed flight hastening safe
euaserunt. Regina autem infortunio nimis mesta diligenti
they-escaped the-queen moreover at-the-misfortune too sad with-diligent
custodia eorum reditum obseruare suis imperat. Non multum
watch their return to-watch her-men orders not much
temporis effluxerat et lupus, non sibi adhuc satisfactum
of-time had-flowed-out and the-wolf not to-himself yet satisfied
existimans, opidum cum socijs repetit, duosque nobiles
reckoning the-town with companions sought-again and-two noble
comites, fratres regine, in ipsis valuis pirgis ludentes
counts brothers of-the-queen at the-very gates at-dice playing

offendens, eos extractis visceribus neci horrende tradidit;
coming-upon them with-drawn-out entrails to-death dreadful handed-over
ad quorum tumultum officiales concurrunt, valuas claudunt,
at whose tumult the-officers run-together the-gates close
catulosque cum suo compari intercipientes laqueo suspendunt.
and-the-cubs with their mate intercepting with-a-noose hang
Ipse autem astutior ceteris, e manibus se tenentium
he moreover more-astute than-the-others from the-hands himself of-the-holders
elapsus, illesus aufugit. Arture, descende et comede;
having-slipped unharmed fled Arthur dismount and eat
magnum est quod queris, et pauci sunt qui illud agnoscunt,
great it-is what you-seek and few are who it know
et cum tibi retulero parum inde doctior habeberis.
and when to-you I-shall-have-related little thence more-learned you-will-be-held
Gorlagon. Lupus igitur amissis catulis maximo merore
Gorlagon the-wolf therefore with-lost cubs by-the-greatest grief
constrintus, et pre doloris magnitudine in rabiem conuersus,
constrained and for of-grief the-greatness into madness turned
nocturnis excursibus in domesticas pecudes illius prouincie
with-nightly sallies on the-domestic cattle of-that province
tanta cede grassatus est ut omnes comprouinciales, canum
with-such slaughter raged has that all the-fellow-provincials of-dogs
collocata multitudine, ad eum inuestigandum et capiendum
with-a-gathered multitude for him tracking and capturing
conueniunt, quorum cotidianas vexaciones lupus minime
come-together whose daily harassments the-wolf not-at-all
perferre preualens finitimam regionem pecijt; solitasque
to-endure being-able the-neighboring region sought and-the-accustomed
cedes in ea agere cepit, a qua ab accolis statim fugatus
slaughters in it to-do began from which by the-inhabitants at-once put-to-flight
terciumque regnum adire compulsus iam non tantum in
and-the-third kingdom to-approach compelled now not only on

pecudes sed etiam in homines impacabili rabie seuiebat. Illius
cattle but also on men with-implacable madness raged of-that
autem regionis quidam rex ceptra regebat, euo iuuenili,
moreover region a-certain king the-scepters ruled in-age young
animo mansuetus, sapiencia et industria preclarus. Cui
in-mind gentle in-wisdom and industry splendid to-whom
dum innumerabiles strages tam hominum quam pecudum a
when the-countless slaughters both of-men and of-cattle by
lupo illate relate fuissent, diem statuit qua ipsum cum
the-wolf brought related had-been a-day he-appointed on-which him with
venatorum canumque copia indagare et prosequi aggrederetur.
of-hunters and-of-dogs abundance to-track and to-pursue he-should-set-about
Tanta quippe lupi omnes tenebantur formidine, quod nullus
with-such indeed of-the-wolf all were-held fear that no-one
circumquaque auderet quiescere, sed nocte tota contra eius
round-about dared to-rest but the-night whole against his
incursus peruigiles manebant. Contigit autem, dum lupus ad
attacks wakeful remained it-happened moreover when the-wolf to
quendam vicinum pagum cedibus inhians noctu peruenisset, et
a-certain neighboring village for-slaughters gaping by-night had-come and
sub cuiusdam domus stans protecto intus fabulantes intencius
under of-a-certain house standing the-eaves within those-talking more-intently
a[u]scultaret, quod a suo proximo audiit referri quid rex
listened that from his neighbor he-heard to-be-related what the-king
die sequenti querere et inuestigare proposuisset, multa
on-the-day following to-seek and to-track had-proposed many-things
de clementia et mansuetudine regis adicientem. Quod ubi
about the-clemency and gentleness of-the-king adding which when
lupus percepit, ad siluarum latibula redijt tremebundus,
the-wolf perceived to of-the-woods the-lurking-places returned trembling
deliberans apud se quid sibi factu foret utilius.
deliberating with himself what for-him to-be-done would-be more-useful

THE WOLF AT THE KING'S COURT

The wolf throws himself at the feet of the king, who judges that he has a man's sense, keeps him, and sees him kill a stag at his word. Going away on a journey, the king has a golden chain made to bind him at night and leaves him to the queen, who hates him and keeps him chained; finding her in bed with the steward, he breaks the chain and mauls the steward. The queen claims the wolf ate her son and hides the child with a nurse in an underground chamber, but when the king returns the wolf leads him there, breaks down the bolted door, and brings him the child alive to kiss.

Mane autem facto ecce venatores et regalis familia
with-morning moreover made behold the-hunters and the-royal household
cum canum immensa numerositate siluas subeunt, tubarum
with of-dogs immense number the-woods enter of-trumpets
strepitu clamoreque omnia replentes tumultu; quos cum
with-the-din and-with-shouting all-things filling with-tumult whom with
duobus socijs familiaribus rex moderatiori gressu
two companions intimate the-king with-more-moderate pace
sequebatur. At lupus, iuxta viam qua rex transiturus erat
followed but the-wolf beside the-road by-which the-king about-to-pass was
delitiscens, omnibus pretergressis ubi regem aduenire conspexit,
lying-hid with-all having-passed when the-king to-come he-saw
ex ipso vultu regem esse coniiciens, dumo exiliuit,
from the-very face the-king to-be conjecturing from-the-thicket leapt-out
ceruice demissa ad eius vestigia cucurrit, suisque pedibus
with-neck lowered to his footsteps ran and-with-his feet
dextrum ipsius pedem amplexus, suppliciter deosculaturus acsi
the-right his foot embracing suppliantly about-to-kiss as-if
gemitibus quibus valebat veniam petens. Duo autem proceres
with-groans with-which he-was-able pardon seeking two moreover nobles
qui regis latus vallabant, immanem illum lupum videntes
who of-the-king the-side guarded monstrous that wolf seeing

(nunquam enim aliquem tante magnitudinis viderant), "Domine,
never for any of-such size they-had-seen lord
ecce" exclamant "quem querimus! ecce lupus quem querimus!
behold they-cry whom we-seek behold the-wolf whom we-seek
percute, interime, ne nobis infesta nos invadat bellua." Lupus
strike kill lest to-us hostile us invade the-beast the-wolf
vero nichil penitus eorum vocibus pauescens, regis stringebat
but nothing at-all of-them at-the-voices fearing of-the-king clasped
vestigia, ac dulcia imprimebat oscula. Rex autem mire
the-footsteps and sweet pressed kisses the-king moreover wonderfully
motus, eum diutius contemplatus, nilque in eo feritatis
moved him longer having-contemplated and-nothing in him of-ferocity
aduertens sed potius similem indulgentiam supplicanti, miratus
noticing but rather a-like indulgence to-the-suppliant wondering
suis omnibus interdixit ne quis ei quicquam auderet inferre
to-his all forbade lest anyone on-him anything should-dare to-bring
discriminis, quiddam in illo humani sensus se deprehendisse
of-peril something in him of-human sense himself to-have-detected
contestans; dextraque ad lupum demissa ei blandiendo
affirming and-with-right-hand to the-wolf lowered to-him by-caressing
caput et aures leniter palpabat et ungulabatur. Deinde in hijs
the-head and ears gently stroked and pawed then in these
correptum eum ad se conabatur erigere. Lupus vero manum
seized him to himself he-tried to-raise the-wolf but the-hand
se volentis erigere sentiens mox se saltu sustulit,
him of-(one)-wishing to-raise feeling soon himself with-a-leap raised
ac super sonipedis collum ante regem letabundus consedit.
and upon of-the-steed the-neck before the-king joyful sat-down
Rex autem reuocato excercitu domum iter conuertit.
the-king moreover with-recalled army homeward the-way turned

Nec multum processerat et ecce erectis cornibus ceruus
nor much had-he-advanced and behold with-raised horns a-stag
ei mire magnitudinis in saltu occurrit. Tunc rex
to-him of-wonderful size in the-glade met then the-king
"Experiar," ait, "si quid meo lupo inest probitatis et virium,
I-shall-test he-says if anything in-my wolf is of-prowess and of-strength
et an meis assuescat obsecundare imperijs." Voceque
and whether to-my he-become-accustomed to-comply commands and-with-voice
emissa lupum in ceruum incitabat manuque a se
sent-forth the-wolf against the-stag he-urged and-with-(his)-hand from himself
repellebat. Lupus vero huius prede capiende non inscius,
repelled the-wolf but of-this prey to-be-taken not ignorant
saltu dato ceruo insequitur, anticipat et invadit, guttureque
with-a-leap given the-stag pursues forestalls and attacks and-by-the-throat
comprehensum ante regis obtuitus mortuum prosternit.
seized before of-the-king the-gaze dead lays-low
Quo facto, rex eum reuocat, atque "Nempe seruandus
with-which done the-king him recalls and surely to-be-kept
es," ait, "non necandus, qui talia scis nobis exhibere
you-are he-says not to-be-killed who such-things know to-us to-show
obsequia." Lupumque secum ducens domum regressus est.
services and-the-wolf with-himself leading home returned has
Arture, descende et comede. Magnum est quod queris et
Arthur dismount and eat great it-is what you-seek and
pauci sunt qui illud agnoscunt; et cum tibi inde retulero,
few are who it know and when to-you thence I-shall-have-related
parum inde doctior habeberis. Arturus. Etiam si omnes
little thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur even if all
dij de celo clamarent: "Arture descende et comede!" nec
the-gods from heaven should-cry Arthur dismount and eat neither
descendam nec comedam donec quod restat agnouero.
I-shall-dismount nor I-shall-eat until what remains I-shall-have-learned

Gorlagon. Lupus igitur cum predicto rege remanens,
Gorlagon the-wolf therefore with the-aforesaid king remaining
maximo amore ab eo habitus est. Quidquid ei ab eo
with-the-greatest love by him held was whatever to-him by him
imperabatur perficiebat. Nunquam cuiquam aliquid uel feritatis
was-commanded he-accomplished never to-anyone anything either of-ferocity
ostendit uel lesionis intulit. Cotidie ad prandium prioribus
showed or of-injury brought daily at dinner with-(his)-front
erectis brachijs ante regem ad mensam stabat, de pane eius
raised legs before the-king at the-table he-stood of bread his
comedens, et de eodem calice bibens. Quocumque rex
eating and from the-same cup drinking wherever the-king
pergebat semper se ei comitem exhibebat, ut eciam
went always himself to-him companion he-showed so-that even
noctibus nusquam nisi ante lectum vellet quiescere. Accidit
by-nights nowhere except before the-bed he-wished to-rest it-happened
autem regem extra suum regnum ad colloquium alterius regis
moreover the-king outside his kingdom to a-conference of-another king
longius et ideo expedicius debere proficisci, quod minus
farther and therefore more-speedily to-be-bound to-set-out because less-than
denum spacio dierum minime posse reuerti. Reginam
ten in-the-space of-days not-at-all to-be-able to-return the-queen
aduocans, "Qui[a]," ait, "me hoc itinere expedicius oportet
summoning because he-says me on-this journey more-speedily it-behooves
pergere, hunc tue tutele lupum commendo, et ut eum
to-go this to-your protection wolf I-commend and that him
mei loco, si remanere voluerit, conserues et necessaria
my in-the-place if to-remain he-shall-have-wished you-keep and necessaries
ministres impero. Ignoro enim an me abeunte remanere
you-supply I-command I-know-not for whether with-me going-away to-remain
voluerit." Illa autem iam lupum habens odio propter
he-will-have-wished she moreover already the-wolf holding in-hatred on-account-of

magnam sagacitatem, quam in eo deprehenderat, quia
the-great sagacity which in him she-had-detected because
multociens mulier odit quem maritus diligit, "Domine," ait,
many-times a-woman hates whom the-husband loves lord she-says
"timeo ne te absente, si solito loco iaceat, me nocte
I-fear lest with-you absent if in-the-accustomed place he-lie me at-night
inuadat, cruentamque me relinquat." Cui rex: "De hoc
he-may-attack and-bloody me leave to-whom the-king about this
tibi metus ne sit aliquis, in quo tanto tempore nil
for-you fear not let-there-be any in whom in-so-long time nothing
simile deprehendi. Verumtamen, si inde dubitas, cathenam
like I-have-detected nevertheless if thence you-doubt a-chain
faciam fieri, et eum ad mei strati suppedanium ligari."
I-shall-make to-be-made and him to of-my bed the-footboard to-be-tied
Aureamque cathenam rex parari imperat, qua lupo
and-a-golden chain the-king to-be-prepared orders by-which with-the-wolf
ad scansile ligato, ad destinatum negocium properat. Arture,
to the-step tied to the-appointed business he-hastens Arthur
descende et comede, magnum est quod queris et pauci
dismount and eat great it-is what you-seek and few
sunt qui illud agnoscunt, et cum inde tibi retulero
are who it know and when thence to-you I-shall-have-related
parum inde doctior habeberis. Arturus. Si vellem comedere,
little thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur if I-wished to-eat
utique non me sepius ut comederem inuitares.
surely not me more-often that I-should-eat you-would-invite
Gorlagon. Rege igitur proficiscente lupus cum regina
Gorlagon with-the-king therefore setting-out the-wolf with the-queen
remansit. Sed non debita eum diligentia curauit. Semper enim
remained but not with-due him diligence she-cared-for always for
interim nexus iacebat cathena, cum rex tantummodo
meanwhile bound he-lay with-the-chain although the-king only

ut noctibus cathenaretur mandaret. Regina vero regis
that by-nights he-be-chained bade the-queen but of-the-king
dapiferum illicito amore diligebat, quem quotiens rex
the-steward with-unlawful love loved whom as-often-as the-king
deerat frequentabat. Octaua igitur die profectionis regis
was-absent she-frequented on-the-eighth therefore day of-the-departure of-the-king
in thalamo meridie conueniunt, atque ipsam lecticam pariter
in the-chamber at-noon they-meet and the-very couch together
ascendunt, parui per[p]endentes lupi presentiam. Quos ille
mount little weighing of-the-wolf the-presence whom he
intuens nefandis irruentes amplexibus, oculis rubentibus,
looking-at into-unspeakable rushing embraces with-eyes reddening
iubis extantibus, furore exarsit, et quasi iam in eos
with-manes standing-up with-fury blazed and as-if already on them
impetum facturus se agere cepit, sed retinente cathena
an-onset about-to-make himself to-drive began but with-holding-back the-chain
retentus est. Unde ubi eos a cepta nequicia nolle
held-back he-was whence when them from the-begun wickedness to-be-unwilling
aduertit desistere, tunc dentibus infremuit, terram pedibus
he-noticed to-desist then with-(his)-teeth he-gnashed the-earth with-(his)-feet
effodit, totoque corpore cum diro ululatu seuiens, tanta
dug and-with-whole body with dire howling raging with-such
vi cathenam distendit, ut duas in partes dissiliret confracta.
force the-chain stretched that two into parts it-leapt-apart broken
Solutus autem in dapiferum furibundus irruit a lecto
loosed moreover on the-steward raging rushed from the-bed
deiectum, eaque seuicia discerpsit, qua eum seminecem
thrown-down and-with-that ferocity tore by-which him half-dead
dereliquit. Regine vero nil mali intulit omnino, illam
he-left on-the-queen but nothing of-evil he-brought at-all her
tantummodo toxi[c]o lumine intuitus. Ad lugubres
only with-poisonous eye having-looked-at at the-mournful

autem gemitus dapiferi, auulso cardine, irruunt famuli;
moreover groans of-the-steward torn-off with-the-hinge rush-in the-servants
quibus causam tanti tumultus inquirentibus illa versipellis,
to-whom the-cause of-so-great tumult asking she the-shape-shifter
fraude composita, lupum respondit suum deuorasse filium,
with-fraud contrived the-wolf answered her to-have-devoured son
atque dum paruulum inter[itu conar]etur eripere, ita laniasse
and while the-little-one from-death he-tried to-snatch so to-have-torn
dapiferum; idem sibi eum fecisse asserens nisi sibi cicius
the-steward the-same to-her him to-have-done asserting unless to-her more-quickly
suppeciaturi aduenissent. Dapifer igitur semiuiuus ad hospicium
about-to-help they-had-come the-steward therefore half-alive to the-lodging
deducitur. At regina nimis metuens ne rei quoquomodo
is-led but the-queen too fearing lest of-the-thing in-any-way
pateret veritas, seque de lupo vindicare deliberans, infantem
lie-open the-truth and-herself on the-wolf to-avenge deliberating the-infant
quem ab ipso deuoratum dixerat in quadam ypogea
whom by him devoured she-had-said in a-certain underground-chamber
ab omni accessu remota cum nutrice inclusit, uniuersis
from every access remote with the-nurse shut-in with-all
eum a lupo deuoratum autumantibus. Arture, descende et
him by the-wolf devoured reckoning Arthur dismount and
comede; magnum est quod queris, et pauci sunt qui illud
eat great it-is what you-seek and few are who it
agnoscunt; cum tibi retulero, parum inde doctior
know when to-you I-shall-have-related little thence more-learned
habeberis. Arturus. Jube, queso, mensam auferri, quia
you-will-be-held Arthur order I-beg the-table to-be-removed because
fercula tibi apposita tociens nostra interrumpunt colloquia.
the-dishes before-you set so-often our interrupt conversations

Gorlogan. Hijs ita gestis, regine celerius quam
Gorlagon with-these-things so done to-the-queen more-quickly than
putabatur regis reditus nunciatur. Cui illa fraudulenta et
was-thought of-the-king the-return is-announced to-whom she fraudulent and
subdolositate plena, scissis comis, laniatis genis, sanguine
of-craftiness full with-torn hair with-scratched cheeks with-blood
veste conspersa, occurrens: "Heu, heu, heu, me miseram,
(her)-garment sprinkled running-to-meet alas alas alas me wretched
domine, me miseram!" exclamat. "Quanta in tui absencia
lord me wretched she-cries how-great in your absence
incurri discrimina!" Ad hec rex obstupefactus et quid
I-have-incurred perils at this the-king astounded and what
haberet sciscitans: "Tua, tua," respondit, "nefanda illa bellua,
she-had asking your your she-answered unspeakable that beast
mihi hactenus nimis vere suspecta, tuum meo in gremio
to-me hitherto too truly suspect your my in bosom
natum consumpsit; tuum dapiferum subsidium ferre nitentem
son has-consumed your steward help to-bring striving
usque ad necem pene discerpsit, michimet idem facturus
all-the-way to death almost has-torn on-myself the-same about-to-do
nisi famuli ad nos irrupissent. Ecce rei testis sanguis
unless the-servants to us had-burst-in behold of-the-thing as-witness the-blood
paruuli nostris conspersus vestibus." Vix ipsa hec verba
of-the-little-one on-our sprinkled garments scarcely she these words
compleuerat, et ecce lupus, audito regis aduentu, cursim
had-completed and behold the-wolf with-heard of-the-king the-coming at-a-run
e thalamo prosilijt, in regis amplexus ut bene meritos ruit,
from the-chamber leapt-forth into of-the-king the-embraces as well deserved rushed
gaudens et tripudians, et nuncquam maiori leticia exultans.
rejoicing and dancing and never with-greater gladness exulting
Ad hec rex, per diuersa mente distractus, quid ageret
at this the-king through various in-mind drawn-apart what he-should-do

dubitabat, hinc suam coniugem sibi reputans falsa
doubted on-this-side his wife to-himself reckoning false-things
nolle proferre, illinc tanto in se commisso
to-be-unwilling to-bring-forth on-that-side with-so-great against himself committed
facinore lupum sibi cum tanto tripudio procul dubio non
crime the-wolf to-him with so-much dancing without doubt not
audere occurrere. Fera namque veretur illum quem se scit
to-dare to-run-to-meet the-beast for fears him whom itself it-knows
offendisse. Dum igitur super hijs mens nimium sibi
to-have-offended while therefore about these-things the-mind too to-him
fluctuaret, et se reficere renueret, lupus iugiter assistens
wavered and himself to-refresh refused the-wolf continually standing-by
ei, pedem suo pede leuiter tetigit, horam ipsius clamidis
to-him the-foot with-his foot lightly touched the-hem of-his cloak
ore accepit, et ut se sequeretur nutu capitis
with-(his)-mouth took and that him he-should-follow with-a-nod of-the-head
innuit. Rex autem, illius nutus solitos non ignorans, surrexit
signaled the-king moreover of-his nods accustomed not ignorant rose
atque per diuersos thalamos eum ad ypogeam qua
and through various chambers him to the-underground-chamber where
puer latebat secutus est. Cuius hostium obseratum offendens,
the-boy lay-hid followed has whose door bolted finding
lupus terque quaterque pede percussit, ut sibi
the-wolf three-times and-four-times with-(his)-foot struck that to-him
aperiretur insinuando. Sed dum in querendo clauem mora
it-be-opened by-intimating but while in seeking the-key delay
fieret, — regina eam penes se absconderat, — lupus moras
was-made the-queen it with herself had-hidden the-wolf delays
non ferens se parum retro retraxit, pedumque suorum
not bearing himself a-little back drew and-of-his feet
quatuor ungularum protensis aculeis in hostium preceps irruit,
of-the-four claws with-stretched points into the-door headlong rushed

impulsumque media area fractum et quassatum deiecit;
and-the-struck in-the-middle area broken and shattered threw-down
precurrensque infantem e cunabulo inter hispida brachia
and-running-ahead the-infant from the-cradle between (his)-shaggy arms
accepit, atque ori regis osculandum suauiter applicuit.
took and to-the-mouth of-the-king to-be-kissed sweetly applied

THE WOLF RESTORED; GORLAGON'S SECRET

The steward confesses; he is flayed alive and hanged, and the queen torn apart by horses and burned. The king, convinced the wolf is a man, takes him by sea to the wolf's own land, overthrows the king who had seized it, and tortures the wolf's wife until she gives up the rod; struck with it, the wolf becomes a man again, condemns the usurper to death, and puts his wife away but spares her life. Gorlagon reveals that he was the wolf, that the wolf first reached the kingdom of his middle brother Torleil and was cared for by his younger brother Gargol, whom Arthur visited first, and that the woman opposite is that wife, made to keep her lover's embalmed head before her and kiss it whenever Gorlagon kisses his new wife; Arthur dismounts, eats, and goes home.

Miratur rex atque "Aliquid aliud," ait, "superest, quod
marvels the-king and something else he-says remains which
mee non patet noticie." Deinde egreditur, precedentemque
to-my not lies-open knowledge then he-goes-out and-the-going-ahead
lupum subsequens, ad dapiferum languentem ab eo educitur.
wolf following to the-steward languishing by him is-led
Quem lupus ut vidit, vix a rege retentus est quin
whom the-wolf as he-saw scarcely by the-king held-back was but-that
in eum irruisset. Rex autem, ante eius lectum
upon him he-would-have-rushed the-king moreover before his bed
considens, infirmitatis causam euentumque vulnerum ab
sitting of-the-illness the-cause and-the-outcome of-the-wounds from

eo sciscitabat. Sed nihil aliud fatebatur nisi quod in
him inquired but nothing else he-confessed except that in
eripiendo puerum a lupo ea incurrisset, testem
snatching the-boy from the-wolf those-things he-had-incurred as-witness
reginam adhibens. Econtra rex "Mentiris," ait,
the-queen applying on-the-other-hand the-king you-lie he-says
"plane: meus filius viuit; nequaquam mortuus est. Et
plainly my son lives by-no-means dead he-is and
quia te et reginam erga me inuento [filio] falsitate
because you and the-queen toward me with-found son of-falsehood
conuictos michimet commenta finxisse deprehendo,
convicted to-myself inventions to-have-feigned I-detect
aliud quod ne [falsum] sit timeo; causam fuisse
another-thing which lest false it-be I-fear the-cause to-have-been
agnosco, qua lupus, pudorem domini non ferens, in
I-recognize for-which the-wolf the-shame of-(his)-lord not bearing against
te tam crudeliter insolito seuierit; cicius igitur
you so cruelly unaccustomedly has-raged more-quickly therefore
rei veritatem mihi confitere. Aliter summi maiestatem
of-the-thing the-truth to-me confess otherwise of-the-highest the-majesty
obtestor numinis quod te flammis urentibus tradam."
I-adjure of-the-godhead that you to-flames burning I-shall-hand-over
Lupusque in eum impetum faciens iugiter insistebat,
and-the-wolf on him an-onset making continually pressed
iterumque dilacerasset, nisi a circumstantibus retentus
and-again would-have-torn unless by the-bystanders held-back
fuisset. Quid multa? Insistente rege tum minis
he-had-been what many-words with-pressing the-king both with-threats
tum blandicijs dapifer commissum confitetur facinus,
and with-blandishments the-steward the-committed confesses crime
ut sibi indulgeret suppliciter exorans. Rex autem
that to-him he-would-pardon suppliantly begging the-king moreover

nimio succensus furore, dapifero carcerali mancipato
by-excessive kindled fury with-the-steward to-prison delivered
custodie, illico tocius sui regni principes coadunauit,
custody at-once of-the-whole his kingdom the-princes united
a quibus super tanto scelere iudicium exigit. Sentencia
from whom about so-great a-crime judgment he-demands the-sentence
datur; dapifer viuus excoriatur, et laqueo suspenditur.
is-given the-steward alive is-flayed and with-a-noose is-hanged
Regina menbratim ab equis distracta ignium globis
the-queen limb-by-limb by horses torn-apart of-fires to-the-balls
traditur. Arture, descende et comede. Magnum est quod
is-handed-over Arthur dismount and eat great it-is what
queris, et pauci sunt qui illud agnoscunt; cum tibi
you-seek and few are who it know when to-you
retulero, parum inde doctior habeberis. Arturus.
I-shall-have-related little thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur
Nisi te pigeret comedere, me parum curares diucius
unless you it-irked to-eat me little you-would-care longer
ieiunare.
to-fast
Gorlogan. Postquam hec gesta sunt, rex super
Gorlagon after these-things done were the-king about
incredibili sapiencia et industria lupi cepit cedula
the-incredible wisdom and industry of-the-wolf began with-careful
mente vehementique studio cogitare et cum viris
mind and-vehement zeal to-think and with men
sapientibus inde propensius tractare, asserens illum
wise thence more-eagerly to-treat asserting him
humanum sensum habere cui tantam intelligenciam
human sense to-have in-whom so-great intelligence
constiterit inesse, “quia nullus unquam in irracionabili
it-has-been-established to-be-in because no-one ever in an-irrational

pecude tantam sapienciam re[p]perit, tantamque fidem
beast so-great wisdom has-found and-so-great faith
alicui exhibuisse, quantam mihi iste exhibuit.
to-anyone to-have-shown as-great-as to-me this-one has-shown
Quecunque namque ei loquimur bene intelligit;
whatever-things for to-him we-speak well he-understands
sibi imperata perficit; ubicunque fuero,
to-him the-things-commanded he-accomplishes wherever I-shall-have-been
mihi semper assistit; me gaudet gaudente, dolet
to-me always he-stands-by with-me he-rejoices rejoicing grieves
dolente. Et qui meam iniuriam tanta seueritate
grieving and who my injury with-so-great severity
ultus est hominem esse et magne sagacitatis et
avenged has a-man to-be and of-great sagacity and
potencie procul dubio fuisse sciatis, atque aliqua
power without doubt to-have-been you-may-know and by-some
incantacione uel transmutacione lupinam formam induisse."
incantation or transformation the-wolfish form to-have-put-on
Ad hec verba lupus ei assistens ingenti se
at these words the-wolf to-him standing-by with-huge himself
gaudio agebat, manusque et pedes regis deosculans
joy conducted and-the-hands and feet of-the-king kissing
et genua eius constringens, vultu capitis et
and the-knees his clasping with-the-face of-(his)-head and
gestu tocius corporis eum vera dixisse
with-the-gesture of-the-whole body him true-things to-have-said
ostendebat.
showed
Tunc rex ait: "Ecce quanta hillaritate mihi loquenti
then the-king says behold with-how-great cheerfulness to-me speaking
annuit, meque vera locutum certis notat indicijs.
he-assents and-me true-things to-have-spoken with-sure marks signs

Jamque ulterius quid hoc fuerit dubitari non poterit
and-now further what this has-been to-be-doubted not will-be-able
atque o utinam etiam cum mearum rerum dampno cum
and o would-that even with of-my things the-loss with
mee etiam vite periculo mihi indagandi daretur facultas
of-my also life the-danger to-me of-tracking were-given the-faculty
si qua arte aut ingenio eum ad pristinum statum
if by-any art or wit him to former state
possem reducere." Consilio igitur super hoc diucius inter
I-could to-bring-back with-counsel therefore about this longer among
eos habito, hec tandem regi sentencia placuit, ut
them held this at-last to-the-king opinion pleased that
lupus dimitteretur precedere, et quo vellet terre marive
the-wolf be-let-go to-go-ahead and whither he-wished by-land or-by-sea
abire. Affirmabat uero eum propriam tellurem petiturum;
to-go-off he-affirmed but him his-own land about-to-seek
promittebat quod cum suis in eius subsidium eum
he-promised that with his-men to his help him
quocunque pergeret subsecuturum. "Forsitan quippe," ait,
wherever he-should-go about-to-follow perhaps indeed he-says
"si eius patriam possemus attingere, et rem gestam
if his country we-could to-reach and the-thing done
agnosceremus, et ei aliquod remedium inueniremus."
we-might-learn and for-him some remedy we-might-find
Lupus uero quo vellet, omnibus eum sequentibus,
the-wolf but whither he-wished with-all him following
ire sinitur. Qui statim mare pecijt, et quasi vellet
to-go is-allowed who at-once the-sea sought and as-if he-wished
transire se undis marinis impetuose ingessit. Ipsius
to-cross himself into-the-waves marine impetuously thrust his
uero patria illi regioni e latere mari interfluente
but country to-that region from the-side with-the-sea flowing-between

coniungebatur, licet alias terrestri sed longiori itinere
was-joined although otherwise by-land but by-longer journey
inde adiri posset. Rex autem eum videns velle
thence to-be-approached could the-king moreover him seeing to-wish
transire, classem continuo eo deduci miliciamque
to-cross a-fleet at-once thither to-be-led-down and-the-army
imperat conuenire. Arture, descende et comede. Magnum
orders to-come-together Arthur dismount and eat great
est quod queris, et pauci sunt qui illud agnoscunt;
it-is what you-seek and few are who it know
cum tibi retulero, parum inde doctior habeberis.
when to-you I-shall-have-related little thence more-learned you-will-be-held
Arturus. Lupus transfretare cupiens astat in litore. Timeo
Arthur the-wolf to-cross-the-strait desiring stands on the-shore I-fear
ne si solus relinquatur desiderio transeundi undis
lest if alone he-be-left by-the-desire of-crossing in-the-waves
mergatur.
he-be-drowned
Gorlogan. Rex igitur, imperato nauigio excercituque
Gorlagon the-king therefore with-commanded shipping and-the-army
armis instructo, cum ingenti militum copia equor
with-arms equipped with huge of-knights abundance the-sea
aggreditur; dieque tercia ad patriam lupi prospere
undertakes and-on-the-day third at the-country of-the-wolf prosperously
applicatur, quibus in continenti nactis, lupus prior
lands with-whom on the-mainland having-reached the-wolf first
omnibus e rate prosilijt, atque solito nutu et
than-all from the-ship leapt-out and with-accustomed nod and
gestu illam sui esse patriam euidenter intimauit. Tunc
gesture it his to-be country evidently intimated then
rex, suorum quibusdam secum assumptis, ad quandam
the-king of-his-men with-some with-himself taken to a-certain

vicinam ciuitatem clam properat, excercitui imperans se
neighboring city secretly hastens to-the-army ordering themselves
nauibus continere donec negocio inuestigato ad eos
in-the-ships to-keep until with-the-business investigated to them
redisset. Sed vix urbem intrauerat, et rei euentus
he-had-returned but scarcely the-city he-had-entered and of-the-thing the-outcome
ordine quo euenerit ei innotuit. Omnes uero
in-the-order in-which it-had-happened to-him became-known all but
nobiles et ignobiles prouincie illius regis qui lupo
the-noble and ignoble of-the-province of-that of-the-king who to-the-wolf
successerat importabilem gemebant tirannidem, suumque
had-succeeded the-unbearable groaned-under tyranny and-their
dominum fraude et dolo sue coniugis transmutatum
lord by-the-fraud and guile of-his wife transformed
utpote benignum et mansuetum una voce conquerebantur.
as-being kindly and gentle with-one voice complained
Re itaque quam querebat cognita, et quo rex
with-the-thing and-so which he-sought known and where the-king
illius prouincie eo tempore degeret comperto, rex ad
of-that province at-that time lived learned the-king to
naues ocius redijt, acies educit, et cum excercitu
the-ships more-swiftly returned the-lines leads-out and with the-army
super eum improuisum et inopinatum irruens, illius
upon him unprovided and unexpected rushing his
omnibus propugnatoribus cesis et fugatis, eum cum
with-all defenders slain and put-to-flight him with
regina cepit sueque dicioni mancipauit. Arture, descende
the-queen took and-to-his sway delivered Arthur dismount
et comede. Magnum est quod queris, et pauci sunt
and eat great it-is what you-seek and few are
qui illud agnoscunt, et cum tibi retulero, parum
who it know and when to-you I-shall-have-related little

inde doctior habeberis. Arturus. Tibi mos extat
thence more-learned you-will-be-held Arthur to-you the-custom stands
cithariste qui, melodie pene peracto concentu, dum
of-the-lyre-player who of-the-melody almost completed with-the-harmony while
nemini succinit, reciprocas clausulas interserendo sepius
to-no-one he-sings the-returning refrains by-inserting more-often
repetit.
repeats
Gorlogan. Igitur rex, fretus victoria, regni nobiliumque
Gorlagon therefore the-king relying-on the-victory of-the-kingdom and-of-the-nobles
coadunato consilio, in conspectu omnium reginam
with-united council in the-sight of-all the-queen
constituit atque "O," ait, "perfidissima et nequissima
set and O he-says most-faithless and most-wicked
feminarum! que te demencia tuo domino tantam fraudem
of-women what you madness to-your lord such-great fraud
machinari compulit? Sed nolo diucius tecum verba
to-contrive has-compelled but I-do-not-wish longer with-you words
disserere, que digna nullius censeris colloquio, rem
to-discuss who worthy of-no-one are-reckoned conversation the-thing
quam a te inquisiero mihi cicius notifica,
which from you I-shall-have-inquired to-me more-quickly make-known
aut certe fame et siti inexquisitisque te faciam
or surely by-hunger and thirst and-by-unheard-of you I-shall-make
interire tormentis, nisi illam" ait "virgam qua
to-perish tortures unless that he-says rod by-which
eum transformasti quo lateat manifestes. Forte uero
him you-transformed where it-lies-hid you-make-plain perhaps but
quam perdidit humanam formam recuperari poterit." Ad
which he-lost the-human form to-be-recovered will-be-able at
hec illa quo virga esset se iurat nescire, quam
this she where the-rod was herself swears not-to-know which

in frusta confractam se igne constabat cremasse.
into pieces broken herself with-fire it-was-agreed to-have-burned
Verumtamen fateri nolentem rex illam tradidit tortoribus,
nevertheless to-confess unwilling the-king her handed-over to-the-torturers
cotidie torquendam, cotidie supplicijs exanimandam,
daily to-be-tortured daily by-punishments to-be-made-lifeless
nichil cibi uel potus ei prorsus indulgens. Tandem
nothing of-food or drink to-her at-all indulging at-last
penarum coacta angustijs virgam protulit regique
of-the-punishments compelled by-the-straits the-rod she-brought-forth and-to-the-king
porrexit.
held-out
Qua accepta, rex letus effectus lupum in medio
with-which received the-king glad made the-wolf into the-middle
adduxit; maiori parte virge ei caput percussit
led with-the-greater part of-the-rod his head he-struck
atque "Sis homo hominisque sensum habeas" intulit.
and be a-man and-of-a-man the-sense have he-added
Nec mora: ipsius verba rei effectus sequitur. Fit
nor delay his words of-the-thing the-effect follows he-becomes
homo ut ante fuerat, licet longe pulcrior atque
a-man as before he-had-been although far more-beautiful and
decencior, tanta iam venustate preditus ut etiam ab
more-comely with-such now grace endowed that even from
inicio vir magne nobilitatis deprehenderetur. Videns
the-beginning a-man of-great nobility he-might-be-detected seeing
autem rex hominem ex lupo reformatum tanti decoris
moreover the-king the-man from the-wolf re-formed of-such comeliness
ante se consistere, cum ingenti gaudio tum ab eo
before him to-stand with huge joy and by him
perpessas miseratus iniurias, eius in amplexus irruit,
the-endured pitying injuries his into embraces rushed

osculatur et plangit, lacrimas effundit. A quibus inter
kisses and laments tears pours-out by whom among
mutuos amplexus tot prolata suspiria tanteque lacrime
mutual embraces so-many uttered sighs and-so-great tears
effuse sunt, ut omnem circumstantem multitudinem ad
shed were that all the-standing-around multitude to
fletus compungerent. Hic gracias agebat, de sibi
tears they-pricked this-one thanks gave for to-himself
innumeris ab eo impertitis beneficijs. Ille indignius
countless by him imparted benefits that-one more-unworthily
quam decebat se eum tractasse conquerebatur. Quid
than befitted himself him to-have-treated complained what
ultra? incredibilis uniuersis exoritur leticia. Rexque, antiquo
further incredible to-all arises gladness and-the-king by-ancient
iure principibus sibi submissis, suo potitur imperio.
right with-the-princes to-him submitted his gains command
Deinde adulter cum adultera in eius presencia ducitur,
then the-adulterer with the-adulteress into his presence is-led
atque quid de illis fieri censeret consulitur. Ille
and what about them to-be-done he-judged is-consulted he
autem paganum regem capitali sentencia dampnauit;
moreover the-pagan king by-capital sentence condemned
reginam a suo coniugio tantum amouit, sed vitam
the-queen from his marriage only removed but the-life
quam non meruerat pro sua ingenita clemencia ei
which not she-had-deserved for his inborn clemency to-her
indulsit. Alius vero rex magnis ut decebat ditatus
he-pardoned the-other but king with-great as befitted enriched
et honoratus muneribus ad propria reuersus est. Ecce,
and honored gifts to his-own returned has behold
Arture, mentem et ingenium femine didicisti. Caue
Arthur the-mind and wit of-a-woman you-have-learned beware

tibi si inde sapiencior haberis. Descende nunc et
for-yourself if thence wiser you-are-held dismount now and
comede, quia ego narrando et tu audiendo cibum bene
eat because I by-narrating and you by-listening food well
meruimus.
have-deserved
Arturus. Nequaquam descendam donec quod interrogauero
Arthur by-no-means I-shall-dismount until what I-shall-have-asked
mihi indicaueris. Gorlogan. Quid? Arturus. Quenam
to-me you-shall-have-pointed-out Gorlagon what Arthur who
est illa femina contra te opposita facie tristis, humanumque
is that woman opposite you placed in-face sad and-a-human
caput sanguine conspersum ante se in disco continens,
head with-blood sprinkled before herself on a-dish holding
que etiam tociens fleuit quociens risisti, tociens cruentum
who also as-often wept as-often-as you-laughed as-often the-bloody
caput osculata est quociens tu tue coniugi, dum predicta
head kissed has as-often-as you to-your wife while the-aforesaid
referres, oscula impressisti? Gorlogan. “Si hoc,” inquit,
you-related kisses pressed Gorlagon if this he-says
“Arture, mihi soli pateret, tibi nequaquam referrem;
Arthur to-me alone lay-open to-you by-no-means would-I-relate(-it)
sed quia omnibus mihi considentibus hoc notum est,
but because to-all to-me sitting-with this known is
non pudor erit tibi etiam illud intimare. Illa femina
not shame will-be to-you also that to-intimate that woman
que mei ex aduerso residet, ipsa extitit que tantam,
who of-me from opposite sits she was who such-great
ut tibi superius retuli, nequiciam in suum dominum,
as to-you above I-related wickedness against her lord
jn me scilicet, operata est. Me autem illum lupum
against me namely wrought has me moreover that wolf

noueris, quem ab humana in lupinam et a lupina
you-may-know whom from human into wolfish and from wolfish
in humanam formam transmutatum audisti. Lupus autem
into human form transformed you-have-heard a-wolf moreover
factus, regnum quod primum adij, fratris mei medij,
made the-kingdom which first I-approached of-brother my the-middle
regis Gorleil, constat fuisse. Ille vero rex qui tantam
king Gorleil it-is-agreed to-have-been that but king who such-great
diligenciam mee cure adhibuit, fratrem meum iuniorem,
diligence to-my care applied brother my younger
regem Gorgol, ad quem primum venisti, extitisse ne
king Gorgol to whom first you-came to-have-been do-not
dubites. Cruentum quoque caput, quod illa femina mihi
doubt the-bloody also head which that woman to-me
ex aduerso residens in disco ante se amplexatur, illius
from opposite sitting on a-dish before herself embraces of-that
iuuenis extitit cuius amore tantam in me exercuit
youth was whose for-the-love such-great against me she-exercised
nequiciam. In propriam namque reuersus ymaginem, ea[m]
wickedness into my-own for returned image her
vita donans, hac sola dumtaxat pena puniui, ut
with-life granting with-this sole only penalty I-punished that
semper illius caput pro oculis habeat, et me aliam
always his head before (her)-eyes she-may-have and with-me another
sibi subductam osculante coniugem, ipsa eadem oscula
from-her taken-away kissing wife she the-same kisses
imprimat cuius gracia illud nefas commiserat. Quod
may-press whose for-the-sake that crime she-had-committed which
etiam condi feci balsamo ut imputribile perseueret.
also to-be-embalmed I-made with-balsam that incorruptible it-may-persist
Sciui quippe quod nulla sibi grauior foret punicio
I-knew indeed that no to-her heavier would-be punishment

quam in conspectu omnium tanti sceleris iugis
than in the-sight of-all of-so-great a-crime the-continual
representacio.
representation
"Arture, nunc descende, si descendere volueris, quia ibi
Arthur now dismount if to-dismount you-will-wish because there
pro me amodo imprecatus remanebis." Descendit igitur
for me henceforth cursed you-will-remain dismounted therefore
Arturus et comedit; dieque sequenti, super hijs que
Arthur and ate and-on-the-day following about these-things which
audiuerat valde miratus, domum itinere dierum nouem
he-had-heard greatly having-marveled home in-a-journey of-days nine
redijt.
returned
